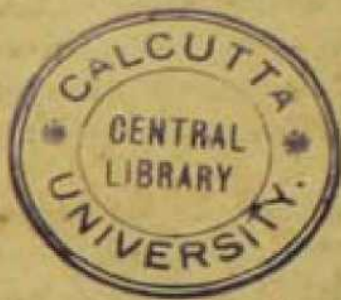




A SINO-ENGLISH READER

080C.U
274/12



BY
NAGENDRANARAYAN CHAUDHURI, M.A., Ph.D.



UNIVERSITY OF CALCUTTA
1958

Rs. 20.00



BEU 1702

205172

C

PRINTED IN INDIA

PRINTED BY N. A. ELLIS, BAPTIST MISSION PRESS, 41A, LOWER
CIRCULAR ROAD, CALCUTTA AND PUBLISHED BY SIBENDRANATH
KANJILAL, SUPERINTENDENT, CALCUTTA
UNIVERSITY PRESS, 48 HAZRA ROAD,
BALLYGUNGE, CALCUTTA.

PREFACE

This book in its present form is the outcome of an earlier attempt made by the author during his stay at Santiniketan where he was entrusted with the additional work of teaching Chinese to the students of Vidyabhavan, Visvabharati, by Gurudeva, Rabindranath Tagore, in the absence of Prof. Tan Yun Shan who taught the author Chinese. It was suggested by the poet himself that the most commonly used words and expressions with their equivalents in modern Chinese should be taught to the beginners and according to his most kind and valuable suggestions the first attempt was made by the author. Owing to some unforeseen circumstances it did not see the light and remained peacefully for a pretty long period of time on the author's book-shelf.

For some reasons the author had to leave Santiniketan and had to come down to Calcutta. It was in the year 1947 that the author was offered a Chinese Cultural Scholarship by the then Chinese Government through the University of Calcutta for continuing his research work in Chinese under the able guidance of Prof. Tan Yun Shan, Director, Cheenabhavan, Santiniketan, Visvabharati. At that time Dr. Pramathanath Banerjee, M.A., B.L., LL.D., D.Litt., Vidyavachaspati, Barrister-at-Law, the then Vice-Chancellor of the Calcutta University, took a very keen interest in the author's research work. Very often he enquired about the progress of the work and encouraged the author whenever he met the Vice-Chancellor. His encouragement gave an impetus to the work and once the author had an occasion to show the MS. of this Chinese Reader to the Vice-Chancellor. He was very much pleased and took the responsibility of publishing the work on behalf of the University of Calcutta. With his kind support and encouragement the author was able to hand over the MS. to the Baptist Mission Press, Calcutta, as directed by the University. It was given to the press in 1948 and was published in 1956. The author owes an explanation for this long delay. It was partly due to circumstances beyond his control and partly due to the natural difficulties of printing Chinese characters in Calcutta.

One important feature which the present work has, but which the earlier MS. lacks, is the inclusion of the mode of writing Chinese radicals. It is hoped that the inclusion of the method of writing them will give further help to students in the practice of reading and writing Chinese.

For a clear knowledge of the tone of each character, the tones of characters, though used in succession in a word, are kept intact as if used in isolation up to the thirty-third lesson. But in the index of the words they are properly toned. Advanced students are advised to consult the index for the proper knowledge of the change of tones of the characters which occur in succession in a word.



Attention is specially drawn to the list of Additions and Corrections at the close of the book. It is regrettable that in spite of our best efforts mistakes have crept in. A book of this kind should be free from such typographical errors and every effort has been made to find them out. The whole book has been carefully read in order to eliminate these errors which have been noted in an appended list. Students are very earnestly advised to go through the book and make necessary corrections for themselves.

Let me take this opportunity to acknowledge my indebtedness to my teacher, Prof. Tan Yun Shan, Director, Cheenabhavan, Visvabharati, Santiniketan, who has kindly gone through the whole MS. and proofs as well. I also express my gratitude to all those who have given me advice and assistance in the undertaking, particularly to my Chinese friends, Mr. Tung Chi Tong, teacher of Mei-Kuang Chinese High School, Calcutta, who has gone through the proofs in spite of his failing health, and to Mr. Kinley Chên for his most valuable suggestions and for his reading the proofs.

If this reader, containing exercises with hints at the end of each lesson, serves to kindle a greater interest in the learning of Chinese and to make it easier and to meet the most commonly used vocabulary needs of students, I shall deem my efforts amply repaid.

Calcutta University, Calcutta,
January 1, 1956.

NAGENDRANARAYAN CHAUDHURI

A GUIDE TO THE PRONUNCIATION OF ROMANIZED CHINESE

I. VOWELS:

Approximate sound in English				Approximate sound in Sanskrit
a	..	as 'a' in 'father'	..	आ
ê	..	as 'a' in 'cat'	..	to be pronounced like Beng. ए (Low Front Vowel) in एक
i	..	as 'i' in 'machine', and when it is followed by 'h', it is pronounced as 'i' in 'shiver'	..	ई and when it is followed by 'h', इ
o	..	as 'o' in 'note'	..	ओ
u	..	as 'u' in 'rule', and when it is preceded by sz, tz, and tz', it has the same pronunciation as 'u' in 'rule', but without any slight rounding of the lips	..	उ
ü	..	as 'ü' in German 'Müller' or 'u' in French 'menu'—the lips are to be pursed and the tip of the tongue placed close to the front teeth	..	यु = यू (as if इउ)

II. DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS:

Approximate sound in English				Approximate sound in Sanskrit
ai	..	as 'i' in 'kite'	..	आइ
ao	..	as 'ow' in 'how'	..	आओ
êi	..	as 'ei' in 'deign'	..	एइ
ia	..	as 'ya' in 'yam'	..	इआ
ieh	..	as the final and initial e's in 'the end'	..	इए
iu	..	as 'ew' in 'few'	..	इउ
ou	..	as 'ou' in 'soul'	..	ओउ
ua	..	as 'o' and 'a' in 'to argue'	..	उआ
ui	..	as 'o' and 'ea' in 'to ease'	..	उइ
uo	..	as 'o' and 'a' in 'to awe'	..	उओ
iao	..	as 'e' and 'ow' in 'the owl'	..	इआओ
uei	..	as 'o' and 'ai' in 'to aid'	..	उएइ

III. CONSONANTS: [The sign of aspiration (') has been used after certain consonants and consonant combinations.]

Approximate sound in English				Approximate sound in Sanskrit
ch	..	as 'ch' in 'chain'	..	च
ch'	..	wanting	..	छ
f	..	wanting	..	फ (to be pronounced as labial spirant; cf. φ)
h	..	as 'h' in 'hand'	..	ह
hs	..	as English 's' in 'see' followed immediately by 'h' in 'he', or something between 'she' and 'see'	..	between श् and स्
j	..	as 'j' in 'joy'	..	ज
k	..	as 'k' in 'king'	..	क
k'	..	wanting	..	ख
l	..	as 'l' in 'land'	..	ल
m	..	as 'm' in 'man'	..	म
n	..	as 'n' in 'name'	..	न
p	..	as 'p' in 'put'	..	प
p'	..	'ph' in 'loop-hole'	..	फ (labial stop)
s	..	as 's' in 'see'	..	स्
sz (ss)	..	as 'zz' in 'buzz' preceded immediately by s	..	almost like Beng. स्य—doubling or lengthening of स
sh	..	as 'sh' in 'sharp'	..	श्
t	..	as 't' in 'step'	..	त्
t'	..	as 'th' in 'thin'	..	थ
ts	..	as 'ts' in 'seats'	..	almost like Beng. च्य—doubling or lengthening of च
ts'	..	wanting	..	almost like Beng. छ्य—doubling or lengthening of छ
tz	..	as 'zz' in 'buzz' preceded immediately by t	..	almost like Beng. ज्य—doubling or lengthening of ज
tz'	..	as 'zz' in 'buzz' preceded immediately by t and followed immediately by h	..	almost like Beng. झ्य—doubling or lengthening of झ
w	..	as 'wo' in 'woful'	..	व (as if उओ)
y	..	as 'y' in 'yard'	..	य (as if इआ)



INTRODUCTION

A. CHINESE CHARACTERS

Chinese characters in general consist of two elements. One, the radical, which gives a rough idea of the meaning; the other, the phonetic, which gives a rough idea of the sound. The word 'radical' is rather a misnomer, because it has the meaning of the root. However, its function is clear. There are altogether 214 radicals. A character written with the radical 'Heart' indicates something emotional, the radical 'Water' refers to something liquid, the radical 'Hand' evokes the idea of an action done with the help of the hand, etc., etc. Thus, 忠 chung¹, loyal, consisting of the phonetic 中 chung¹, the middle and the radical 'Heart' indicating emotion; 油 yu², oil, consisting of 由 yu², cause, as phonetic and the 'Water' radical indicating liquid; 把 pa³, to take, consisting of the phonetic 巴 pa¹, the open hand and the radical 'Hand' indicating the action done with the hand. There are also characters which are made of radicals only of which one does the function of the phonetic and the other of the radical as it is. Thus 功 kung¹, merit, is made of two radicals, 工 kung¹, labour, and 力 li⁴, strength, here the former is taken as a phonetic; 俚 li³, rustic, of two radicals, 人 jên², man, and 里 li³, a lane, here the latter is a phonetic; 沐 mu⁴, to wash, consisting of two radicals, 水 shui³, water, and 木 mu⁴, a tree, wood, here also the latter is a phonetic.

It seems probable that at one time the position of the radical was fixed; but now it has been changed and the position is not determined by any fixed rule. In some characters the radical is placed at the top, in some others below, in some characters at the right side, and in some others at the left side. Thus 杏 hsing⁴ (often read hêng³), the apricot, here the radical 木 mu⁴, a tree, is on the top; 呆 tai¹, foolish, the radical mu⁴ down below; 榦 kan⁴, the trunk of a tree, the radical mu⁴ at the right side; 柑 kan¹, an orange, the radical mu⁴ at the left side; compare also 另 kua³, to cut the flesh from the bones, 召 chao⁴, to call, 叨 t'ao¹, to desire—in these characters 口 k'ou³, a mouth, is the radical which has been placed at the top, below and at the left side respectively and in the case of 加 chia¹, to add, the radical is 力 li⁴, strength, placed at the left side.

Besides giving the clue to the meaning, the radical has another most important utility. With the help of it any character can be found out in a dictionary of the Chinese language. Let us take an example 仆 fu¹ (sometimes read p'u¹), to fall prostrate, the radical of which is 人 jên², man, and 卜 pu³, to foretell, though a radical, is used here as a phonetic and is composed of two strokes | kun³, a perpendicular stroke, and 丶 chu³, a point. Now in the list of radicals given either at the beginning or at the end of the dictionary and under the radicals of two strokes therein, 人 jên² is to be found out first and then under this radical the phonetic consisting of two strokes is to be traced. But there are characters consisting of two or more radicals, there is nothing to do but try them all one by one until the proper one is found out; thus,

字 tzū⁴, a letter, a written character, composed of two radicals 子 tzū³, a son, a child, and 宀 mien², a roof, and it is arranged under the former radical.

架 chia⁴, a frame, a stand, to support, formed by a combination of three radicals 力 li⁴, strength, 口 k'ou³, a mouth, and 木 mu⁴, wood, and it is arranged under the last radical.

B. CHINESE TONES

The Chinese language actually has four tones or musical accents. They are as follows: first tone which is high in pitch, unvarying in character and can be prolonged without changing the pitch at all; second tone in which a pitch rises from a low to a high level and it is like a pitch used in simple query; third tone in which a pitch slightly falls from a relative low level before it rises to a relatively higher one, but not to the same high level as is in the case of the second tone and it is like a pitch used in an incredulous query, with a rise at the end; and fourth tone in which a pitch falls from a high to a low level and it is like a pitch used in quick and dictatorial answer. Thus, 詩 shih, poetry, 十 shih, ten, 史 shih, history, and 是 shih, to be. How is one to know which is which? They, having the same pronunciation, are to be distinguished by intonation. The first shih is to be pronounced in a monotone, the voice is neither rising nor falling and it is indicated by shih¹. The second, which is shih², is pronounced in a rising tone, something like an interrogative, shih²? The third, shih³, is uttered in a falling tone, something like a tone of an incredulous interrogative with a rise at the end, shih³? And the fourth, shih⁴, in a quick and somewhat dictatorial manner.

The qualities of the four tones, described above, are true only when the characters are spoken in isolation. But when they are spoken in succession, their tones are often so changed that they can no longer be identified with their original characteristics. Fortunately, these changes only affect the characters in the third tone and the rules are as follows:

(i) When a third tone is followed by any other tone except the third, or by a neutral tone, it loses its slowly rising quality and becomes low without any rise at the end; thus:—

好吃 hao³ ch'ih¹, palatable.

„ 名 hao³ ming², a good name.

„ 事 hao³ shih⁴, a good deed.

母親 mu³ ch'in⁰, mother.

(ii) When a third tone is followed by another third tone, the former changes into a second tone; thus, 種子 chung² (< chung³) tzü³, seed.

— i¹, 'one', is the first tone when used alone or before the second tone, the second tone before the fourth tone and the fourth tone before the first or the third tone; thus:—

一回 i¹ hui², once.

„ 次 i² tz'ü⁴, once.

„ 千 i⁴ ch'ien¹, one thousand.

„ 口 i⁴ k'ou³, a mouthful.

But when it is inserted between the verbs repeated, it becomes neutral in tone; as, 看一看 k'an⁴ i⁰ k'an⁰, to look a look, to take a look.

不 pu⁴, 'no, not', is the fourth tone when used alone or before the first, second or the third tone, and the second tone before the fourth one. Thus:—

不方便 pu⁴ fang¹ pien⁴, inconvenient.

„ 合作 pu⁴ ho² tso⁴, non-co-operation.

„ 好 pu⁴ hao³, bad.

„ 是 pu² shih⁴, no.

Every character of the Chinese language, when pronounced alone, has one of the four tones. But in compounds and in sentences, a character is sometimes unstressed and loses its original tone and its pitch is determined chiefly by the tone of the preceding character and not by its original tone. The tone of such an unstressed character is known as the neutral tone and is marked by a dot or a circle on the top of the romanized pronunciation of the character. It is very difficult to set out any hard and fast rule regarding the occurrence of neutral-tone characters in a sentence. Generally speaking particles, interjections, personal pronouns used as objects of transitive verbs and the characters which have no important concrete meanings in themselves,

are to be regarded as neutral in tone; e.g. particles—我的 *wo³ ti⁰*, my; 來了 *lai² liao⁰*, came; interjection—恨不能 *han⁰ pu⁴ nêng²*, alas! I was unable; personal pronoun used as an object—沒有人看見我 *mei²-yu⁰-jên² k'an⁴-chien⁰ wo⁰*, nobody sees me; characters without any concrete meanings—知道 *chih¹-tao⁰*, to know; where the former means 'to know' and the latter 'the way'; 裏頭 *li³-t'ou⁰*, inside; where the former means 'in' and the latter 'top'. The plural suffix 們 *mên²* is always neutral in tone; e.g. 他們 *t'a¹-mên⁰*. The noun-indicating suffixes 兒 *êrh²* and 子 *tzū³* are always neutral in tone; e.g. 兒子 *êrh²-tzū⁰*, son; 女 *nū³ êrh⁰* (= *nū³ 'rh⁰*), daughter. The interrogative sign 麼 *ma³* is always in the neutral tone; e.g. 甚麼 *shên²-ma⁰*, what? When a word is reduplicated in a compound, the second one generally loses its tone and becomes neutral; as, 姐姐 *chieh³ chieh⁰*, elder sister; 妹妹 *mei⁴ mei⁰*, younger sister; 哥哥 *ko¹ ko⁰*, elder brother; 弟弟 *ti⁴ ti⁰*, younger brother, etc. But when the compound is used in the distributive sense, the tone of the second member remains as it is; as, 人人 *jên² jên²*, everybody; 天天 *t'ien¹ t'ien¹*, everyday; 處處 *ch'u⁴ ch'u⁴*, everywhere. The second member of the adverbial compound word, which is formed with the reduplication of the adjective, does not lose its pitch though in some cases the tone is changed; e.g. *k'uai⁴ k'uai¹*, quickly; 慢慢 *man⁴ man¹*, slowly; 常常 *ch'ang² ch'ang²*, constantly; 早早 *tsao² tsao³*, early; 往往 *wang² wang³*, frequently; 明明 *ming² ming²*, plainly; 僅僅 *chin² chin³*, barely. When a verb is reduplicated, the second one becomes neutral in tone; as, 謝謝 *hsieh⁴ hsieh⁰*, thank you! 看看 *k'an⁴ k'an⁰*, to take a look. When the verbs are used after 進 *chin⁴*, in, 出 *ch'u¹*, out, 到 *tao⁴*, to (as, *tao⁴ lai⁰*, to come to), 回 *hui²*, back, 上 *shang⁴*, up, and 下 *hsia⁴*, down, they become neutral in tone; as *chin⁴ lai⁰*, to come in; *ch'u¹ ch'ü⁰*, to go out; *hui² lai⁰*, to come back; *shang⁴ lai⁰*, to come up, and *hsia⁴ lai⁰*, to come down. But when *shang⁴* and *hsia⁴* are used after verbs, they become neutral in tone; e.g. *ch'uan¹ shang⁰*, to put on (clothes); *ko¹ hsia⁰*, to put down. The second member of a compound word, having the same sense with the first one, is generally neutral in tone; e.g. 朋 < *yu³* > *p'êng-yu⁰*, a friend, both mean 'a friend'; 看見 *k'an⁴-ch'ien⁰*, to see, both mean 'to see'; 蛤蟆 *ha²-ma⁰*, a frog, both mean 'a frog'. 年 *nien²*, year, and 天



t'ien¹, day, when used as second members of compounds, generally become neutral in tone; as, 今年 chin¹ nien⁰, this year; 明年 ming² nien⁰, next year; 今天 chin¹ t'ien⁰, today; 明天 ming² t'ien⁰, tomorrow. 罷 pa⁴, as a sign of the imperative or a final particle of emphasis, loses its tone; e.g. ch'ü⁴ pa⁰, go away. kuo², country, when used after the name of a country, loses its tone; e.g. chung¹ kuo⁰, China; ying¹ kuo⁰, England, etc.

The pitch of the neutral tone is as follows:

1. When it is preceded by a syllable in either the first or second tone, it is medium in pitch and almost like that of the fourth tone; e.g. 玻璃 po¹-li⁰, glass, where both mean 'glass'; 名聲 ming²-shêng⁰, fame, where both mean 'fame'.

2. When it is preceded by a syllable in the third tone, its pitch becomes high and almost like that of the first tone; as, 可是 k'o³-shih⁰, however.

3. When it is preceded by a syllable in the fourth tone, its pitch becomes low; e.g. 目錄 mu⁴-lu⁰, catalogue.

4. When a neutral tone is preceded by another neutral tone, its pitch is regulated by that of the preceding one which in turn depends on that of the preceding tonal syllable.

a. If the pitch of the first neutral tone is medium quality by virtue of the quality of the first or second tone preceding it, it is considered as a syllable in the fourth tone in determining the pitch of the second neutral tone and consequently the pitch of the second neutral tone becomes low; as,

中國的 chung¹ kuo⁰ ti⁰, Chinese.

德 „ „ tē² kuo⁰ ti⁰, German.

b. If the pitch of the first neutral tone is high due to the influence of the quality of the third tone preceding it, it is regarded as a syllable in the first tone in determining the pitch of the second neutral tone and consequently the pitch of the second neutral tone becomes medium; e.g.

美國的 mei³ kuo⁰ ti⁰, American.

c. If the pitch of the first neutral tone is low, due to the influence of the quality of the fourth tone preceding it, the pitch of the second neutral tone rises up; as,

印度 < ti⁴ > yin⁴ tu⁰ ti⁰, Indian.

With the change of intonation, the meaning is also changed and sometimes the pronunciation too; e.g.

三 san¹, three; but san⁴, thrice; cf. 三思面行 san⁴ szü¹ (ssü¹) mine⁴ hsing², think thrice before you act; here san⁴, thrice, instead of 三回 or 次 san¹ hui² or tz'ü⁴, thrice; 少 shao³, few, a little; but shao⁴, young; 當 tang¹, should, to be equal to, to act as; but tang⁴, to treat as, to pawn; 要 yao¹, to demand; but yao⁴, must, necessary, want, wish, a sign of the future; 得 tê², to get; but tei³, must.

C. WRITING

I. The Strokes

There is a Chinese tradition that the character 永 yung³, meaning 'perpetual, eternal', consists of all strokes used in writing Chinese characters. In writing them the following rule should always be remembered:

First to begin from the left-hand side, at the top, to draw strokes from left to right, horizontal strokes before perpendicular ones, central strokes before those on each side and those on the left before those on the right; a single stroke often takes one and sometimes two curves, as on the left side of the above character consisting of six strokes or of eight strokes in the following orders:—

Six strokes.—The dot at the top, the small horizontal stroke at the top of the upright central stroke, the upright central stroke with the hook at its foot, a hooked angle stroke open to the left at the left side and the two strokes at the right side.

Eight strokes.—The dot at the top, the small horizontal stroke at the top of the upright central stroke, the upright central stroke without the hook, the hook at the foot of the upright central stroke, the two strokes at the left side and the two strokes at the right side.

There are few exceptions to the rule mentioned above; but they do not affect the general principle.

It is, however, better to set out the strokes in a different way.

There are six main strokes of which the first five have been included in the List of Radicals. They are:—

(1) Horizontal stroke	= Radical 1	一
(2) Vertical stroke	= Radical 2	丨
(3) A dot	= Radical 3	丶
(4) Downstroke to the left	= Radical 4	乚
(5) A hook facing to the left	= Radical 6	乚
(6) Downstroke to the right		㇏

The following variants of numbers (1), (3) and (5) should also be noted :—

(1a) Horizontal stroke with a hook at the right



(3a) Downward dot



(3b) Upward dot



(5a) A hook facing to the right



To these the following angles must be added :—

(1) angle open to the right



(2) hooked angle open to the right



(3) pointed angle open to the right



(4) hooked angle open to the left



(5) double angle open to the left



II. Rules for the Order of Strokes

(i) Top before bottom.

Cf. Radicals—7, 8, 15, 27, 48, 53, 59, 71, 89, 95, 110, 112, etc.

Exceptions—

(a) Top stroke, which is connected with right-hand stroke, is preceded by left-hand stroke.

Cf. Radicals—13, 14, 16, 30, 31, 72, 73, 74, 80, 101, 108, 109, 122, 154, 157, 163, 166, 203, 205, 206.

(b) Top dot is often written last.

Cf. Radicals—56, 62, 94.

(ii) Left before right.

Cf. Radicals—9, 10, 11, 12, 17, 20, 25, 28, 29, 34, 35, 36, 47, 61, etc.

Exceptions—

(a) Right-hand dot or angle is sometimes written first.

Cf. Radicals—18, 19, 21, 26, 44, 63, 70, 81, 138, 163, 178.

(b) Middle stroke or part is sometimes written first.

Cf. Radicals—42, 46, 77, 85, 175, 179, 206.

(c) In Radicals 54 and 162 left stroke is always written last.

(iii) Horizontal stroke is written before crossing vertical or other down-strokes.

Cf. Radicals—24, 37, 41, 43, 51, 55, 56, 64, 65, 71, 75, 82, 93, etc.

Exception—

Bottom horizontal stroke is always written last.

Cf. Radicals—32, 33, 48, 77, 96, 133, 166, 172.

(iv) Rectangle is written before crossing vertical or other downstrokes.

Cf. Radicals—142, 159, 166, 177.

Though there are exceptions, the first two rules (i.e. Top before Bottom and Left before Right) are strictly observed.

RADICALS AND HOW TO WRITE THEM

ONE STROKE

1. 一 i¹, one.
2. | kun¹, a perpendicular stroke.
3. 丶 chu³, a point, as of a flame.
4. 丿 p'ieh³, a dash, a downstroke to the left.
5. 乙 i⁴, one.
6. 乚 ku¹ (chüeh²), a barb, a vertical stroke ending in a hook.

TWO STROKES

7. 二 êrh², two ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.
8. ㇚ t'ou², above ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke below.
9. 人 jên², man ;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a downstroke to the right.
- a — (1) a small downstroke to the left, (2) a long vertical stroke on the right side touching the point below the top of the former stroke. Cf. 仁.
10. 儿 jên², man ;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the right.
11. 入 ju⁴, to enter ;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a downstroke with a horizontal stroke at the top to the right, touching the former stroke at its top.
12. 八 pa¹, eight ;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a downstroke with a horizontal stroke at the top to the right without touching the top of the former stroke.
13. 匚 chiung³, a desert ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left.

14. 冂 mi⁴, a cover, to cover; national phonetic letter for m;—(1) a dot, (2) a horizontal stroke with a hook to the right.
 15. 冫 ping¹, ice;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) an upward stroke at the bottom. Cf. 冬 and 况.
 16. 几 chi¹, a bench, a small table;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the right with a horizontal stroke at the top.
 17. 凵 k'an³, a receptacle;—(1) an angle open to the right, (2) a vertical stroke on the right side.
 18. 刀 tao¹, a knife, a sword, a razor; national phonetic letter for t;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left, (2) a downstroke to the left, touching the former one on the left side.
a —(1) a small vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hook facing to the left on the right side without touching the former one. Cf. 刈.
 19. 力 li⁴, strength;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left, (2) a downstroke to the left crossing the horizontal arm of the hooked angle.
 20. 勹 pao¹, a parcel, to wrap; national phonetic letter for p;—(1) a dot to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left touching the dot on the right side.
 21. 匕 pi³, a spoon or ladle;—(1) a downstroke, (2) a hooked angle open to the right crossing the former one.
 22. 匚 fang¹, a box, a basket; national phonetic letter for f;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a hooked angle open to the right on the left side touching the left end of the former stroke.
 23. 匸 hsi³, a box, to conceal;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a hooked angle open to the right, meeting the former stroke at a point not far from the left end.
- Note.*—In writing characters both the radicals, i.e. Nos. 22 and 23, are the same.
24. 十 shih², ten;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a vertical stroke crossing the former one.
 25. 卜 pu³, to divine, to foretell;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a dot to the right.
 26. 冂 chieh² or tsieh², a joint; national phonetic letter for ts;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (2) a vertical stroke to the left.



- a —(1) a hooked angle open to the left at the top, (2) a hooked angle open to the right at the foot touching the former one. Cf. 危. This variant is used when it is the lower portion of a character.
27. 厂 han⁴, a cliff ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left touching the left extremity of the former stroke.
28. 厶 ssü¹, selfish, private ; national phonetic letter for s ;—(1) a pointed angle open to the right, (2) a dot.
29. 乂 yu⁴, and, also ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left, (2) a downstroke to the right crossing through the lower arm of the former stroke.

THREE STROKES

30. 凵 k'ou³, a mouth, an opening ;—(1) a vertical stroke on the left side, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke below.
31. 匚 wei², an enclosure ;—a vertical stroke on the left side, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke below.

Note.—In writing characters Nos. 30 and 31 are the same. But the latter encloses the other half of the character.

32. 土 t'u³, earth ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a vertical stroke crossing the former one, (3) a longer horizontal stroke at the foot.
- a —(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a vertical stroke crossing the former one, (3) an upward oblique stroke at the foot. Cf. 圻.
33. 士 shih⁴, a scholar ;—(1) a horizontal line, (2) a vertical line crossing the former one, (3) a small horizontal line at the foot.
34. 攴 chih³, to follow ;—(1) a dot to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a downstroke to the right.
35. 攴 sui¹, to walk slowly ;—(1) a dot, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a downstroke to the right, crossing both strokes.
36. 夕 hsi², evening, dusk ;—(1) a dot, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a dot in the middle.
37. 大 ta⁴, great, big ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a downstroke to the left crossing across the horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the right.
38. 女 nü³, a woman ;—(1) an angle open to the right on the left side, (2) a downstroke to the left crossing the lower arm of the angle

on the right side, (3) a horizontal stroke crossing the upper arm of the angle and touching the top of the downstroke.

- a —(1) an angle open to the right on the left side, (2) a downstroke to the left on the right side crossing the lower arm of the angle, (3) an upward stroke touching the top of the downstroke. Cf. 妃.

39. 子 tzū³, a son ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke with a hook to the right at the top, (2) a hook facing to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke crossing the hook.

- a —(1) a small horizontal stroke with a hook to the right at the top, (2) a hook facing to the left, (3) an upward dot crossing the upper portion of the hook. Cf. 孔.

40. 宀 mien², a roof ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a dot to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke with a hook to the right.

41. 寸 ts'un⁴, an inch ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a hook facing to the left crossing the horizontal stroke at a point not far from the right extremity, (3) a dot below the horizontal stroke and on the left side of the hook.

42. 小 hsiao³, small ;—(1) a hook facing to the left, (2) a dot to the left, (3) a dot on the right side.

43. 尢 wang¹, lame ; national phonetic final for -ang ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a downstroke to the left crossing the horizontal stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the right below the horizontal stroke and on the right side of the downstroke.

- a —(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke touching the horizontal stroke below at a point not far from the left extremity, (3) a hooked angle open to the right touching the horizontal stroke below at a point not far from the right extremity. Cf. 𠂔.

44. 尸 shih¹, a corpse ; national phonetic letter for sh ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke with a hook, (2) another small horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left.

45. 屮 ch'ê⁴, plants sprouting ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the right, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left in the middle.

46. 山 shan¹, a hill, a mountain ;—(1) a central vertical stroke, (2) a hooked angle open to the right, (3) a vertical stroke on the right side.

47. 𡿨 ch'uan¹, stream, to flow ;—(1) an angle open on the right at the left side, (2) a central angle open to the right, (3) an angle open to the right on the right side.

- a 川—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a central vertical stroke, (3) a vertical stroke to the right.
48. 工 kung¹, labour, labourer, to work ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke at the foot.
49. 己 chi³, self, personal ;—(1) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the right.
50. 巾 chin¹, a napkin or towel ;—(1) a small vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a long central vertical stroke.
51. 干 kan¹, to oppose, a shield ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke.
52. 幺 yao¹, small, tender ; national phonetic letter for ao ;—(1) an angle open to the right at the top, (2) an angle open to the right at the foot, (3) a dot.
53. 广 yen³, a roof, a shelter ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left.
54. 彳 yin³, to move on ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left at the top, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a downstroke to the right.
55. 扌 kung³, the hands folded ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a downstroke to the left on the left side, (3) a vertical stroke on the right side.
56. 弋 ih⁴, a dart ;—(1) an oblique stroke, (2) a hook facing to the right, (3) a dot.
57. 弓 kung¹, a bow ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) an angle open to the right with a vertical stroke at the top.
58. 彡 chi⁴, a pig's head ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left, (2) a central horizontal stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke at the foot.
- a —(1) a hooked angle open to the right, (2) a hooked angle open to the left touching the middle of the upper arm of the hooked angle by its upper arm and touching the right extremity of the lower arm of the hooked angle by its lower arm, (3) a horizontal stroke at the foot of the prolonged lower arm of the second hooked angle open to the left.
- b —(1) a hooked angle open to the left, (2) a central horizontal stroke crossing the lower arm of the hooked angle, (3) a horizontal stroke at the foot. Cf. 彳.

59. 三 shan¹, feathers ;—(1) a downstroke to the left at the top, (2) a central downstroke to the left, (3) a downstroke to the left at the foot.
60. 彳 ch'ih, a step with the left foot, to walk ; national phonetic letter for ch' ;—(1) a downstroke to the left at the top, (2) a central downstroke to the left, (3) a vertical stroke.

FOUR STROKES

61. 心 hsin¹, the heart ;—(1) a dot to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the right, (3) a central dot, (4) a dot on the right side.
- a —(1) a vertical stroke, (2) a dot to the left of the vertical stroke, (3) a dot to the right of the vertical stroke. Cf. 忡.
- b —(1) a hook facing to the left, (2) a dot to the left, (3) a dot to the right, (4) a dot to the right further. Cf. 忡.
62. 戈 ko¹, a spear, a lance ;—(1) an oblique stroke, (2) a hook facing to the right, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a dot.
63. 戶 hu⁴, a door ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a downstroke to the left.
64. 手 shou³, the hand ;—(1) an oblique stroke at the top, (2) a small central horizontal stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) a hook facing to the left touching the middle of the oblique stroke and crossing the two horizontal strokes.
- a —(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a hook facing to the left crossing the middle of the horizontal stroke, (3) an upward stroke crossing the hook below the horizontal stroke. Cf. 扎.

Note.—In writing characters the first one is used at the foot and the second one, i.e. the variant, on the left side.

65. 支 chih¹, a branch, descendants ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right.
66. 攴 p'u³, to rap, to tap ; national phonetic letter for p' ;—(1) a vertical stroke at the top, (2) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the vertical stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right crossing the middle of the lower arm of the hooked angle.
- a —(1) a dot on the left side of the top, (2) a horizontal stroke touching the dot to the right, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right crossing the former downstroke. Cf. 攴.

67. 文 wên², literature ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right crossing the former downstroke.
68. 斗 tou³, a dry measure ;—(1) a dot, (2) a dot just below the first dot, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke crossing the horizontal stroke.
69. 斤 chin¹, sixteen ounces ; a catty, fixed at 1½ lb. avoirdupois for tariff purposes ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke.
70. 方 fang¹, a place, a region, square ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a downstroke to the left.
71. 无 wu², without, not ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke just below the first small horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left crossing across the second horizontal stroke, (4) a hooked angle open to the right.
- a 无 —(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) an angle open to the right below without touching the horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left touching the middle of the horizontal stroke and crossing across the base of the angle open to the right, (4) a hooked angle open to the right.
72. 日 jih⁴, the sun, day ; national phonetic letter for j ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a central horizontal stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke at the foot.
- a —(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left ; (3) a central horizontal stroke, (4) an upward stroke at the foot of the vertical stroke touching the lower arm of the hooked angle at a point far from the lower extremity but below the right extremity of the central horizontal stroke.
73. 曰 yüeh⁴, to speak ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a small central horizontal stroke, which does not touch the side of the hooked angle, (4) a horizontal stroke at the foot.
74. 月 yüeh⁴, the moon, month ;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a central horizontal stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke.
75. 木 mu⁴, wood ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a hook facing to the left, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right.
76. 欠 ch'ien⁴, to owe money ;—(1) a dot at the top of the left side, (2) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right. It is always used on the right side.

77. 止 chih³, to stop, to desist ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the right, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) a small vertical stroke to the left, (4) a horizontal stroke at the foot.
78. 歹 tai³, bad, vicious ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a dot within.
Cf. 殳.
79. 殳 shu¹, a spear, to kill ;—(1) a small downstroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the right with a small horizontal stroke at the top of the hooked angle, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right.

Note.—In writing characters it is used on the right side.

80. 毋 wu², no, not ;—(1) an angle open to the right on the left side, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a vertical stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke. Cf. 毒 and also 𣎵.
81. 比 pi³, to compare ;—(1) a dot to the left of the pointed angle open to the right, (2) a pointed angle open to the right, (3) a dot to the right of the hooked angle open to the right, (4) a hooked angle open to the right.
82. 毛 mao², the hair of an animal, fur ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a small central horizontal stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a hooked angle open to the right.
83. 氏 shih⁴, a family, a clan ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a pointed angle open to the right on the left side, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) an angle open to the right.
84. 气 ch'i⁴, breath, vapour ;—(1) a dot, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke, (4) an angle open to the right with a horizontal stroke at the top.
85. 水 shui³, water ;—(1) a hook facing to the left in the middle, (2) a hooked angle to the left, (3) a stroke to the right above, (4) a downstroke to the right below.
a —(1) a dot at the top, (2) below another dot, (3) a small oblique stroke from the foot upward on the right side. Cf. 汀.
- Note.*—The variant is only used on the left side of the character.
86. 火 huo³, fire ;—(1) a dot to the left, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a stroke at the top of the right side, (4) a downstroke to the right below.
a —(1) a dot to the left, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a dot at the top of the right side, (4) a dot below on the right side without touching the former dot. Cf. 灶.

b —Consecutive four dots without touching one another. Cf. 𩺰

Note.—a is used on the left side of the character and b at the foot.
In some of the characters both are used; the former to the left and the latter at the bottom, e.g. 燃.

87. 爪 chao³, the claws of birds or animals, to scratch;—(1) a stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left on the left side, (3) a central vertical stroke, (4) a downstroke to the right on the right side.

a —(1) an oblique stroke at the top, (2) a dot to the left below the stroke, (3) a central dot below the stroke, (4) a dot to the right below the stroke. Cf. 爭.

Note.—With the exception of one character, i.e. 爬 pa, to scratch, where the radical is used to the left, in all other cases the variant is used and it is used at the top.

88. 父 fu⁴, father;—(1) a dot on the left side of the top, (2) a dot on the right side of the top, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right crossing across.

89. 爻 hsiao², to intertwine, crosswise;—(1) a stroke on the left side of top, (2) a stroke at the top crossing across, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the right crossing across.

Note.—In writing characters double cross is used. Cf. 𩺰.

90. 爿 ch'iang¹, a bed, a couch;—(1) an angle open to the right, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke to the left, (4) a downstroke to the left.

91. 片 p'ien⁴, a splinter, a slice;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a small vertical stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke, (4) a hooked angle open to the left.

92. 牙 ya², the molars, a tooth;—(1) a stroke at the top, (2) an angle open to the right, (3) a hook facing to the left, (4) a downstroke to the left.

93. 牛 niu², an ox, a cow;—(1) a dot to the left, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke crossing across.

a —(1) a dot to the left, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) a hook facing to the left crossing across, (4) an upward oblique stroke crossing the hook. Cf. 牝.

Note.—The radical is used at the foot and the variant on the left side of the character.

94. 犬 ch'üan³, the dog;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a downstroke to the left crossing across, (3) a downstroke to the right, (4) a dot.

a —(1) an oblique stroke at the top, (2) a curve with a hook facing to the left, crossing the middle of the former stroke, (3) an upward oblique stroke touching the curve. Cf. 犯.

Note.—The radical is used at the top, foot or on the right side of the character; while the variant is always used on the left side.

FIVE STROKES

95. 玄 hsüan², dark, black;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) an angle open to the right, (4) an angle open to the right at the foot, (5) a dot on the right side of the base of the angle at the foot.

96. 玉 yü⁴, a gem;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a central small horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke at the foot, (5) a dot.

a —(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a central small horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke, (4) an oblique stroke at the bottom of the vertical stroke. Cf. 玨.

Note.—The radical is always used at the foot of the character and the variant on the left side.

97. 瓜 kua¹, melons, gourds, cucumbers;—(1) a stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) an angle open to the right, (4) a dot on the right side of the base of the angle, (5) a downstroke to the right.

98. 瓦 wa³, a tile, pottery;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the right with a small horizontal stroke at its top, (4) a dot, (5) an upward stroke at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is used either at the foot or on the right side of the character.

99. 甘 kan¹, sweet;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a vertical stroke to the left across the horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke to the right across the horizontal stroke, (4) a small central horizontal stroke, (5) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

100. 生 shēng¹, to produce, to beget, to be born;—(1) a dot to the left, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a small central horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke across the two horizontal strokes, (5) a horizontal stroke at the foot.

101. 用 yung⁴, to use ;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a central horizontal stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke, (5) a vertical stroke across the two horizontal strokes.

102. 田 t'ien², field, land ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (3) a central horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke across the central horizontal stroke, (5) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

103. 疋 p'i³, the foot, a roll of cloth ;—(1) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke to the right, (4) a downstroke to the left, (5) a downstroke to the right at the bottom.

a —(1) a horizontal stroke with a hook at the top, (2) a vertical stroke, touching the extreme point of the hook, (3) a horizontal stroke to the right, (4) a smaller vertical stroke to the left of the former vertical stroke apart, almost half in length and slightly exceeding the base of the former vertical stroke, (5) an upward oblique stroke at the bottom of the two vertical strokes.

Note.—The variant is used on the left side of the character.

104. 疒 ni⁴, disease ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a dot on the left side above, (5) a dot on the left side below.

105. 夂 po⁴, back to back ;—(1) a downstroke to the left with the hook at the top, (2) a dot on the left side of the downstroke to the left, (3) a dot on the right side above, (4) a dot on the right side below, (5) a downstroke to the right.

Note.—This radical is always used at the top of the character.

106. 白 pai², white ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a central horizontal stroke, (5) a horizontal stroke at the foot.

107. 皮 p'i², skin, leather ;—(1) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a vertical stroke across the horizontal stroke, (4) a hooked angle open to the left, (5) a downstroke to the right.

Note.—With the exception of one character, this radical is always used on the right side.

108. 皿 ming³, a vessel, a utensil ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a vertical stroke to the left within, (4) a vertical stroke to the right within, (5) a horizontal stroke at the foot.

Note.—This radical is always used at the top of the character.

109. 目 mu⁴, the eyes;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke above within, (4) a horizontal stroke below within, (5) a horizontal stroke at the foot.

a —(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, the vertical arm of which is longer than the vertical stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke above within, (4) a horizontal stroke below within, (5) an upward oblique stroke at the foot of the vertical stroke touching the vertical arm at a point nearer to the horizontal stroke below within.

b —a small vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left having horizontal arm long and vertical arm small and equal to the small vertical stroke to the left, (3) a vertical stroke to the left within, (4) a vertical stroke to the right within, (5) a long horizontal stroke at the foot. Cf. 眾.

Note.—The second variant is always used at the top of the character. When the radical is used at the top, it becomes double. Cf. 嬰.

110. 矛 mao², a lance, a spear;—(1) a small horizontal stroke with a hook at the top, (2) just below a dot, (3) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (4) a hook facing to the left, (5) a stroke on the left side of the hook.

111. 矢 shih⁴, a dart, an arrow;—(1) a stroke on the left side above, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a downstroke to the left across the second horizontal stroke, (5) a downstroke to the right.

112. 石 shih², stone, rock;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a vertical stroke, (4) a hooked angle open to the left, (5) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is always used either on the left side or at the foot.

113. 示 shih⁴, an omen, to manifest;—(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) just below another horizontal stroke, (3) a hook facing to the left, (4) a dot to the left of the hook, (5) a dot to the right of the hook.

a —(1) a dot at the top, (2) an acute angle open to the left just below the dot, (3) a vertical stroke touching the middle of the lower arm, (4) a dot touching the top of the vertical stroke on the right side.

Note.—The radical is always used at the bottom and the variant on the left side.

114. 内 jou³, a footprint;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) an oblique stroke across the arm of



the hooked angle, (4) a small stroke at the foot of the oblique stroke, (5) a dot on the right end of the small stroke.

Note.—This radical is always used at the bottom.

115. 禾 *ho*², crops, growing grain ;—(1) a stroke at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a hook facing to the left, (4) a downstroke to the left, (5) a downstroke to the right.

116. 穴 *hsüeh*⁴, a cave, a hole ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a dot to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (4) a downstroke to the left, (5) a downstroke to the right.

Note.—This radical is always used at the top.

117. 立 *li*⁴, to stand up ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) just below a stroke to the left, (4) a stroke to the right, (5) a horizontal stroke at the foot.

SIX STROKES

118. 竹 *chu*⁴, the bamboo ;—(1) a small downstroke at the top of the left side, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke, (4) a small downstroke at the top, (5) a small horizontal stroke, (6) a hook facing to the left.

- a —(1) a small downstroke to the left, (2) a small stroke, touching the former stroke in the middle, (3) a dot below the small stroke, touching the former stroke at a point in the middle of the downstroke, (4) a small downstroke to the left, (5) a small stroke, touching the former stroke in the middle, (6) a dot below the small stroke, touching the former stroke at a point in the middle of the downstroke.
Cf. 竿.

- b —(1) a small downstroke to the left, (2) a small stroke, touching the former stroke in the middle, (3) a small stroke parallel to the former stroke, touching the downstroke just below the former stroke, (4) a small downstroke to the left, (5) a small stroke touching the former stroke in the middle, (6) a small stroke parallel to the former horizontal stroke, touching the downstroke just below the former stroke.

Note.—In writing character the radical is never used ; but the variant is used and always at the top.

119. 米 *mi*³, hulled rice, uncooked rice ;—(1) a dot at the top of the left, (2) a dot at the top of the right, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a hook facing to the left across, (5) a downstroke to the left, (6) a downstroke to the right.

120. 糸 *ssü*¹, floss silk ;—(1) a pointed angle open to the right at the top, (2) a pointed angle open to the right across, (3) a dot on the right side of the base of the second pointed angle, (4) a hook facing to the left, (5) a dot on the left side of the hook, (6) a dot on the right side of the hook.

a —(1) a pointed angle open to the right at the top, (2) a pointed angle open to the right across, (3) a dot to the right extremity of the base of the second pointed angle, (4) three consecutive dots below the base of the second pointed angle beginning from the left side.

Note.—In writing the variant is used and is never used at the top.

121. 缶 *fou*³, pottery, earthenware ;—(1) a dot on the left side of the top, (2) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke across the second horizontal stroke, (5) an angle open to the right, (6) a small vertical stroke on the right side.

Note.—This radical is used either on the left side or at the bottom.

122. 网 *wang*³, a net ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a small downstroke to the left on the left side, (4) a stroke across the small downstroke, (5) a small downstroke to the left on the right side, (6) a stroke across the small downstroke.

a —(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) an oblique stroke to the right within on the left side, (4) an oblique stroke to the left within on the right side, (5) a horizontal stroke at the foot of all the strokes.

Cf. 罟.

b —(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) an oblique stroke to the right within on the left, (4) an oblique stroke to the left within on the right side, (5) a horizontal stroke touching only the last two strokes within at the foot. Cf. 罟.

c —(1) a dot to the left of the top, (2) a horizontal stroke with a hook to the right touching the dot, (3) a downstroke to the left on the left side below, (4) a hooked angle open to the right on the right side below. Cf. 罟.

d —(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a small oblique stroke to the left within to the left, (4) a small oblique stroke to the right within to the right. Cf. 罟.

Note.—The variant a is used at the top of almost all the characters made of this radical.

123. 羊 yang², a sheep, a goat :—(1) a dot to the left of the top, (2) a dot to the right of the top, (3) just below a horizontal stroke, (4) a central horizontal stroke, (5) a horizontal stroke below, (6) a vertical stroke across.

a —(1) a dot to the left of the top, (2) a dot on the right side of the top, (3) just below a horizontal stroke, (4) a central horizontal stroke, (5) a vertical stroke across, (6) a horizontal stroke at the foot. Cf. 羔.

124. 羽 yü³, feathers ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left on the left side, (2) a downward stroke within at the top, (3) an upward stroke below within, (4) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (5) a downward stroke within at the top, (6) an upward stroke below within.

125. 老 lao³, old, aged ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke across, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) a downstroke to the left, crossing the right side of the horizontal stroke, (5) a hooked angle open to the right, (6) a stroke within the hooked angle.

a —(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke across, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) a downstroke to the left crossing the right side of the horizontal stroke. Cf. 考.

126. 而 êrh², and, also ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a dot just below, (3) a vertical stroke on the left side of the bottom, (4) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side of the bottom, (5) a stroke to the left inside, (6) a stroke to the right inside.

127. 耒 lui³ or lei³, a plough ;—(1) an oblique stroke at the top, (2) below a horizontal stroke, (3) below another horizontal stroke, (4) a hook facing to the left across, (5) a downstroke to the left on the left side of the hook, (6) a downstroke to the right on the right side of the hook.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.

128. 耳 êrh³, the ear ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a small vertical stroke to the left, (3) a vertical stroke to the right, (4) a horizontal stroke at the top inside, (5) a central horizontal stroke inside, (6) a stroke below. Cf. also 睪.

129. 聿 yü⁴, a pencil ; (1) a horizontal stroke with a hook at the top, (2) below a comparatively long horizontal stroke, (3) below a horizontal stroke, (4) below a horizontal stroke, (5) below a horizontal stroke, (6) a vertical stroke across.

130. 肉 ju⁴, meat, flesh ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a stroke across the top, (4) a dot on the right side of the previous stroke, (5) below a stroke to the left, (6) a dot on the right side of the previous stroke.
- a —(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left with its vertical arm longer than the downstroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (4) below an upward stroke. Cf. 肘.
131. 臣 ch'ên², a statesman, a subject ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) below a vertical stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (4) below a horizontal stroke, (5) below a vertical stroke, (6) an angle open to the right at the bottom.
132. 自 tzŭ⁴, self, personal ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a horizontal stroke at the top within, (5) a central horizontal stroke within, (6) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

Note.—It is used at the top of the character.

133. 至 chih⁴, to reach ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) below a pointed angle open to the right, (3) a dot on the right side, (4) below a horizontal stroke, (5) a vertical stroke across, (6) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.
134. 臼 chiu⁴, a mortar, a bowl ;—(1) a dot at the top of the left, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a dot on the right side of the vertical stroke, (5) a dot on the left side of the hooked angle, (6) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.
135. 舌 shê², the tongue ;—(1) an upward stroke at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke across, (4) below a vertical stroke to the left, (5) a hooked angle open to the left, (6) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.
136. 舛 ch'uan³, to oppose, contrary to ;—(1) a stroke at the top of the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a dot within, (4) a horizontal stroke to the right, (5) just below a hooked angle open to the right, (6) a vertical stroke across.
137. 舟 chou¹, a boat, a vessel ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a horizontal stroke in the middle, (5) a dot above the horizontal stroke, (6) a dot below the horizontal stroke.

Note.—It is always used on the left side of the character.

138. 艮 kên⁴, a limit, hard ;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke below, (3) another horizontal

stroke, (4) a pointed angle open to the right, (5) a dot, (6) a downstroke to the right on the left side of the dot.

139. 色 *sé⁴*, colour;—(1) a dot at the top of the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left at the top of the right, (3) below a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a vertical stroke in the middle, (5) horizontal stroke below, (6) a hooked angle open to the right at the bottom.

140. 艸 *ts'ao³*, grass, straw;—(1) an angle open to the right on the left side, (2) a downstroke to the left across, (3) a vertical stroke to the right of the downstroke to the left, (4) an angle open to the right, (5) a downstroke to the left across, (6) a vertical stroke on the right side of the downstroke to the left.

a —(1) an oblique downstroke to the left, (2) a small horizontal stroke crossing the middle of the former stroke, (3) an oblique downstroke to the right—the space between the two oblique strokes at the top is more extended than the space between the two at the foot, (4) a small horizontal stroke crossing the middle of the second oblique downstroke without touching other two strokes. Cf. 芳.

Note.—In writing characters the variant is always used at the top with the exception of two characters where the radical is used.

141. 虍 *hu¹*, the tiger;—(1) a vertical stroke at the top, (2) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the vertical stroke, (3) below another horizontal stroke with a hook, (4) a downstroke to the left, (5) an oblique stroke on the right side of the downstroke to the left, (6) a hooked angle open to the right.

142. 虫 *ch'ung²*, worms, insects;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) a vertical stroke across, (5) an oblique stroke at the bottom, (6) a dot on the right side of the oblique stroke.

143. 血 *hsieh³*, blood;—(1) a dot at the top; vide R. 108.

144. 行 *hsing²*, to walk, to do;—(1) vide R. 60; then (2) a dot at the top, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a hook facing to the left.

Note.—In writing characters this radical is split up into two and in between the second part of the character is written.

145. 衣 *i¹*, clothing;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a horizontal stroke, (3) a small downstroke to the left, (4) a hook facing to the right, (5) a dot, (6) a downstroke to the right on the left side of the dot.

a —(1) a dot at the top, (2) an angle open to the left below, much less than a right angle, (3) a vertical stroke, touching the

upper portion of the arm other than the horizontal one, (4) a small stroke at the top of the right side of the vertical stroke, (5) below it another small stroke. Cf. 衫.

Note.—The variant is used on the left side of the character.

146. 𠂔 hsi¹, the west;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a vertical stroke to the left from the small horizontal stroke across the upper side of the hooked angle, (5) a vertical stroke to the right from the small horizontal stroke across the upper side of the hooked angle, (6) a horizontal stroke at the foot. Cf. 賈.

SEVEN STROKES

147. 見 chien⁴, to see;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left, (3) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (4) a small horizontal stroke below within, (5) an angle open to the left on the left side of the bottom, (6) a hooked angle open to the right on the right side of the bottom.
148. 角 chio², a horn, an angle, a corner;—(1) a dot on the left side of the top, (2) an angle open to the left on the right side of the top, (3) a downstroke to the left, (4) a hooked angle open to the left, (5) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (6) a vertical stroke across, (7) an upward stroke at the foot within.
149. 言 yen², words, speech, to speak;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) below a horizontal stroke, (3) below a small horizontal stroke, (4) below another small horizontal stroke, (5) vide R. 30.
150. 谷 ku³, a valley, a hollow;—(1) a dot on the left side of the top, (2) a dot on the right side of the top, (3) a downstroke to the left on the left, (4) a downstroke to the right on the right side, (5) vide R. 30.
151. 豆 tou⁴, beans, peas;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) vide R. 30, (3) a dot to the left, (4) a dot to the right, (5) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.
152. 豕 shih³, a pig, a hog;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) below a downstroke to the left, (3) a hook facing to the left, (4) a small downstroke to the left at the top of the left side of the hook, (5) below a small downstroke to the left on the left side of the hook, (6) a dot on the right side of the hook, (7) a downstroke to the right in between the hook and the dot.
153. 豸 ch'ih⁴, reptiles without feet, to discriminate, to loosen;—(1) a downstroke to the left at the top, (2) below a dot to the

left, (3) a dot to the right, (4) below a downstroke to the left, (5) a hook facing to the left, (6) a downstroke to the left at the top of the left side of the hook, (7) below a downstroke to the left on the left side of the hook.

154. 貝 *pei*⁴, cowries, shells, formerly used as currency;—(1) vide R. 109, (2) a dot on the left side of the bottom, (3) a dot on the right side of the bottom.

Or,

(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (3) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (4) below a small horizontal stroke, (5) an angle open to the left on the left side of the bottom, (6) a dot on the right side of the bottom.

155. 赤 *ch'ih*⁴, red, the colour of fire, the south;—(1) vide R. 32, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a hook facing to the left, (4) a dot on the left side, (5) a dot on the right side.

156. 走 *tsou*³, to walk, to go;—(1) vide R. 32, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the vertical stroke, (4) a downstroke to the left on the left side of the vertical stroke, (5) a downstroke to the right at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.

157. 足 *tsu*², the foot;—(1) vide R. 30, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the vertical stroke, (4) a downstroke to the left on the left side of the vertical stroke, (5) a downstroke to the right at the bottom.

a —(1) vide R. 30, (2) a vertical stroke to the right, (3) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the vertical stroke, (4) a small vertical stroke to the left, (5) an upward stroke at the bottom. Cf. 跣.

Note.—The radical is used at the bottom and the variant is generally used on the left side of the character.

158. 身 *shên*¹, the body;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (4) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (5) a central small horizontal stroke within, (6) below an upward stroke, (7) further below a downstroke to the left.

Or,

(1) a dot at the top, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (4) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (5) a central small horizontal stroke within, (6) an angle open to the left below.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.



159. 車 ch'ē¹, a cart, a carriage or chariot, a barrow ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) vide R. 72, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) a vertical stroke across.
160. 辛^{*} hsin¹, bitter ;—(1) vide R. 117, (2) vide R. 24 at the foot.
161. 辰 ch'ēn², division of time, early morning, 7 to 9 a.m. ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a downstroke to the left, (3) a central horizontal stroke on the right side of the downstroke, (4) below another horizontal stroke, (5) a hook facing to the right, (6) a dot on the right side of the downstroke, (7) a downstroke to the right in between the two.
162. 辵 ch'o⁴, walking ;—(1) a small downstroke to the left at the top, (2) a central small downstroke to the left, (3) below a small downstroke to the left, (4) a vertical stroke, (5) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the vertical stroke, (6) vide R. 9.
- a —(1) a dot at the top, (2) a double angle open to the left below, (3) a curved line to the right touching with its left side the foot of the double angle.

Note.—In writing characters, the variant is always used and is used at the bottom.

163. 邑 i⁴, a district city, a region ;—(1) vide R. 30, (2) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (3) a vertical stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke, (5) a hooked angle open to the right.
- a 阝 —(1) a double angle open to the left, (2) a vertical stroke on the right side. Cf. 邛.

Note.—The variant is written on the right side of characters.

164. 酉 yu³, spirits made from newly-ripe millet in the eighth month ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke below on the left side, (3) a hooked angle open to the left, (4) a downstroke to the left from the horizontal stroke passing through the upper side of the hooked angle, (5) another vertical stroke of the same length to the right from the horizontal stroke through the upper side of the hooked angle, (6) a small horizontal stroke at the bottom of the two vertical strokes, (7) below another vertical stroke.
165. 采 pien⁴, to separate, to distinguish ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) below a dot to the left, (3) a dot to the right, (4) vide R. 75.
166. 里 li³, a lane, a street, the country, a measure of length reckoned at 360 paces or about 1,890 feet English measure ;—(1) vide R. 73, (2) a small horizontal stroke below, (3) a long vertical stroke from the upper side of the R. 73 and across the small horizontal stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke at the foot.



EIGHT STROKES

167. 金 chin¹, gold, precious;—(1) vide R. 11, (2) a small horizontal stroke, (3) another horizontal stroke below, (4) a vertical stroke from the small horizontal stroke through the second horizontal stroke, (5) a dot on the left side of the vertical stroke, (6) a dot on the right side of the vertical stroke, (7) a horizontal stroke at the foot.

168. 長 ch'ang², long, of space or time; chang³, to grow, old, senior;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a horizontal stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke below, (5) below another long horizontal stroke, (6) a hook facing to the right, (7) a dot, (8) a downstroke to the right in between the two.

169. 門 mên², a door;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left at the top of the right side of the vertical stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke within the hooked angle, (4) a horizontal stroke at the bottom of the hooked angle, (5) a small vertical stroke to the right, (6) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side of the small vertical stroke, (7) a small horizontal stroke within, (8) below another horizontal stroke.

Note.—In writing the second part of the character is always placed between the two portions of this radical.

170. 阜 fu⁴, a mound, abundant, fertile;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a vertical stroke, (3) a hooked angle open to the left at the top of the right side of the vertical stroke, (4) a horizontal stroke below, (5) below another hooked angle open to the left, (6) just below a horizontal stroke, (7) vide R. 24.

a 阝—(1) a double angle open to the left on the right side, (2) a vertical stroke on the left side. Cf. 阡.

Note.—The variant is written on the left side of the character.

171. 隶 tai⁴, to reach;—(1) vide variant b of R. 58, (2) a hook facing to the left across, (3) a dot on the right side of the hook, (4) just below another dot, (5) a dot on the left side of the hook, (6) a downstroke to the right in between the two.

Note.—This radical is written on the right side of the character.

172. 隹 chui¹, short-tailed birds;—(1) vide variant a of R. 9, (2) a dot at the top, (3) below a horizontal stroke, (4) then another horizontal stroke, (5) next another horizontal stroke, (6) a vertical stroke across, (7) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

173. 雨 yü³, rain;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (4) a central vertical stroke, (5) a dot on the left side of the central vertical stroke, (6) just below another dot, (7) a dot on the right side of the central vertical stroke, (8) just below another dot.

a —(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a dot to the left below, (3) a horizontal stroke with a hook to the right touching the middle of the dot, (4) a central vertical stroke, (5) a smaller horizontal stroke on the left side of the central vertical stroke, (6) just below another smaller horizontal stroke, (7) a smaller horizontal stroke on the right side of the central vertical stroke, (8) just below another smaller horizontal stroke. Cf. 雷.

Note.—In writing characters only the variant is used at the top.

174. 青 ch'ing¹, the colour of nature;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) below another small horizontal stroke, (3) a vertical stroke across, (4) a horizontal stroke, (5) a downstroke to the left, (6) a hooked angle open to the left, (7) a small horizontal stroke within, (8) just below another small horizontal stroke.

175. 非 fei¹, wrong, bad, not, without;—(1) a downstroke to the left, (2) a dot on the left side of the downstroke, (3) below another dot, (4) below the third dot, (5) a vertical stroke to the right, (6) a dot on the right side of the second vertical stroke, (7) below another dot, (8) below the third dot.

Note.—This radical is always used at the bottom.

NINE STROKES

176. 面 mien⁴, the surface, the face;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a dot below, (3) a vertical stroke to the left, (4) a hooked angle open to the left, (5) a vertical stroke to the left within, (6) a vertical stroke to the right within, (7) a small horizontal stroke at the top in between the two vertical strokes within, (8) a small horizontal stroke below in between the two vertical strokes within, (9) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is used either to the left or at the bottom.

177. 革 kê², hides deprived of the hair, human skin;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a vertical stroke across to the left, (3) a vertical stroke across to the right, (4) a small horizontal stroke below, (5) vide R. 30, (6) a horizontal stroke below, (7) a vertical stroke across.

178. 韋 wei², leather, dressed hides, a thong;—(1) a hooked angle open to the left at the top, (2) a vertical stroke across, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) vide R. 30, (5) a small horizontal stroke below, (6) a hooked angle open to the right, (7) a vertical stroke across.
179. 韭 chiu³, leeks, onions;—(1) vide R. 175, (2) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.
180. 音 yin¹, a sound, a tone, a musical note, pronunciation;—(1) vide R. 117, (2) vide R. 72.
181. 頁 yeh⁴, a leaf, the page of a book, a leaf of a door, a lobe of the lungs or liver, the head;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a dot below, (3) vide R. 154.

Note.—This radical is always used on the right side of the character.

182. 風 fēng¹, wind, breath;—(1) a downstroke to the left on the left side, (2) a hooked angle open to the right with a horizontal stroke above on the right side, (3) a dot at the top within, (4) vide R. 142.
183. 飛 fei¹, to fly, to go quickly, quick;—(1) a double angle—one open to the left and the other open to the right at the top, (2) a dot at the top within the second angle open to the right, (3) just below another dot, (4) a dot, (5) just below a downstroke to the left, (6) a central vertical stroke, (7) a double angle—one open to the left across the downstroke and the central vertical stroke and the other open to the right, (8) a dot at the top within the second angle open to the right, (9) just below another dot.
184. 食 shih², food, to eat, to drink;—(1) a downstroke to the left on the left side of the top, (2) a downstroke to the right on the right side of the top, (3) a dot below, (4) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (5) below another horizontal stroke, (6) below that another horizontal stroke, (7) a hook facing to the right, (8) a dot on the right side of the hook facing to the right, (9) in between a downstroke to the right.

a —(1) a downstroke to the left on the left side of the top, (2) a downstroke to the right on the right side of the top, (3) a dot below, (4) a horizontal stroke with a hook, (5) below another horizontal stroke, (6) below that another horizontal stroke, (7) a hook facing to the right, (8) a dot on the right side of the hook facing to the right below the last horizontal stroke without touching it.

Note.—The variant is used on the left side of the character.

185. 首 shou³, the head, a chief, a leader, first, numerary adjunct of poems, plays, etc.;—(1) a dot to the left of the top, (2) a



dot to the right of the top, (3) a horizontal stroke below, (4) then a dot, (5) vide R. 109.

186. 香 hsiang¹, fragrant ;—(1) vide R. 115, (2) vide R. 72.

TEN STROKES

187. 馬 ma³, a horse ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a central horizontal stroke, (3) below another horizontal stroke, (4) a vertical stroke across, (5) a hooked angle open to the left with a vertical stroke at the top, (6) four dots from left to right within the angle open to the left.

188. 骨 ku³, a bone, a framework as of a fan or an umbrella ;—(1) a vertical stroke on the left side of the top, (2) an angle open to the left on the right side of the former stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke to the right within, (4) a small vertical stroke from the left end of the small horizontal stroke within, (5) a dot to the left, (6) a horizontal with a hook, (7) a down-stroke to the left, (8) a hooked angle open to the left, (9) a small horizontal stroke at the top within, (10) just below another small horizontal stroke.

a —(1) a vertical stroke on the left side of the top, (2) an angle open to the left on the right side of the former stroke, (3) a small horizontal stroke to the left within, (4) a small vertical stroke from the right end of the small horizontal stroke within, (5)—(10) same as the original radical. Cf. 體.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.

189. 高 kao¹, high, tall, lofty, exalted, noble, eminent, high in price, loud in tone, good in quality ;—(1) vide R. 8, (2) vide R. 30, (3) a vertical stroke to the left, (4) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (5) vide R. 30 within.

190. 髟 piao¹, hair, shaggy ;—(1) a vertical stroke, (2) three small horizontal strokes from the top on the right side of the vertical stroke, (3) below a horizontal stroke, (4) vide R. 28 at the bottom, (5) three oblique strokes on the right side from the top.

Note.—This radical is always used at the top.

191. 鬥 ton⁴, to quarrel, to contest, to fight, to provoke ;—(1) a vertical stroke to the left, (2) three small horizontal strokes from the top on the right side of the vertical stroke, (3) a small vertical stroke across, (4) three small horizontal strokes from the top, (5) a small vertical stroke across, (6) a hook facing to the left on the right side.

Note.—The second part of the character is placed in between the two portions of the radical.

192. 鬯 ch'ang⁴, sacrificial spirits made fermenting millet and fragrant herbs ;—(1) a small downstroke to the left, (2) a small downstroke to the right across, (3) four dots within the four angles beginning from the angle to the left in a clockwise way ; (4) vide R. 17 below ; (5) then a small downstroke to the left, (6) a hooked angle open to the right at the bottom.

193. 鬲 kê⁴, a large earthen pot, a large iron cauldron ;—(1) a small horizontal stroke at the top, (2) vide R. 30 below, (3) a vertical stroke to the left, (4) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (5) a dot on the left side of the top within, (6) a dot on the right side of the top within, (7) a small horizontal stroke below within, (8) just below a small vertical stroke within.

194. 鬼 kuei³, disembodied spirits, demons, spirits of the dead, ghost, goblin ;—(1) a dot on the left side of the top, (2) vide R. 102 below, (3) a downstroke to the left on the left side, (4) a hooked angle open to the right on the right side, (5) vide R. 28 within the hooked angle.

ELEVEN STROKES

195. 魚 yü², fish ;—(1) a downstroke to the left on the left side of the top, (2) an angle open to the left on the right side of the top, (3) vide R. 102 below, (4) four dots beginning from the left at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is used either to the left or at the bottom.

196. 鳥 niao³, birds ;—(1) a dot at the top, (2) a vertical stroke to the left, (3) an angle open to the left on the right side, (4) three small horizontal strokes beginning from the top, (5) a hooked angle open to the left below, (6) four dots beginning from the left within the hooked angle.

197. 鹵 lu³, natural salt, rock-salt, alkaline soil ;—(1) a small vertical stroke at the top, (2) a small horizontal stroke on the right side of the small vertical stroke, (3) a vertical stroke to the left, (4) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (5) a small downstroke to the left within, (6) a small downstroke to the right across, (7) four dots within four angles beginning from the left in a clockwise way, (8) a horizontal stroke at the bottom.

198. 鹿 lu⁴, a deer, a stag ;—(1) vide R. 53, (2) an angle open to the left within, (3) a small vertical stroke to the left, (4) a small vertical stroke to the right, (5) just below a horizontal stroke, (6) a hook facing to the right on the left side, (7) a dot on the right side of the hook, (8) vide R. 21 to the right.

199. 麥 mai⁴, wheat ;—(1) a horizontal stroke, (2) a vertical stroke across, (3) vide R. 9 on the left side of the vertical stroke, (4) vide R. 9 on the right side of the vertical stroke, (5) vide R. 11 at the foot of the vertical stroke, (6) vide R. 36 at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.

200. 麻 ma², hemp ;—(1) vide R. 53, (2) vide R. 75 to the left within, (3) vide R. 75 to the right within.

TWELVE STROKES

201. 黃 huang², yellow, it was the Imperial colour ;—(1) a horizontal stroke at the top, (2) a small vertical stroke to the left across, (3) a small vertical stroke to the right across, (4) a smaller horizontal stroke below, (5) then a horizontal stroke, (6) below a vertical stroke to the left, (7) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (8) a small horizontal stroke within, (9) a vertical stroke across, (10) below a horizontal stroke, (11) at the bottom a dot to the left and (12) a dot to the right.

202. 黍 shu³, glutinous, a unit of weight ;—(1) vide R. 115, (2) at the foot a downstroke to the left on the left side and (3) a downstroke to the right on the right side, (4) below a hook facing to the left, (5) a dot at the top of the left side of the hook, (6) just below a dot, (7) a dot at the top of the right side of the hook, (8) just below a dot.

203. 黑 hei¹, black, dark, evil, secret ;—(1) a small vertical stroke to the left, (2) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (3) a dot to the left within, (4) a dot to the right within, (5) below a horizontal stroke, (6) then another horizontal stroke, (7) a vertical stroke across, (8) a horizontal stroke at the foot of the vertical stroke, (9) four dots beginning from the left at the bottom.

204. 黠 chih³, embroidery ;—(1) a small vertical stroke on the left side of the top, (2) a small vertical stroke on the right side of the top, (3) a dot to the left, (4) a dot to the right, (5) a horizontal stroke below, (6) just below a stroke to the left and (7) a stroke to the right, (8) below a vertical stroke to the left and (9) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (10) a vertical stroke across, (11) a dot on the left side of the vertical stroke, (12) a dot on the right side of the vertical stroke.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.



THIRTEEN STROKES

205. 黾 min³, a toad, a tree-frog;—(1) a small vertical stroke on the left side of the top, (2) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side of (1), (3) a small horizontal stroke below (1) on its right side, (4) a hooked angle open to the right below (3) on its right side, (5) a small vertical stroke on the left side of the hooked angle, (6) three small horizontal strokes beginning from the top in between (4) and (5), (7) a small horizontal stroke below the right arm of (2), (8) a vertical stroke below (7) on its left side, (9) a small hooked angle open to the left on the right side of (8), (10) two small horizontal strokes beginning from the top in between (8) and (9).

Note.—This radical is always used at the bottom of the character.

206. 鼎 ting³, a tripod of bronze with two ears, a caldron, a sacrificial vessel regarded as a type of Imperial power, the empire;—(1) vide R. 109, (2) a double angle—one open to the right and the other to the left, (3) a small horizontal stroke on the left side of the double angle, (4) just below a small downstroke to the left, (5) a vertical stroke, (6) a small vertical stroke on the right side of the top of the vertical stroke, (7) below a small horizontal stroke, (8) then another small horizontal stroke, (9) just below an angle open to the right.

Note.—This radical is always used at the bottom of the character.

207. 鼓 ku³, a drum, to drum;—to begin from the left—(1) vide R. 24, (2) vide R. 151, (3) vide R. 24, (4) vide R. 29.

a —(1) vide R. 24, (2) vide R. 151, (3) vide R. 107 on the right side.

208. 鼠 shu³ (also read ch'u³), a rat, a mouse, moles, squirrels;—(1) vide R. 134 at the top, (2) below two small strokes, beginning from the top, (3) a hook facing to the right on the left side of the two small strokes, (4) two small strokes beginning from the top, (5) a hook facing to the right on the left side of the small strokes, (6) a pointed angle open to the right on the right side.

Note.—This radical is always used to the left side of the character.

FOURTEEN STROKES

209. 鼻 pi², the nose;—(1) vide R. 132 at the top, (2) vide R. 102 in the middle, (3) vide R. 55 at the bottom.

Note.—This radical is used either to the left or on the right side of characters.

210. 齊 ch'i², even, regular, uniform, all alike, to arrange;—(1) vide R. 8 at the top, (2) just below two small strokes forming an

angle at the base, (3) below (2) a vertical stroke, (4) vide R. 18 on the left side of (3), (5) a dot on the right side of (3) and (6) in between a hook facing to the right, (7) a downstroke to the right on the right side of (6) and below (5), (8) at the bottom a downstroke to the left on the left side, (9) a vertical stroke to the right, (10) two small horizontal strokes beginning from the top in between them.

FIFTEEN STROKES

211. 齒 ch'ih³, the upper incisors;—(1) vide R. 77 at the top, (2) below R. 9 to the left, (3) R. 9 to the right, (4) just below a horizontal stroke, (5) R. 9 to the left, (6) R. 9 to the right, (7) below an angle open to the right on the left side, (8) a vertical stroke on the right side.


Note.—This radical is always used on the left side with the exception of one character where it is used at the bottom.

SIXTEEN STROKES

212. 龍 lung², the dragon, associated with rain, floods and geomancy; an emblem of imperialism;—to begin from the left—(1) vide R. 117 at the top, (2) below R. 74, (3) a double angle—one open to the right and the other to the left, (4) two small horizontal strokes—one touching the vertical side of the upper angle of the double angle and the other touching the foot of the vertical side of the lower angle of the double angle, (5) a hooked angle open to the right at the bottom, (6) three small horizontal strokes beginning from the top within the hooked angle.

213. 龜 kuei¹, the tortoise, longevity;—(1) a small downstroke to the left on the left side of the top, (2) an angle open to the left on the right side of the top, (3) a double angle open to the right on the left side, (4) an angle open to the left on the right side of (3) and below (1) and (2), (5) an angle open to the left on the left side of the lower part of the double angle, (6) a longer central stroke touching the lower part of the double angle, (7) below it a small horizontal stroke, (8) below another angle open to the left on the left side of the lower part of the double angle, (9) a longer central stroke touching the lower part of the double angle, (10) below it a small horizontal stroke, (11) a small horizontal stroke below the right arm of (4), (12) a vertical stroke below (11) touching it on its left side, (13) an angle open to the left on the right side of (12), (14) a downstroke to the left within the angle, (15) a downstroke to the right across within the angle, (16) a horizontal stroke below.

SEVENTEEN STROKES

214.  yo⁴, a flute, a tube;—(1) vide R. 11 at the top, (2) below a small horizontal stroke, (3) then R. 30 to the left, (4) R. 30 in the middle, (5) R. 30 to the right, (6) a vertical stroke to the left, (7) a hooked angle open to the left on the right side, (8) in between a small horizontal stroke, (9) a small vertical stroke to the left within across the small horizontal stroke, (10) another small vertical stroke on the right side within across the small horizontal stroke.

Note.—This radical is always used on the left side of the character.

FIRST LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

(Subject or Nominative and Object or Accusative are the same.)

1. 我 wo³, I.

2. 你 ni³, you.

3. 您 nin², you sir—a

polite form of address like Hindi āp and Bengali āpani.

4. 他 t'a¹, he.

5. 她 t'a¹, she.

6. 牠 t'a¹, it—very rarely used.

7. 們 mên² is added to the singular of personal pronouns to form the plural: as—我們 wo³-mên², we.

The singular and plural of nouns are alike.

8. 的 ti⁴ is added to form possessive case; as—他的 t'a¹-ti⁴, his.

9. 自己 tzü⁴-chi³, self—referring to the person in question: as—他自己 t'a¹ tzü⁴-chi³, himself.

1. Cantonese, ngo; Hakka, nga, ngo; Foochow, ngo, ngwai; Amoy, nga; Japanese, ga; Chinese old forms are nga, ga, go, kan, a. Cf. Tib. ཀ་ ḡa; Mikir, ne; Naga, ni; Burmese, ngā; Tamil, nān, yān; Malayalam, ñan (pronounced 'niān'); col. Canarese, nānu; col. Telugu, nēnu. Cf. also Sanskrit, mām (acc. sing.), má-y-ā (Inst. sing.), má-hyam (dat. sing.), mād (abl. sing.), má-ma (gen. sing.), má-y-i (loc. sing.) and also the following unaccented forms: sing. acc. mā, sing. dat. and gen. me (Gk. μοι), dual acc. dat. and gen. nau (Gk. ναι), plur. acc. dat. and gen. nas (Lat. nōs); Avestic, no, na (acc. plur.), no (dat. and gen. plur.); Lith. mus. (for nus) and Arabic أَنَا (ānā) nom. sing., نَحْنُ (nāḥnu) nom. dual, نَحْنُ (nāḥnu) nom. plur., نَا (nā) acc. and gen. dual and plur.

2. Cf. Tamil, nī, nin, nun (you); Telugu, nī, nin; Canarese, nīn, nīnu, nī, nin; Malayalam, nī, nin; Brahui, nī, nā.

4. Old Chinese, tat; Japanese, ta. Cf. Skt. tad; Gk. to, Lat. is-te, is-ta, is-tud; Lith. tas; Russ. tot; Eng. that.

7. Cf. Oriya plur. suffix mām or māne which is not identical with the E. H. plur. manāi 'men' from Skt. mānava 'man' as A. F. Rudolf Hoernle (A Comparative Grammar of the Gaudian Languages, p. 189), nor with māna (measure) as John Beams (A Comparative Grammar of the Modern Aryan Languages of India, II, 199).

8. Cf. Dravidian ti or ṭi, a possessive case-ending and is used to convert substantives into adjectives through the relation subsisting between possessives. The genitive case-affix is adjectival.

II. VERBS

10. 是 shih⁴, to be and 11. 有 yü³, to have, are conjugated alike in all tenses: as—

我是 wo³ shih⁴, I am or I was. 他有 t'a¹ yü³, he has or he had.

III. ADVERBS OF NEGATION

12. 不 pu⁴, not, is used with 'to be' verb and not with 'to have'.

as in connection with past action and never with 'to be' verb; as:—不我沒有 pu⁴, wo³ mei² yü³, No, I have not.

13. 沒 mei², not, is employed with 'to have' as well

Exercise

1. I am. 2. We are. 3. You are. 4. He is. 5. They are. 6. I have. 7. We have. 8. You have. 9. He has. 10. They have. 11. I was. 12. We were. 13. You were. 14. He was. 15. They were. 16. I had. 17. We had. 18. You had. 19. He had. 20. They had. 21. I have not. 22. We have not. 23. You have not. 24. He has not. 25. They have not. 26. Myself. 27. Yourself. 28. Himself. 29. Ourselves. 30. Themselves.

* 13. Cf. Skt. mā; Gk. μή; Egyptian, m or am; and Arabic لا mā; compare also Tib. མི mi.



THIRD LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

NUMERALS

A. CARDINALS

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. 一 i ¹ , one. | 15. 分 fên ¹ , to divide, division, a tenth, a part. |
| 2. 二 êrh ⁴ , two. | 16. 半 pan ⁴ , half, to halve. |
| 3. 三 san ¹ , three. | 17. 加 chia ¹ , to add to, to increase, to affix. |
| 4. 四 ssü ⁴ , four. | 18. 減 chien ³ , to diminish, to subtract, to lessen. |
| 5. 五 wu ³ , five. | 19. 如 ju ² , as, like. |
| 6. 六 liu ⁴ , six. | 20. 回 hui ² , to return, to revolve, time. |
| 7. 七 ch'i ¹ , seven. | 21. 見 chien ⁴ , to see, equal to (=). |
| 8. 八 pa ¹ , eight. | 22. 之 chih ¹ , the personal pronoun he, she or it; the demonstrative pronoun this, that, these, etc.; to go, to proceed; the sign of genitive, hereafter indicated by 'of' or '-s'. |
| 9. 九 chiu ³ , nine. | 23. 個 ko ⁴ , piece; a numerative or classifier of many nouns, hereafter indicated by 'piece'. |
| 10. 十 shih ² , ten. | |
| 11. 零 ling ² , zero (0), cypher, fraction. | |
| 12. 百 pai ³ , hundred. | |
| 13. 千 ch'ien ¹ , thousand. | |
| 14. 兩 liang ³ , two. In counting of persons or things, it is <u>more commonly</u> used than êrh ⁴ . | |

B. ORDINALS

The ordinals are formed by adding 第 ti⁴, 'number' before the cardinals, as:—

第 一 ti⁴-i¹, first.

„ 二 ti⁴-êrh⁴, second.

1. Cantonese, ik; Swatow, ék; Amoy, ek; Foochow, ek, ik. Cf. Skt. éka; Lat. aequ-us, equ-al (same as one); English, equal, equity, equator, equation; cf. also Telugu, êka, oka; the sub-Himalayan languages, ako in Miri, akhet in Naga.

2. Cf. Dravidian ir (two) and Brahui, irat.



Exercise (with hints)

1. Eleven = ten one.
 2. Twenty-two = two ten, two.
 3. Thirty-three = three ten, three.
 4. Two hundred and eighty-one = two hundred, eight ten, one.
 5. Three hundred and four = three hundred, cypher, four.
 6. Nineteen hundred and forty-nine = one thousand, nine hundred, four ten, nine.
 7. Five thousand and three = five thousand, cypher, three.
 8. Number seventeen = number ten seven.
 9. The seventeenth = number ten seven piece.
 10. One-third = three division's (-'s = $\frac{1}{3}$ chih¹) one.
 11. Three-tenths = ten division's three.
 12. Four times four is sixteen = four four ten six.
 13. Twice three is six = two three like six.
 14. One half = one half.
 15. Five added to two is seven = five piece add two piece is seven piece.
 16. Nine minus three is six = nine piece subtract three piece is six piece.
 17. Once addition = add one time.
 18. Once subtraction = subtract one time.
 19. Thrice three makes nine = three three see nine.
 20. Fifty-five.
 21. Seventy-seven.
 22. One-fourth = four division's one.
 23. Two-third = three division's two.
 24. The hundredth = number hundred.
 25. The thousandth = number thousand.
-



FOURTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>7. 1. 誰 <u>shui</u>², who. <i>shei</i></p> <p>2. 誰的 <u>shui</u>²-ti⁴, whose.</p> <p>3. 甚麼 <u>shên</u>²-mo³, what?</p> <p>Interrogative sentences generally end in 麼 mo³.*</p> <p>4. 這 <u>chê</u>⁴, this.</p> <p>5. 那 na⁴, that; na³, which.</p> <p>6. 裏 li³, in.</p> <p>7. 這裏 <u>chê</u>⁴-li³, here.</p> <p>8. 那裏 na⁴-li³, there: na³-li³, where.</p> <p>9. 些 <u>shieh</u>¹, a few, some; a sign of the comparative degree.</p> <p>10. 這些 <u>chê</u>⁴-<u>shieh</u>¹, these.</p> <p>11. 那 ,, nā⁴-<u>shieh</u>¹, those.</p> <p>12. 一 ,, i¹-<u>shieh</u>¹, some, a few.</p> <p>13. 樣 yang⁴, a kind, a manner.</p> <p>14. 這樣 <u>chê</u>⁴-yang⁴, such.</p> <p>15. 一樣 i¹-yang⁴, same.</p> <p>16. 頭 t'ou², top, end, head.</p> | <p>17. 裏頭 li³-t'ou², inside.</p> <p>18. 怎麼 tsên³-mo³, how.</p> <p>19. 多 to¹, many, much.</p> <p>20. 小 hsiao³, little, small.</p> <p>21. 少 shao³, few, short of, wanting in.</p> <p>22. 多少 to¹-shao³, how many?</p> <p>23. 爲 wei⁴, because of, for, on account of, by, to.</p> <p>24. 爲甚麼 wêi⁴-shên²-mo³, why?</p> <p>25. 幾 <u>chi</u>¹, several, many, how many? how much?</p> <p>26. 時 shih², time, opportunity.</p> <p>27. 幾時 chi¹-shih², when.</p> <p>28. 同同 t'ung²-t'ung², all.</p> <p>29. 在 tsai⁴, at, on. To 'be' verb is to be translated with it when used with 'adverb of place' i.e. here, there, etc.</p> |
|---|--|

* Cf. Arabic *lā mā*, what?

21. Chinese, shao⁴, young; Cf. Skt. *śāva*, the young of any animal (also applied to human beings; e.g. muni-*śāva*, a young sage).



Exercise (with hints)

1. Who is that man? = that piece man is who.
 2. He is my father = he is my father.
 3. Who is your friend? = your friend is who.
 4. That man is my friend = that piece man is my friend.
 5. Where are you? = you at where.
 6. I am here = I at here.
 7. Is this mine? = this piece is mine.
 8. Is that yours? = that piece is yours.
 9. What is that? = that is what.
 10. Who are you? you are who.
 11. She is inside = she is inside.
 12. Like father, like son = like (是 shih⁴) father like son.
-



FIFTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY (MAINLY VERBS)

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. 去 ch'ü⁴, to go.</p> <p>2. 來 lai², to come.</p> <p>3. 看 k'an⁴, to look.</p> <p>4. 見 chien⁴, to see.</p> <p>5. 看見 k'an⁴-chien⁴, to see.</p> <p>6. 做 tso⁴, to do, to make.</p> <p>7. 拿 na², to take.</p> <p>8. 拿來 na²-lai², to bring.</p> <p>9. 吃 ch'i¹, to eat.</p> <p>10. 飲 in³, to drink.</p> <p>11. 走 tsou³, to walk, to go.</p> <p>12. 等 têng, to wait.</p> <p>13. 玩 wan², to play.</p> <p>14. 想 hsiang³, to think, to ponder.</p> <p>15. 試試 shih⁴-shih⁴, to try.</p> | <p>16. 叫 chiao⁴, to call.</p> <p>17. 笑 hsiao⁴, to laugh.</p> <p>18. 聽 t'ing¹, to listen to.</p> <p>19. 買 mai³, to buy.</p> <p>20. 賣 mai⁴, to sell.</p> <p>21. 告 kao⁴, to tell, to inform, to announce.</p> <p>22. 訴 su⁴, to tell, to state, to inform, to accuse, to complain.</p> <p>23. 告訴 kao⁴-su⁴, to tell.</p> <p>24. 跑 p'ao², to run.</p> <p>25. 知 chih¹, to know.</p> <p>26. 道 tao⁴, way.</p> <p>27. 知道 chih¹-tao⁴, to know.</p> <p>28. 道兒 tao⁴-êrh, a road.</p> <p>29. 認 jên⁴, to recognise.
= Ren</p> |
|--|---|

1. Cf. Bengali, Guzrati, Assamese, Maithili $\sqrt{\text{chhuṭ}}$, to go quickly; Hindi, $\sqrt{\text{chhūṭ}}$; Marāṭi, $\sqrt{\text{suṭ}}$; Prakrit, $\sqrt{\text{chhūḍh}}$.

3. Cf. Dravidian $\sqrt{\text{kan}}$ to see, to look.

6. Cf. Skt. *chi-* in *chi-noti*, *chayati*, constructs, prepares; Av. *Çyao-thna*, deed, work; Gk. *ποι-* (by labialisation) in *ποιέω*, to make, to create, to compose; O. Slav. *činu*, order; N. Slav. *činiti*, to make; Bulgarian, *činja*, to do; Russ. *činu*, rank, 'tehin'.

25. Old sound, *chit*; cf. Skt. $\sqrt{\text{cit}}$, to perceive.

29. Cf. Skt. $\sqrt{\text{jan}}$, *jñā* in *jñāti*, he knows, *jñāta*, known; Av. *Zan*, in *ā-Zainti*, knowledge, *Zan-ta*, known; Armenian, *can*, in *can-eay*, I knew; Gk. *γνω* in *γνω-τός*, known; Lat. *recognoscere*, to recognise; Goth. *kunnan*; ME. pres. *t. kann* or *can*, with senses to understand, to be able; Mod. E. *know*.

30. 識 shih⁴, to recognise.
31. 認識 jên⁴-shih⁴, to recognise.
32. 問 wên⁴, to ask.
33. 上 shang⁴, above, upon, to.
34. 下 hsia⁴, below, down.
35. 坐 tso⁴, to sit.
36. 坐下 tso⁴-hsia⁴, to sit down.
37. 給 kei³, to give, to grant, to issue, to provide.
38. 請 ch'ing³, please; to invite, to request.
39. 了 liao³, to finish, to

complete; past, over; past tense (ed). When it is used as a final particle, it is pronounced 'lo'.

40. 要 yao⁴, to wish, to desire, to want.

There is no conjugation of a verb in the Chinese language. The same form of the verb is used in different voices, moods, numbers and persons. The past and future tenses are generally formed by means of the addition to a sentence of the words 了 liao³ and 要 yao⁴ respectively. The former is used after the verb and the latter before the verb.

Exercise (with hints)

1. Where are you going? = you go where.
2. We are going there = we go there.
3. They are coming here = they come here.
4. My son has come = my son come ed (liao³).
5. Has he gone? = he go ed not have; or he go ed mo³ (mo³).
6. Has the friend come? = friend come ed not have.
7. The man does not see = man not (pu⁴) look see.
8. The woman has not seen it = woman not (mei²) have look see.
9. The boy is not doing this = this piece boy not (pu⁴) do.
10. The girl has not done that = that piece girl not (mei²) do.
11. The man did not wait for me = man not (mei²) wait me.
12. He will buy it = he want buy.
13. Call him here = call him come.
14. It is no child's play = not is play child's (êrh²-ti⁴).
15. What did you ask him? = you ask him what.
16. Come up = up come.
17. Please sit down = please sit down.
18. She is not eating = she not eat.
19. My uncle did not do it = my uncle not (mei²) do.
20. He saw you, but you did not see him = he look see you lo, you not look see ed him.
21. He saw you, but you did not see him = he look see you lo, you not look see ed him.

22. I had gone before he came = he not come ed I walk ed.
23. Has your younger sister taken it ? = your younger sister take ed not have.
24. No, she has not taken it = she not take.
25. What do you want ? = you want what.
26. What is your maternal uncle bringing ? = your maternal uncle bring what.
27. He is bringing nothing = he not bring what.
28. What does he buy ? = he buy what.
29. I do not know what he buys = I not know he buy what.
30. What do you sell ? = you sell what.
31. I do not know what you sell = I not know you sell what.
32. I shall ask him to wait for me = I want invite him wait me.
33. My brother does not know where this road leads to = my brother not know this is to (shang⁴) where's road.
34. The girl is calling her mother = girl call her mother.
35. Good-bye = please.



SIXTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. 先 hsien ¹ , before, past deceased. | 12. 學堂 hsüeh ² -t'ang ² , a school. |
| 2. 生 shêng ¹ , to be born, to beget, to be alive; life. | 13. 大學堂 tā ⁴ hsüeh ² -t'ang ² , a university. |
| 3. 先生 hsien ¹ -shêng ¹ , before born; a title of respect, equivalent to English 'Mr.' or 'Sir'; a teacher. | 14. 大 ta ⁴ , great, big. |
| 4. 學 hsüeh ² , to learn, to study. | 15. 本 pên ³ , the root; numerative of books, documents, etc. |
| 5. 學生 hsüeh ² -shêng ¹ , a pupil, a student. | 16. 枝 chih ¹ , a branch, a prop.; numerative of flowers, pens, arrows, etc. |
| 6. 夢 mung ⁴ , a dream. | 17. 鉛 ch'ien ¹ , lead. |
| 7. 家 chia ¹ , family, home, people. | 18. 石 shih ² , stone, rock, mineral. |
| 8. 人家 jên ² -chia ¹ , people. | 19. 粉 fên ³ , powder, rice-flour. |
| 9. 書 shu ¹ , a book. | 20. 筆 pi ³ , a pen. |
| 10. 字 tzŭ ⁴ , character, letter. | 21. 鉛 „ ch'ien ¹ -pi ³ , a lead pencil. |
| 11. 堂 t'ang ² , a hall. | 22. 石 „ shih ² -pi ³ , a slate pencil. |
| | 23. 粉 „ fên ³ -pi ³ , chalk for the blackboard. |

We have seen above that in Chinese different numeratives or classifiers are used for different nouns, e.g.—

- 一個人 i¹ ko⁴ jên², a man.
- 一本書 i¹ pên³ shu¹, a book.
- 一枝筆 i¹ chih¹ pi³, a pen.

However in all these cases 個 ko⁴ may alone serve the purpose.



VERBS

24. 教 chiao¹, to teach.
 25. 讀 tu², to read, to study.
 26. 寫 hsieh³, to write.
 27. 洗 hsi³ or si³, to wash, to bathe, to purify.
 28. 澡 tsao³, to bathe.
 29. 洗澡 hsi³-tsao³, to bathe.
 30. 帶 tai⁴, to bring, to carry.

31. 求 ch'iu², to beg, to pray, to beseech, to implore.
 32. 作 tso⁴, to make, to do.
 33. „ 夢 tso⁴-mung⁴, to dream.
 34. 唱 ch'ang⁴, to sing.
 35. 說 shuo¹ (sho), to speak.
 36. 講 chiang³, to speak, to say, to explain, to discuss, to preach.
 37. 把 pa³, to take, to take hold of, to grasp.

Verbs do not change their forms in Chinese with the change in person and number, e.g.—

I write	(寫 hsieh ³).
We write	„
You (sing.) write	„
You (plur.) write	„
He writes	„
They write	„

In Chinese 有 yu³, 'to have' also represents English 'there is' and 'there are'; as,—

有一個人 yu³i¹ ko⁴ jen², there is a man.

Present Indicative, Present Progressive and an emphatic sentence in English are represented by the same verbal form in Chinese; e.g.—

女人唱 nü ³ -jên ² ch'ang ⁴ (= wo-	{	The woman sings.
man sing).		The woman is singing.
		The woman does sing.

Besides 了 liao³, the following Chinese words are used in forming the Past Tense in the Active Voice:—

1. 已經 i³-ching¹, already—both the words mean already.

finish, past, over.

2. 過 kuo⁴ to pass, to

3. 來着 lai²-cho² where the latter one means 'to place', 'to put on'.

EXAMPLES :

(a) 已經讀了書 i³-ching¹ tu² liao³ shu¹.

(b) „ „ „ tu² liao³ shu¹.

(c) „ 過 „ tu² kuo⁴ shu¹.

(d) „ 書來着 tu² shu¹ lai²-cho².

Each of the above examples has got four renderings into English:—

1. (He) has read the book.
2. (He) read the book.
3. (He) was reading the book.
4. (He) had read the book.

The Future Tense in the Active Voice is formed by adding the following Chinese words:—

1. 要 yao⁴, shall or will; to wish.
2. 就 chiu⁴, shall or will. It should be noted here that this word is a great help to the beginners as it expresses other ideas also, e.g., then, and, but, only.

Examples of the future tense:

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| 1. 他要來 t'a ¹ yao ⁴ lai ² | } He will come. |
| 2. „ 就 „ t'a ¹ chiu ⁴ lai ² | |

English 'should' and 'should have' are generally represented by 就 chiu⁴ in Chinese; as;—

我就讀書 wo³ chiu⁴ tu² shu¹, I should read or should have read a book.

The Subjunctive Mood in the Active Voice is often expressed by means of the following Chinese words:—

1. 或 huo⁴, if, perhaps.
2. 或者 huo⁴-che³, perhaps; where the latter one is a pronoun representing this, that, it, which, what, he, who, and those who. It is also a particle giving adjectival or adverbial sense to a word to which it is added.
3. 許 hsü³, may or might.
4. 也許 yeh³-hsü³, also might, where the former one means 'also'.

EXAMPLES :

1. I may or might (許 hsü³) read the book.

2. I may have or might have (也許 yeh³-hsü³) read (tu²) the book (shu¹) (lai²-cho²).

Or

I may have or might have (或者 huo⁴-che³) read (tu²) the book (shu¹) (lai²-cho²).

The subject of the verb in the Imperative Mood in the Active voice in Chinese is omitted as in English and this mood is usually expressed with the help of the word 罷 pa⁴ which is often used at the end of a sentence, e.g.—

(a) 去罷 ch'ü⁴ pa⁴, be off, go away.

(b) 他走罷 t'a¹ tsou³ pa⁴, let him go.

The following sentences illustrate the use of the Infinitive Mood in Chinese:—

(a) To teach (教 chiao¹) — Present.

(b) To have taught (chiao¹-liao³<<= Eng. ed>>) — Perfect.

(c) To be about to teach (要 yao⁴ chiao¹) — Future.

Examples of the Imperfect Participle:—

(a) Reading (tu²) the book (shu¹).

(b) Reading (tu² cho²<<= Eng. -ing>>) the book.

The following are the indicators of the verbs in the Passive Voice:—

1. 叫 chiao⁴, to cause, to let.

2. 挨 ai², to suffer.

3. 被 pei⁴, to suffer.

4. 受 shou⁴, to suffer, to bear, to receive, to endure.

EXAMPLES :

- | | |
|---|---|
| (a) The book is or is being read
(Present Indicative or Present Progressive) | (1) book read ed (liao ³). |
| | (2) book cause (chiao ⁴)
man (jên ²) read ed
(liao ³). |
| | (3) book suffer (挨 ai ²)
read ed (liao ³). |
| | (4) book suffer (被 pei ⁴) read ed
(liao ³). |
| | (5) book suffer (shou ⁴)
read ed (liao ³). |
| (b) The book has been read
(Present Perfect)
The book was read (Past Indicative)
The book was being read
(Past Progressive)
The book had been read
(Past Perfect) | (1) book suffer (ai ²)
read ed. |
| | (2) book suffer (ai ²)
ed (liao ³) read ed. |
| | (3) book cause (chiao ⁴)
man (jên ²) read ed. |
| | (4) book suffer (pei ⁴)
man (jên ²) read ed. |
| | (5) book suffer (pei ⁴)
people (人家 jên ² -chia ¹) read ed. |
| (c) The book will be read
(Future Indicative)
The book would be read
(Conditional) | (1) book will (要 yao ⁴)
suffer (ai ²) read ed. ✓ |
| | (2) book will (yao ⁴)
suffer (ai ²) read. ✓ |
| | (3) book then (就 chiu ⁴)
suffer (ai ²) read ed. ✓ |
| | (4) book then (chiu ⁴)
will (yao ⁴) suffer
(ai ²) read. ✓ |
| | (5) book in future (將來 chiag ¹ -lai ²) will
(yao ⁴) read. ✓ |

(d) The book would have been read (Conditional) { (1) book then (就 chiu⁴) suffer (ai²) ed read ed.
(2) book then (chiu⁴) will (yao⁴) cause (chiao⁴) man read ed.

(e) The book may or might be read (Subjunctive Mood) { (1) book may or might (許 hsü³) suffer (被 pei⁴) read.
(2) book may or might (hsü³) cause (chiao⁴) man read.
(3) book may or might (hsü³) cause (chiao⁴) people (人家 jên²-chia¹) read.
(4) book may or might (hsü³) suffer (ai²) read.

(f) The book may or might have been read (Subjunctive Mood) = book also may or might (也許 yeh³-hsü³) suffer (ai²) ed read ed.

(g) Let the book be read (Imperative Mood) = (1) then (就 chiu⁴) cause (chiao⁴) man read book.
(2) cause (chiao⁴) book suffer (ai²) read.

(h) To be read (Infinitive Mood) = suffer (ai²) read.

To have been read (Perfect Infinitive Mood) = suffer (ai²) ed (liao³) read ed (liao³).

Exercise (with hints)

1. A teacher is teaching ten students = one piece teacher teach ten piece (ko⁴) students.
 2. The student is reading a book = student read one piece (pên³) book.
 3. This is my book = this piece is my book.
 4. He should read the book = he should (chiu⁴) read book.
 5. She should have read the book = she should have (chiu⁴) read book.
 6. The boy has a pen = boy has one piece (chih¹) pen.
 7. I am going to school = I go school.
 8. They are going to university = they go university.
 9. Four students will read four books = four piece students will read four piece book.
 10. Here is a piece of chalk = one piece (chih¹) chalk at here.
 11. My pencil is there = my pencil at there.
 12. He has brought the book = he bring come (拿來 na²-lai²) ed book. .
-



SEVENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 能 nêng², can, }
able. } energy,
2. 力 li⁴, strength, } power,
force, power. } ability.

3. 會 hui⁴, able, can.

4. 必 pi⁴, must. }
5. 要 yao⁴, must. } must.

6. 得 tê², must.

7. 不了 pu⁴-liao³, can not.

8. „ 得 pu⁴-tê, must not.

9. 可 k'o³, can, able; may
or might; a sign of potential
mood.

10. 可能 k'o³-nêng², able.

11. 滅 mieh⁴, to destroy, to
exterminate, to extinguish.

12. 救 chiu⁴, to save, to
deliver, to rescue.

13. 接 chieh¹, to }
receive, to welcome, }
to meet, to accept. } to
accept.

14. 受 shou⁴, to
receive.

15. 答 ta², to reply, } to
to respond to, to } answer,
echo. } to reply,

16. 復 fu⁴, to reply, } to
to return, to repeat. } acknow-
ledge.

17. 到 tao⁴, to arrive, to
reach.

18. 變 pien⁴, to change, to
alter, to transform, to be-
come.

19. 跳 t'iao⁴, to }
jump. } to
20. 舞 wu³, to } dance.
dance. }

21. 逃 t'ao², to es- }
cape, to flee. }
22. 走 tsou³, to } to
walk, to travel, to } escape.
go. }

23. 找 chao³, to find, to look
for, to seek.

24. 完 wan², to complete,
to finish.

25. 跟 kên¹, to follow. It
also represents English pre-
positions 'with' and 'to'.

26. 忘 wang⁴ }
(uang), to forget. }
27. 記 chi⁴, to } to
record, to remember; } forget.
a sign, a mark. }

28. 恨 hên⁴, to hate.

29. 聽 t'ing¹, to hear.

23. Cf. Bengali, cāoyā (cā + oyā); Hindi, cāha; Maithili, cāha; Prakrit, cāha.

30. 幫 pang¹, to help.
31. 佐 tso⁴, to help, to assist, to aid.
32. 希 hsi¹, to hope.
33. 望 wang⁴ (uang), to hope.
34. 離 li², to leave.

35. 借 tsieh⁴ (chieh⁴), to lend; to borrow.
36. 愛 ai⁴, to love, to like; love, affection.
37. 合 ho², to shut, to close.
38. 開 k'ai¹, to open, to begin.
39. 門 mên², a door.
40. 放 fang⁴, to put.

Exercise (with hints)

1. She can dance = she can (會 hui⁴ or 能 nêng²) dance.
2. He can not hear = he not (pu⁴) can (hui⁴ or nêng²) hear.
3. I can not follow that = that piece (ko⁴) I follow can not (pu⁴-liao³).
4. You must help him = you must (pi⁴-yao⁴) help him.
5. You must not hate me = you hate must not (pu⁴-tê²) me.
6. Shut the door = shut door.
7. Open the door = open door.
8. I have begun that = that piece (ko⁴) I begin (開 k'ai¹) ed (liao³).
9. Come with me = with (跟 kên¹) me come.
10. Speak to him = to (kên¹) him speak (說 shuo¹).
11. Those who love are loved = love man man love.
12. Follow the good and learn them = follow good man, learn good man.
13. Put it here = put at here.
14. Energy is not destroyed = energy not (pu⁴) destroy.
15. He escaped with his life = he escape ed (liao³) life (生 shêng¹).



EIGHTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

ADJECTIVES

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. 好 hao ³ , good, well. | 17. 清 ch'ing ¹ , clear, pure, lucid. |
| 2. 壞 huai ⁴ , bad. | 18. 楚 ch'u ³ , distinct, clear. |
| 3. 大 ta ⁴ , great, big, large. | 19. 貴 kuei ⁴ , dear, costly, expensive. |
| 4. 漂 p'iao ¹ , to look fresh. | 20. 親 ch'in ¹ (ts'in ¹), to love, intimate. |
| 5. 亮 liang ⁴ , light, bright, brightness, clear, transparent. | 21. 愛 ai ⁴ , to love; love. |
| 6. 年 nien ² , year, age. | 22. 便 p'ien ² , cheap. pien ⁴ , convenient. |
| 7. 輕 ching ¹ , light, not heavy. | 23. 宜 i ² , right. |
| 8. 老 lao ³ , old, aged. | 24. 强 ch'iang ² , strong, fierce, violent. |
| 9. 長 ch'ang ² , long. | 25. 壯 chuang ⁴ , stout, strong, healthy. |
| 10. 短 tuan ³ , short. | 26. 弱 jo ⁴ , weak. |
| 11. 高 kao ¹ , tall, high, lofty, noble. | 27. 勇 yung ³ , brave, courageous. |
| 12. 闊 k'uo ⁴ (k'o ⁴), broad. | 28. 忙 mang ² , busy, anxious, hurried, in haste. |
| 13. 狹 hsia ² , narrow. | |
| 14. 瞎 hsia ¹ , blind. | |
| 15. 富 fu ⁴ , rich, wealthy. | |
| 16. 窮 ch'iung ² , poor. | |

10. Cf. Skt. tanú, thin, small, slender; Gk. τ α ν α ο s, slim; Lat. tenu-is; wed. tunn; Eng. thin; Russ. tonkü.

29. 容 yung²,
easy. }
30. 易 i⁴, easy,
to be at ease. } easy.
31. 艱 chien¹,
difficult, hard, dis-
tressing. }
32. 難 nan²,
difficult, trouble-
some. } difficult.
33. 新 hsin¹(sin¹), new,
modern.

34. 趣 ch'ü⁴ (ts'ü⁴) interest-
ing.
35. 是 shih⁴, right. It also
means 'yes', the verb 'to be'
and English preposition 'like'.
36. 非 fei¹, wrong, false. It
also means 'not' and 'with-
out'.
37. 近 chin⁴, near.
38. 遠 yüan³ (üen), far,
distant.
39. 各 ko (koh), each, every.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Comparative Degree is made with the following words of which the first one is prefixed to the Positive:—

1. 更 kêng⁴, more; 2. 比 pi³, to compare; 3. 强 ch'iang², superior, better; 4. 多 to¹, much, many; 5. 些 hsieh¹, a little, some; 6. 一點 i¹-tien³, a little.

The Superlative Degree is formed by prefixing 1. 最 tsui⁴ (chui⁴), 'most' and 2. 頂 ting³, 'most' to the Positive.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
大 great ta ⁴	更 大 greater kêng ⁴ ta ⁴	最 or 頂 大 greatest tsui ⁴ or ting ³ ta ⁴
小 small hsiao ³	„ 小 smaller kêng ⁴ hsiao ³	„ or „ 小 smallest tsui ⁴ or ting ³ hsiao ³

Examples of other words used in Comparative statements:

1. 他 比 你 好 t'a¹ pi³ ni³ hao³ (=he compare you good)
he is better than you.
2. „ „ „ ch'iang²,* t'a¹ pi³ ni³ ch'iang² (=he compare
you superior) he is better than you.

* As to the character see 'No. 3' above.

3. 他好多 t'a¹ hao³ to¹ (=he good much) he is much better.
4. „ „ 一點 t'a¹ hao³ i¹-tien³ (= he good a little) he is a little better.
5. „ „ 些 t'a¹ hao³ hsieh¹ (=he good some) he is a little better.

Adjectives are generally used together with 的 ti⁴, hereafter represented by 'one' to qualify nouns,* as:—

高的人 kao¹ ti⁴ jên², a tall man.

大 „ 書 ta⁴ ti⁴ shu¹, a big book.

Sometimes adjectives without 的 ti⁴ qualify nouns, as:—

窮人 ch'iung² jên, a poor man.

小字 hsiao³ tzu⁴, a small letter.

ADVERBS

Adverbs are often formed by adding ti⁴, as:—

他寫的好 t'a¹ hsieh³ ti⁴ hao³, he writes well.

hao³† hao³† „ 做 hao³ hao³ ti⁴ tso⁴, do it well, i.e. do it carefully.

1. 很 hên³, very.
2. 太 t'ai⁴, too, very.
3. 慢 ‡ man⁴, slow, slowly.
4. „ 慢 man⁴-man⁴, slowly.
5. 快 k'uai⁴, fast, quickly, hasty, soon, sharp, keen.
6. „ 快 k'uai⁴-k'uai⁴, quickly, instantly.

Adverbs are generally placed before adjectives and verbs which they modify.

* Cf. Dravidian ti or ti. In Telugu ti or ti is used after words for the conversion of substantives into adjectives, e.g., Tel. monna, before, is formed the adjective monna-ti, former, as, monna-ti tîrpu, the former decision.

† For the character see the last character of the above sentence.

‡ Cf. Skt. manda, slow, slowly.



NOUNS

1. 心 * hsin¹ (sin¹), the heart.
 2. 口 † k'ou³, a mouth.
 3. 生 shêng¹, to be born, to beget, to be alive; life.
 4. 意 i⁴, an idea, an opinion, wish, will, purpose, meaning.
- } livelihood, a living.

Exercise (with hints)

1. He is a great man=he is great man.
2. He is a good boy=he is good boy (小孩子 hsiao³-hai²-tzu).
3. This is very small=this piece (個 ko⁴) is very small.
4. He is a big business-man=he is big buy-sell (買賣 mai³-mai⁴) man.
5. I have a good book=I have one piece (ko⁴) good one (ti⁴) book.
6. She is pretty=she pretty one (ti⁴).
7. That is the best of all=that piece (ko⁴) most good.
8. This is the worst=this piece most bad.
9. My grandfather is very old=my grandfather very old.
10. She writes well=she write (寫 hsieh³) good one (ti⁴).
11. He is very strong=he very (t'ai⁴) strong.
12. I am too busy=I too (t'ai) busy.
13. Come slowly=slowly come.
14. Go quickly=quickly go.
15. He is better than you=he compare (pi³) you better (ch'iang²).
16. Calcutta is bigger than Bombay=Calcutta compare (pi³) Bombay big.
17. In my opinion it is not easy=at (在 tsai⁴) I say (講 chiang³) not (pu⁴) is easy one (ti⁴).
18. A man may be old in years, but his heart need not be old=man old heart not (pu⁴) old.
19. It is hard to make a living=living difficult.
20. Each has its right and wrong=each (ko) has right (shih⁴) wrong (fei¹).
21. The mouth is right, but the heart is false=mouth right (shih⁴) heart false (fei¹).

* Cf. Arabic جinn, the heart.

† It also means a hole, an opening, an aperture; Cf. Skt. khá, n. an aperture and khá, f. a well.



NINTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 今 chin¹, now.
2. ,, 年 chin¹ nien², this year; where the latter means 'a year'.
3. ,, 天 chin¹ t'ien¹, to-day; where the latter means 'God, the sky, heaven, a day; natural'.
4. 明 ,, ming² t'ien¹, to-morrow; where the former means 'bright'.
5. 後 ,, hou⁴ t'ien¹, day after to-morrow; where the former means 'after'.
6. 昨 ,, tso² t'ien¹, yesterday; where the former means 'yesterday'.
7. 天 ,, t'ien¹ t'ien¹, everyday.
8. 春 ,, ch'un¹-t'ien¹, the spring day; the former means 'the spring'.
9. 夏 ,, hsia⁴-t'ien¹, summer day; the former means 'summer'.
10. 秋 ,, ch'iu¹-t'ien¹, the autumn day; the former means 'the autumn'.
11. 冬 ,, tung¹-t'ien¹, winter day; the former means 'winter'.
12. 明年 ming² nien², next year.
13. 去 ,, ch'ü⁴ nien², last year.
14. 氣 ch'i⁴, breath, air, gas, steam, the weather. } the
15. 候 hou⁴, a period of five days. } weather,
16. 日 jih⁴, the sun. } climate.
17. ,, 子 jih⁴-tzü³, a day.
18. 月 yüeh⁴, the moon, a month.
19. 草 ts'ao³, a plant, grass.
20. 熱 jêh⁴, hot.

16. Cf. Arabic zih, the sun.



21. 冷 lêng³, cold.
 22. 凄 ch'i¹, chilly, cold.
 23. 也 yêh³, also, too.

Exercise (with hints)

1. He is going to-day=he to-day go.
2. My father will come to-morrow=my father to-morrow want (要 yao⁴) come.
3. His brother came yesterday=his brother (兄弟 hsiung¹-ti⁴) yesterday come ed (liao³).
4. Your teacher will come day after to-morrow=your teacher (先生 hsien¹-shêng¹) day after to-morrow want come.
5. Our friend comes everyday=our friend (朋友 p'êng²-yü³) every day come.
6. It is very hot to-day=to-day very (hên³) hot.
7. Last year my mother was here=last year my mother at (在 tsai⁴) here (這裏 chê⁴-li³).
8. This year she is also here=this year she also at here.
9. My maternal uncle will come next year=next year my maternal uncle (舅舅 chiu³-chiu³ or 舅父 chiu³-fu⁴) want come.
10. He will see me day after to-morrow=he day after to-morrow want see (看見 k'an⁴-chien⁴) me.
11. In summer the day is long=summer day long (長 ch'ang²).
12. In winter the day is short=winter day short (短 tuan³).
13. In the spring the day is bright=spring day bright (明 ming²).
14. In the autumn the weather gets chilly=autumn weather chilly chilly.
15. In winter the weather is cold=winter weather cold (lêng³).
16. He cannot come to-day=he to-day not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) come.
17. I shall see him this month=this month (今月 chin¹-yüeh⁴) I want see (k'an⁴-chien⁴) him.
18. To-day the weather is fine=to-day weather fine (hao³).
19. If man does not recognise the spring, plants do=man not (pu⁴) know (知 chih¹) spring, plant know spring.



TENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 禮 li³, worship, ceremony, offerings.
2. 拜 pai⁴, to worship, to salute, to bow down.
3. 星 hsing¹, the star.
4. 其月* ch'i², a period, a limit of time.
5. 禮拜 li³-pai⁴ or 星其月* hsing¹-ch'i², a week.
6. „ „ 日 li³-pai⁴-jih⁴ or „ „ 日 hsing¹-ch'i²-jih⁴,
Sunday.
7. „ „ 一 li³-pai⁴-i¹ or „ „ 一 hsing¹-ch'i²-i¹,
Monday.
8. „ „ 二 li³-pai⁴-êrh⁴ or „ „ 二 hsing¹-ch'i²-êrh⁴,
Tuesday.
9. „ „ 三 li³-pai⁴-san¹ or „ „ 三 hsing¹-ch'i²-san¹,
Wednesday.
10. „ „ 四 li³-pai⁴-ssü⁴ or „ „ 四 hsing¹-ch'i²-ssü⁴,
Thursday.
11. „ „ 五 li³-pai⁴-wu³ or „ „ 五 hsing¹-ch'i²-wu³,
Friday.
12. „ „ 六 li³-pai⁴-liu⁴ or „ „ 六 hsing¹-ch'i²-liu⁴,
Saturday.
13. 正月 chêng⁴-yüeh⁴, January; where the former one
means 'principal' (the first month).
14. 二 „ êrh⁴-yüeh⁴, February (the second month).
15. 三 „ san¹-yüeh⁴, March (the third month).
16. 四 „ ssü⁴-yüeh⁴, April (the fourth month).
17. 五 „ wu³-yüeh⁴, May (the fifth month).
18. 六 „ liu⁴-yüeh⁴, June (the sixth month).
19. 七 „ ch'i¹-yüeh⁴, July (the seventh month).
20. 八 „ pa¹-yüeh⁴, August (the eighth month).
21. 九 „ chiu³-yüeh⁴, September (the ninth month).
22. 十 „ shih⁴-yüeh², October (the tenth month).

* To be taken as one character (ch'i²)

23. 十一月 shih²-i¹-yüeh⁴, November (the eleventh month).
24. 二 shih²-êrh⁴- yüeh⁴, December (the twelfth month).
25. 鐘 chung¹, a bell, a clock.
26. 表 piao³, a watch.
27. 點 tien³, a dot, the stroke of a clock.
28. 刻 k'o⁴, a quarter of an hour.
29. 幾 chi³, several, many, how much? how many?
30. 按 an⁴, as, according to.
31. 着 cho², to order, to place. } according to.
32. 時 shih², time, opportunity.
33. 候 hou⁴, to wait, to expect. } time.
34. 現 hsien⁴, now, at present, present.
35. 在 tsai⁴, at. } now, present.
36. 過 kuo⁴, to pass.
37. 去 ch'ü, to go. } past.
38. 將 chiang¹, future; chiang⁴, a leader, a general.
39. 來 lai², to come. } future.
40. 點鐘 tien³-chung¹, an hour.
41. 晌 shang³, midday.
42. 晚 wan³, late, evening.
43. 乎 hu², an interrogative particle; a particle expressive of doubt, or of surprise, an expletive; in, at, from, than.
44. 再 tsai⁴, again.
45. 既 chi⁴, since, when.
46. 是 shih⁴, to be. } when, since.



Exercise (with hints)

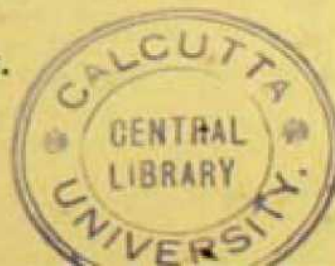
1. To-day is Sunday=to-day is Sunday.
2. What is the time now?=now is what time.
3. What o'clock is it?=how many dot bell.
4. It is three o'clock=three dot bell.
5. By my watch it is half past three=according to my watch is three dot half (半 pan⁴) bell.
6. It is now ten minutes to three=now three dot less or short of (少 shao³) ten part (分 fên¹).
7. It is twenty minutes past three=three dot one quarter five open (開 k'ai¹).
8. I shall come at a quarter to five=I four dot bell three quarter want come.
9. He came last night=he yesterday late midday come ed.
10. My father arrived yesterday evening=my father yesterday late midday come ed.
11. I shall come on Saturday next=below (下 hsia⁴) Saturday I want come.
12. His mother came on Friday last=above (上 shang⁴) Friday his mother come ed.
13. She came on Wednesday morning=Wednesday upper half (pan⁴) day she come ed.
14. He will go on Monday=Monday he want go.
15. My friend will come in January=January my friend want come.
16. They will go in December next=below December they want go.
17. My brother came last July=above July my brother come ed.
18. Times are bad=time bad (huai⁴).
19. Time never comes back=time surprise (平 hu²) not (pu⁴) again come.
20. When fortune smiles, who does not? when fortune does not, who does?
=time come, who (誰 shui²) not (pu⁴) come, time not come, who come.
21. When did your grandfather come?=when your grandfather (tsu³.fu⁴) come ed.

ELEVENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS

1. 在 tsai⁴, at.
2. 還 hai², yet, still, or; huan², to repay.
3. 同 t'ung², with; and; same.
4. 和 ho², to, with; and.
5. 對 tui⁴, to.
6. 給 kei³, for.
7. 替 t'i⁴, for.
8. 代 tai⁴, for.
9. 前 ch'ien², before, ago.
10. 後 hou⁴, after.
11. „ 來 hou⁴-lai², afterwards.
12. „ hou⁴ } behind.
13. 頭 t'ou², head. }
14. „ t'ou² } before, in front of.
15. 裏 li³, in. }
16. „ 頭 li³-t'ou², inside.
17. 外 „ wai⁴ (uai⁴)-t'ou², out, outside; where the former means 'outside', 'beyond', 'foreign' and 'external'.
18. 從 ts'ung², from.
19. 除了 ch'u²-liao³, except; where the former means 'besides', 'except'.
20. „ 非 ch'u²-fei¹, unless; where the latter means 'wrong', 'bad', 'not', 'without'.
21. 當 tang⁴, during.
22. 爲 wei⁴ (uei⁴), for.
23. „ 甚麼 wei⁴-shên²-mo³, why.



24. 因爲 yin¹ (in¹)*-wei⁴ (uei⁴), because; where the former means 'because' and the latter 'to cause'.
25. 雖然 sui¹-jan², though, although; where the former means 'though', 'still', 'even if' and the latter 'yes', 'certainly', 'really', 'still', 'nevertheless', 'but', 'although', 'on the other hand'.
26. 自 ,, tzü⁴-jan², of course; where the former means 'self', 'private', 'personal', 'natural'.
27. 忽 ,, hu¹-jan², suddenly; where the former means suddenly.
28. 既 ,, chi⁴-jan², since; where the former means 'since', 'when'.
29. 不 ,, pu⁴-jan², otherwise, or.
30. 所 so³, that which, what, whatsoever, who, a cause, whereby.
31. 以 yi³ (i³), by, through, with, an instrumental preposition, a sign of the object which it precedes.
32. 或 huo⁴, if, perhaps, either.....or.
33. 者 che³, a pronoun—this, that, it, which, what, he, who, those, who; a particle imparting adjectival or adverbial shades of meaning to words to which it is joined.
34. 但是 tan⁴-shih⁴, but; where the former means 'but'.
35. 就 ,, chiu⁴-shih⁴, only.
36. 假 chia³, if.
37. 使 shih³, to allow, to cause.
38. 恐 k'ung³, fearful, to fear, lest.
39. 怕 p'a⁴, to fear, perhaps, lest.
40. 只 chih³, only.
41. 怎 tsên³, how, why, what.
42. 麼 mo³, an interrogative.

therefore, so.

or.

if.

lest.

how.

* Cf. Arabic لِ (inna) for, because. 24. Cf. also Arabic لِ (wa inna) for, because.

43. 一定 i¹-ting⁴, certainly; where the latter means 'certainly'.

44. 早 tsao³, the morning, early.

45. 晚 wan³ (uan³), the evening, late. } sooner or later.

46. 會 hui⁴, a little while.

47. 等 têng³, to wait.

48. 到 tao⁴, to reach, towards. } till, until.

49. 於 yü², in.

50. 是 shih⁴, this. } then.

51. 前 ch'ien², before, ago.

52. 頭 t'ou², the head. } in front.

53. 出 ch'ü¹, out, as 'come out', 'go out'.

NOUNS

54. 椅子 i³-tzü³, a chair.

55. 板 pan³, a board, a slab.

56. 花 hua¹, a flower.

57. 園 yüan² (üen²), a garden.

58. 色 sê⁴, colour.

ADJECTIVES

59. 紅 hung², red.

60. 黑 hê¹, black.

61. 白 pai⁴ (pê⁴), white.

62. 青 ts'ing¹, green.

63. 黃 huang², yellow.

64. 藍 lan², blue.

65. 紺 kan⁴, violet, purple.



VERBS

66. 回 *hui*², to return to or from.
 67. 敲 *ch'iao*¹, to knock, to strike.
 68. 站 *chan*⁴, to stand.
 69. 住 *chu*⁴, to stop, to cease. } to stop, to stand still.
 70. 躋 *chi*¹, to rise.

It should be noted that in Chinese the conjunction 'and' is not often required. Besides *t'ung*², *ho*² and *kên*¹, 都 *tu*¹, all, both and 連 *lien*², together with, are also used to express the sense of 'and'; e.g.—他 你 都 站 *t'a*¹ *ni*³ *tu*¹ *chan*⁴, he you all stand.

It should also be noted that in Chinese 'but' is almost invariably used after the personal pronoun. Thus English 'But I' is rendered into Chinese as 'I but', not 'but I'.

Exercise (with hints)

1. My father is at home = my father at (*tsai*⁴) home (家 *chia*¹) inside (裏 *li*³).
2. Where do you come from? = you from where (*na*³-*li*³) come.
3. Are you going alone, or are you going with your friends = you are one (*i*¹) piece (*ko*⁴) man go, or (*hai*²) are with your friend go.
4. Why has he not gone? = he why not (*mei*²) go.
5. Is he still here? = he still at (*tsai*⁴) here (*chê*⁴-*li*³) interrogative (*mo*³).
6. So the teacher gets up from his chair = so teacher (*hsien*¹-*shêng*¹) from his chair top (*shang*⁴) stand-(*chan*⁴) rise (*chi*¹) come (*lai*²) [= get up].
7. He writes with chalk on the blackboard = he take (*na*²) chalk (*fên*³-*pi*³) in (*tsai*⁴) blackboard top (*shang*⁴) write (*hsieh*³) character (*tzŭ*⁴).
8. He walks back to his chair = he walk (*tsou*³) back (*hui*²) his chair.
9. I walk to the blackboard = I walk (*tsou*³) towards (*tao*⁴) blackboard-of (*ti*¹) front (*ch'ien*²-*t'ou*² = front head).
10. Then the student writes the character *jên*² (man) = then (*yü*²-*shih*⁴) student (*hsüeh*²-*shêng*¹) write one piece man character.
11. Suddenly he knocks at the door = suddenly he knock door.
12. But I do not know = I but not (*pu*⁴) know.
13. How did you go? = you are (*shih*⁴) how go-ing (*ti*⁴).
14. There is only this one = only there is (*yu*³) this one piece.
15. Morning and evening are not the same = morning (*tsao*³) evening (*wan*³) not (*pu*⁴) same (*t'ung*²).

16. Sooner or later he will come = he sooner later come.
17. My friend will certainly come = my friend certainly want come.
18. Wait till to-morrow = till to-morrow.
19. Wait till he comes = till he come.
20. I did not go out because he came = I not (mei²) have go out (ch'ü¹) because he come ed.
21. My brother went out but I was at home = my brother (hsiung¹-ti⁴) go out but I at (tsai⁴) home inside (li³).
22. You come behind = you at (tsai⁴) behind come.
23. Afterwards he will go = afterwards he want go.
24. There are flowers in the garden = flower garden inside (li³) there is (yu³) flower.
25. Some are red, some are white, some are green, some are yellow, some are blue and some are violet = some (yü³-ti⁴ = have one) are (shih⁴) red ti⁴, some are white ti⁴, some are green ti⁴, some are yellow ti⁴, some are blue ti⁴, some are violet ti⁴.
26. A few days ago he came here = ago (ch'ien²) several (chi³) day (t'ien¹) he come ed here.



TWELFTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 身子 shên¹-tzü³, the body.
2. 頭 t'ou², the head.
3. „ 髮 t'ou²-fa³, hair.
4. 面 mien⁴, the face. } the face.
5. 孔 k'ung³, a hole. }
6. 嘴 tsui³, the mouth.
7. 眼 yen³, the eye. } eyes.
8. 睛 ching¹, the eye-ball. }
9. 鼻子 pi²-tzü³, the nose.
10. 耳 êrh³, the ear. } ears.
11. 朵 to³, the lobe of the ear. }
12. 脣 ch'un², the lips.
13. 牙 ya², a tooth. } teeth.
14. 齒 ch'ih³, the upper incisors. }
15. 舌 shê², the tongue. } the tongue.
- 頭 t'ou², the head. }
16. 喉 hou², the throat.
17. 胸 hsiung¹, the chest.
18. 手 shou², the hand.
19. „ 指 shou³-chih³, the finger; where the latter means
a finger, a toe.
20. 脚 chiao³, the foot, the leg.



Exercise (with hints)

1. Her face is beautiful = her face beautiful (p'iao¹-liang⁴) one (ti⁴).
2. She has two big eyes = she has two (liang³) piece (ko⁴) big (ta⁴) eye.
3. His hair is black = his hair black (hê¹) one (ti⁴).
4. Her upper and lower lips are red = her above (shang⁴) below (hsia⁴) lip red (hung²) one (ti⁴).
5. He has two long hands = he has two (liang³) piece (ko⁴) long (ch'ang²) hand.
6. Teeth are white = tooth white (pai⁴) one (ti⁴).
7. The body of man is the universe in miniature = man body one (i¹) small (hsiao³) God (t'ien¹).



THIRTEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 飯 fan⁴, cooked rice, food ; fan⁵, to eat.
2. 米 mi³, uncooked rice.
3. 麵 mien⁴, flour.
4. 包 pao¹, a parcel ; to wrap, to include. } bread.
5. 牛 niu², an ox, a cow. }
6. 油 yu² (iu²), oil, fat. } butter.
7. 奶 nai³, milk; the breast of a woman.
8. 牛奶 niu²-nai³, cow's milk, milk.
9. „ „ 皮 niu²-nai³,-p'i², cream; where p'i² means 'skin',
'leather', 'bark', outer covering, wrapping.
10. 口加* chia¹ or k'a¹, used in transliterating. } coffee.
11. 啡 fei¹, used in transliterating. }
12. 茶 ch'a², tea.
13. 糖 t'ang², sugar.
14. 餅子 ping³-tzŭ³ (a noun-indicator), a cake.
15. 醬 chiang⁴, sauce. }
- 油 yu² (iu²), oil, fat. } sauce.
16. 口加* chaa¹ or k'a¹. }
- 喇 li⁴, used in transliterating. } curry.
17. 菜 ts'ai⁴, vegetables.
18. 生菜 shêng¹-ts'ai⁴, salad, lettuce.
19. 白 „ pai²-ts'ai⁴, cabbage.
20. 湯 t'ang¹, soup.
21. 鹽 yen², salt.
22. 胡 hu², foolishly, blindly, recklessly. }
23. 椒 chiao¹, pepper, various spices. } pepper.

7. Cf. Bengali mālī (মালা), the breast of a woman.

* To be taken as one character (chia¹ or k'a).

24. 魚 yü² (ü²), a fish.
25. 肉 ju⁴, meat.
26. 蛋 tan⁴, an egg. }
 27. 卵 luan³, an egg. } an egg.
28. 雞 or 鷄 chi¹, a chicken, a fowl.
29. „ or „ 蛋 chi¹-tan⁴, hen's egg.
30. 羊 yang² (iang²) a sheep, a goat.
31. 鵝 o², a goose.
32. 鴨 ya¹, a duck.
33. 豬 chu¹, a hog, a pig.
34. 鳩 chiu¹, a pigeon.
35. 壺 hu², a pot.
36. 杯 pei¹, a cup, a glass.
37. 盤 p'an²-(tzü³), a plate.
38. 刀 tao¹-(tzü³), a knife.
39. 匙 ch'ih²-(tzü³), a spoon.
40. 托 t'o¹, to carry on the palm, to support with
 the hand. } a tray.
- 盤 p'an², a plate.
41. 瓶 p'ing²-(tzü³), a bottle.
42. 氣 ch'i⁴, air, steam, gas, breath. }
 43. 水 shui³, water. } soda water.
44. 火 huo³ (ho³), fire.
45. 洋 yang², the ocean; foreign. }
 火 huo³ (ho³), fire. } a match.
46. 柴 ch'ai², fuel.
47. 旅 lü³, to travel, to lodge.
48. 館 kuan³, a private dwelling, a public office, } a hotel.
 a hall, a restaurant; to lodge.

49. 餐 ts'an¹, to eat; a meal. }
 館 kuan³, a hall, a restaurant. } a restaurant.
50. 廚 ch'u², a kitchen, a cook. }
 房 fang², a house, a building, a room. } a kitchen.
52. 間 fang²-chien¹, a room; where the latter means
 'a room', 'a division of a house'.
53. 公 kung¹, public, open to all. }
 園 yüan², a garden. } a park.
55. 菓 kuo³ (ko³)-(tzü³), a fruit.
56. 餓 o⁴, hungry.
57. 渴 k'o³, thirsty.
58. 飲 in³ or 喝 ho¹, to drink.

Exercise (with hints)

- Here is a cup of tea = this (chê⁴) have (yu³) one (i¹) cup tea.
- Bring here that cup = take (na²) that (na⁴) cup here (chê⁴-li³) come (lai²).
- Is that tea hot? = that (na⁴) tea hot (jeh⁴) mo³ (an interrogative particle).
- No, it is cold = no (pu⁴) is (shih⁴) cold (lêng³) one (ti⁴).
- Give me some milk and sugar = give (kei³) me little (點 tien³) milk and (kên¹) sugar.
- I drink tea with milk = I drink tea with (kên¹) milk.
- Bring me some bread and butter = take (na²) little (tien³) bread and (kên¹) butter.
- Come and have dinner with me = please (ch'ing³) with (kên¹) me eat (ch'i¹) food.
- Can you come and dine with me to-morrow? = you to-morrow (ming²-t'ien¹) to (上 shang⁴) me here (chê⁴-li³) come (lai²) eat (ch'i¹) food, suit (行 hsing²) not (pu⁴) suit (hsing²).
- I am thirsty, bring me some soda water = I thirsty, give (kei³) me take (na²) soda water come (lai²).
- I must drink a glass of water = I must (得 tê²) drink one (i¹) glass water.
- I drink tea and eat cake = I drink tea and (kên¹) eat (ch'i¹) cake.
- Are you hungry? = hungry not (pu⁴) hungry.
- I want a tea-pot = I want (yao⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) tea-pot.

15. Bring here that plate, knife and spoon = take (na²) that (na⁴) plate knife spoon here (chê⁴-li³) come (lai²).
16. On the tray there are a bottle of water and a glass = tray above (shang⁴) have (yu³) one (i¹) bottle water and (kên¹ or ho²) one (i¹) glass.
17. Have you coffee? = you have (yu³) coffee mo³ (an interrogative particle)
18. Yes, I have = yes (是 shih⁴), I have (yu³).
19. No, I have not = no (pu⁴), I not (mei²) have (yu³).
20. Do you like fish? = you like (yao⁴) fish mo³.
21. Yes, I like to have some fish, meat and eggs = yes (是的 shih⁴-ti⁴), I like some (一點 i¹-tien³) fish meat egg.
22. Have you a match? = you have (yu³) match mo³.
23. Yes, sometimes I have = yes (有的 yu³-ti⁴) sometimes (yu³-ti-shih² —yu³-ti⁴, some and 時 shih², time) I have (yu³).
24. My friend opens a restaurant in Calcutta = my friend (p'eng²-yu³) at (tsai⁴) Calcutta open (k'ai¹) restaurant.
25. Here is a hotel = here (chê⁴-li³) have (yu³) hotel.
26. He is playing in the park = park inside (裏 li³) he play (wan²).



FOURTEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 丈 chang⁴, a husband.
2. 夫 fu¹, a husband, a man. } a husband.
3. 老 lao³, old, aged, venerable.
4. 婆 p'o², a wife ; an old woman. }

or

5. 妻 ch'i¹ (ts'i¹), a wife ; to give in marriage. }
6. 子 tzü³ son (here an indicative of noun.) } a wife.
7. 嫁 chia⁴, to marry a husband, to give a daughter in marriage. } marriage.
8. 婚 hun¹, to marry a wife ; a bridegroom.
9. 先 hsien¹, before. }
10. 生 shêng¹, to be born. } mister, 'Mr.'
11. 太 t'ai⁴, very, much, too. }
12. 太 t'ai⁴, very, much, too. } madam, mistress, 'Mrs.'
13. 小 hsiao³, small, little.
14. 姐 chieh³ (tsieh³), a term of respect for a young lady ; an elder sister. } Miss.
15. 歲 sui⁴, age, a year.
16. 幾 chi³, how ?
17. 如 ju², like, as. }
18. 今 chin¹, now. } now.
19. 名 ming², a name ; fame.
20. 叫 ming²-chiao⁴, called, named ; where the latter means 'to call'.
21. 姓 hsing⁴ (sing⁴), a surname.
22. 名 hsing⁴-ming², a name.

21. 筆名 pi³-ming², pen-name, nom-de-plume.
22. 貴 kuei⁴, honourable ; ' your '.
23. 姓 kuei⁴-hsing⁴, your honourable surname.
24. 謝 hsieh⁴, to thank.
25. 同 t'ung², to-gether ; with ; and.
26. 事 shih⁴, an affair, a matter, business.
27. 禱 tao³, to pray ; prayer.
28. 對 tui⁴, to oppose, to compare, to suit, to reply, to respond ; to make a pair.
29. 起 ch'i³, to rise ; to raise.
30. 緊 chin³, to bind tightly ; tight, close, near.
31. 胡 hu², recklessly, foolishly, blindly.
32. 勞 lao², to toil, to suffer, to give trouble ; weary.
33. 駕 chia⁴, a polite form of address.
34. 久 chiu³, a long time.
35. 仰 yang³, to look up.
36. 會 hui⁴, to meet.
37. 裏 li³, in.
38. 面 mien⁴, the surface.

} a colleague.

} inside.

Exercise (with hints)

1. Who is he ? = he is (shih⁴) who (shui²).
2. He is her husband = he is her (t'a¹-ti⁴) husband.
3. His wife is here = his (t'a¹-ti⁴) wife at (tsai⁴) here (chê⁴-li³).
4. Do you know Mr. Datta ? = you recognise (jên⁴-shih⁴) Datta Mr. (hsien¹-shêng¹) mo³ (an interrogative particle).
5. What is Mrs. Mitra doing ? = Mitra Mrs. (t'ai⁴-t'ai⁴) do (tso⁴) what (shên²-mo³).
6. Miss Sen is a teacher = Sen Miss (hsiao³-chieh³) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) teacher (hsien¹-shêng¹).
7. How old are you ? = you how (chi³) age.
8. I am now twenty years of age = I now (ju²-chin¹) twenty (êrh⁴-shih²) age.
9. What is your name ? = you honourable (kuei⁴) surname
or
honourable surname name.
10. My name is Mohit = I name call (= named, called) Mohit.

11. What do you want ? = you want (yao⁴) what (shên²-mo³).
12. I want to see Mr. Chaudhuri = I want (yao⁴) see (chien⁴) Chaudhuri Mr.
13. Is Mr. Chaudhuri in ? = Chaudhuri Mr. at (tsai⁴) home (chia¹) mo³ (an interrogative particle).
14. Please come in = please (ch'ing³) pray (tao³) inside (li³-mien⁴) come (lai²).
15. Won't you sit down ? = please sit (tso⁴) pa⁴ (罷 a final particle).
16. Yes, I am sitting = have (yu³) sit (tso⁴).
17. How do you do ? = long time (chiu³) look up (yang³).
18. How are you ? = you good (hao³) mo³ (an interrogative particle).
or
good mo³.
19. I am very well = I very (hên³) good.
20. Thank you = thank thank you.
21. I beg your pardon = oppose (tui⁴) not (pu⁴) rise (ch'i³).
22. Excuse me = oppose (tui⁴) not (pu⁴) rise (ch'i³).
23. I am very sorry = I very (hên³) oppose (tui⁴) not (pu⁴) rise (ch'i³).
24. That is all right = good (hao³) pa⁴ (a final particle).
25. Wait a moment = wait (têng³) one (i⁴) wait (têng³).
26. I have troubled you (excuse me) = give trouble (lao²) chia⁴ (a polite form of address).
27. Never mind = not (pu⁴) want (yao⁴) tight (chin³).
28. Nonsense = foolishly (hu²) talk (shuo¹ or sho¹).
29. Why don't you do that ? = why (wei⁴-shên²-mo³) you not (pu⁴) do (tso⁴) that piece (ko⁴).
30. Is he still here ? Why has he not gone ? = he still (還 hai²) at (tsai⁴) here (chê⁴-li³) mo³ (an interrogative particle), he why (wei⁴-shên²-mo³) not (mei²) go (ch'ü⁴).
31. Are you going alone or are you going with your friends ? = you are (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) man (jên²) go (ch'ü⁴) or (還 hai²) are with (kên¹) your (ni³-ti⁴) friend (p'êng²-yu³) go.
32. Mr. Wang is my colleague = Wang (王) Mr. is (shih⁴) my (wo⁸-ti⁴) colleague.
33. I say to Wang, 'Come along, Wang' = I reply (tui⁴) Wang Mr. say (shuo¹), 'come (lai²), Wang Mr.'
34. Good-bye = again (tsai⁴) meet (hui⁴).



FIFTEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 金 chin¹, gold. It also means 'metals' generally.
2. 銀 yin², silver.
3. 鐵 t'ieh³, iron.
4. 銅 t'ung², copper.
5. 鉛 ch'ien¹, lead.
6. 錫 hsi² (or si²), tin.
7. 白 pê² (or pai²) white, pure, clear, bright. } platinum.
- 金 chin¹, metal.
8. „ 剛石 chin¹-kang¹-shih², the diamond; where 'kang¹' means 'hard, unyielding' and 'shih²' means 'stone, rock.'
9. 鑛 k'uang⁴ (also kung³), the ore of metals; a mine.
10. 銀 yin², silver, riches, wealth. }
- 行 hang², a mercantile establishment, a house of business. } a bank.
11. „ 市 hang²-shih⁴, the market-rate; where the latter means 'a market'.
12. 錢 ch'ien², money.
13. 鈔 ch'ao⁴ (or ch'ao¹) paper-money, a money-order, a document, a voucher, a receipt. }
14. 票 p'iao⁴, a bill, a bank-note, a ticket, a certificate, a document, a warrant, a slip of paper. } currency note.
15. 銀 yin² }
- 角 chio², a tenth of a dollar. } a coin.
- 子 tzü³

7 Old sound, pak; Cf. Japanese, haku (paku); Skt. pāka, pure (RV. I. 164. 5; X. 2. 5; 7. 6); Persian, پاک pak, pure.

16. 塊 k'uai⁴, a lump, a piece. }
 錢 ch'ien², money. } a dollar.
17. 價 chia⁴, price, value. }
 錢 ch'ien², money. } price.
18. 辦 pan⁴, to manage, to do business. }
 公 kung¹, public. } an office.
 廳 t'ing¹, a hall, a room.
21. 舖 p'u⁴, a shop }
 子 tzü³ } a shop.
22. 經 ching¹, to manage. }
 理 li³, to manage. } a manager.
24. 衣 i¹, cloth; i⁴, to wear. }
 裳 shang², clothes. } clothes.
26. 布 pu⁴, cotton cloth, shirtings.
27. 襯 ch'ên⁴, underclothing. }
 衫 shan¹, a shirt. } a shirt.
29. 襯 ch'ên⁴. }
 褲 k'u⁴, trousers. } pants.
30. „ k'u⁴ }
 子 tzü³ } trousers.
31. 汗 han⁴, sweat, perspiration. }
 衫 shan¹ } a vest.
32. 褂 kua⁴, a coat. }
 子 tzü³ } a coat.
33. 砍 k'an³, to cut. }
 肩 chien¹, the shoulder. } a waistcoat.

33 Cf. Skt. \sqrt{khand} to cut.

35. 帽 mao⁴, a cap, a hat. } a cap, a hat.
子 tzü³
36. 皮 p'i², leather. }
37. 帶 tai⁴, a girdle. } a belt.
38. 手 shou³, hands. }
表 piao³, a watch. } a wrist-watch.
39. 鞋 hsieh³, shoes. }
子 tzü³ } shoes.
40. 襪 wa⁴ (ua⁴), socks, stockings. }
子 tzü³ } socks, stockings.
41. 傘 san³, an umbrella.
42. 裁 ts'ai², to cut out. }
43. 縫 fêng², to sew. } a tailor.
44. „ 上 fêng²-shang⁴, to sew up.
45. 穿 „ ch'uan¹-shang⁴, to put on.
46. „ ch'uan¹, to wear, to put on.
47. 脫 t'uo¹ (t'o¹), to undress, to take off, to put off.
48. 針 chên¹, a needle.
49. 線 hsien⁴, thread.
50. 撕 ssü¹, to tear.
51. 改 kai³, to alter, to change.
52. 方 fang¹, a plan. }
53. 便 pien⁴, convenient. } convenient.
54. 緊 chin³, tight.
55. 算 suan⁴, to reckon, to count, to consider.
56. 現 hsien³, now, at present. }
在 tsai⁴, at, in, on. } now, at present.
57. 多 to¹, many, much. }
少 shao³, few, little. } some.



Exercise (with hints)

1. What is the market-rate of silver to-day? = to-day (chin¹-t'ien) silver what (shên²-mo³) market-rate.
2. I have not yet heard = I yet (hai²) not (mei²) hear (t'ing¹) speak (shuo¹ or sho¹).
3. Dollars of course are convenient = of course (tzū⁴-jan²) are (shih⁴) dollar convenient.
4. Give me six dollars = give (kei³) me (wo³) six (liu⁴) dollar.
5. What is the price? = what (shên²-mo³) price.
6. What is the price of this pair of shoes? = this (chê⁴) pair (對 tui⁴) shoes is (shih⁴) what (shên²-mo³) price.
7. Where is the bank? = where (na³-li³) is (shih⁴) bank.
8. He is going to the office = he to (到 tao⁴) office go (ch'ü⁴).
9. Have you any money? = you have (yu³) money mo³ (an interrogative particle).
10. Yes, not much = yes (yu³-ti⁴) not (pu⁴) much (to¹).
11. Cloth is very dear = cloth (i¹) consider (suan⁴) very (hên³) dear (kuei⁴).
12. Tell the tailor that the trousers are too long and the coat is too short. They must be altered = tell (kao⁴-su⁴) tailor that (na⁴) trousers too (t'ai⁴) long (ch'ang²), coat too (t'ai⁴) short (tuan³), two (liang³) piece (ko⁴) all (都 tu¹) must (得 tê²) alter.
13. This coat of mine is torn. Get a needle and thread and sew it up = I this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) coat tear ed (liao³), take (na²) needle thread sew up.
14. Now I put on my clothes and shoes = now (hsien³-tsai⁴) I put on (ch'uan¹) clothes (i'-shang²) put on (ch'uan¹) shoes.
15. First I put on my vest and shirt = I first (先 hsien¹) put on (ch'uan¹-shang⁴) vest and (kên¹) shirt.
16. I put on my socks = I put on (ch'uan¹-shang⁴) socks.
17. My pants are tight = my (wo³-ti⁴) pants tight lao³ (了, a final particle).
18. Take off your hat = take off (t'o¹ or t'uo¹) your (ni³-ti⁴) hat.
19. He has a good wrist-watch = he has (yu³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) good (hao³) one (ti⁴) wrist-watch.
20. I want to go to the shop = I want (yao⁴) to (tao⁴) shop go (ch'ü⁴).
21. Where is the manager? = manager at (tsai⁴) where (na³-li³).
22. His father has some money in the bank = his (t'a¹-ti⁴) father fu⁴-ch'in¹) has (yu³) some (to¹-shao³) money in (tsai⁴) bank.



SIXTEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 郵政局 yu²-chêng⁴-chü², a post office; where yu² means 'a post-house', chêng⁴ means 'administration' and chü² means 'an office'.
2. „ 局長 yu²-chü²-chang³, a post master; where chang³ means 'senior, old'.
3. „ 差 yu²-ch'ai¹, a postal peon; where the latter means 'the servant of an official'.
4. „ 件 yu²-chien⁴, mail; where the latter means 'an article'.
5. „ 票 yu²-p'iao⁴, a stamp; where p'iao⁴ (tzu⁴) means 'a ticket, a warrant'.
6. 信 hsin⁴ (sin⁴), a letter.
7. „ 片 hsin⁴-p'ien⁴, a postcard; where the latter means 'a splinter, a slice'.
8. „ 箱 hsin⁴-hsiang¹ (siang¹), a letter-box; where the latter means 'a box, a chest'.
9. 封信 fêng¹-hsin⁴, a sealed letter; where the former means 'to seal up'.
10. „ 套 fêng¹-t'ao⁴, an envelope; where the latter means 'a cover, a case'.
11. 地址 ti⁴-chih³, an address; where the former means 'the earth, locality' and the latter means 'a foundation, a boundary'.
12. 電 tien⁴, electricity.
13. „ 報 tien⁴-pao⁴, a telegram; where the latter means 'news'.
14. „ „ 局 tien⁴-pao⁴-chü², a telegraph-office.
15. „ 話 tien⁴-hua⁴, telephone; where 'hua⁴' means 'speech, language, to speak'.

16. 電車 tien⁴-ch'ê¹, a tram; where ch'ê¹ means 'a cart, a carriage'.
17. 火 .. huo³ (ho³)-ch'ê¹, a train.
18. .. 站 huo³-ch'ê¹-chan⁴, a railway station; where chan⁴ means 'to stop, to stand up'.
19. 汽車 ch'i⁴-ch'ê¹, a motor car; where the former means 'steam, vapour'.
20. 開車的 k'ai¹-ch'ê¹-ti⁴, a driver; where k'ai¹ means 'to open'.
21. 公 kung¹, public.
 其 kung⁴, all, the whole. } public.
 汽車 ch'i⁴
 車 ch'ê¹ } a bus.
22. 飛機 fei¹-chi¹, an aeroplane; where the former means 'to fly' and the latter means 'a machine'.
23. 機器 chi¹-ch'i⁴, a machine, machinery; where the latter means 'implements'.
24. 船 ch'uan², a ship, a steamer.
25. 小船 hsiao³-ch'uan², a boat.
26. 洋 yang², the ocean.
27. 海 hai³, the sea.
28. 湖 hu², a lake.
29. 河 ho², a river.
30. 數 shu⁴, several, number; shu³, to count.
31. 遞 ti⁴, to hand over, to forward.
32. 接 chieh¹, to meet, to receive, to accept.
33. 用 yung⁴, to use.
34. 寄 chi⁴, to send.
35. 乘 ch'êng², to ride, to mount.

36. 坐 tso⁴, to travel by; to sit.

37. 呢 ni², an interrogative and emphatic particle.

Exercise (with hints)

- Where is the post office = where (na³-li³) is (shih⁴) post office.
- I want to send letters = I want (yao⁴) send letter.
- The postal peon says to me, 'A letter for you, Sir!' = postal peon to (tui⁴) me (wo³) say (shuo¹ or sho¹), 'Sir' (hsien¹-shêng¹), here (chê⁴-li³) have (yu³) you (nin²—a polite form of address) one (i¹) seal (fêng¹) letter.
- He then hands the letter to my driver = he then (chiu⁴) take hold of (pa³) letter hand over (ti⁴) give (kei³) my (wo³-ti⁴) driver. [ti⁴-kei³, to hand over, e.g. ti⁴-kei³ wo³, hand it over to me.]
- I take the telegram = I take hold of (pa³) telegram receive (chieh¹) pass (過 kuo⁴) come (lai²) [or take (na²) pass (kuo⁴) come (lai²)]. [chieh¹-kuo⁴-lai² or na²-kuo⁴-lai², to take over.]
- You need not wait. There is no need for an answer or reply = you (ni³) not (pu²) use (yung⁴) wait (têng³) cho²-lo¹ (着了, indicator of the completion of action), not (pu⁴) must (pi⁴) give (kei³) return (回 hui²) letter. [pu⁴-yung⁴, need not; hui²-hsin⁴, a reply.]
- What is your address? = your (ni³-ti⁴) address (ti⁴-chih³) ni² (an interrogative particle)?
- Have you a postcard? = you (ni³) have (yu³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) postcard mo³ (an interrogative particle)?
- Yes, I have a postcard and an envelope = yes (yu³), I have (yu³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) postcard and (kên¹) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) envelope.
- The post master has a good motor car = post master has (yu³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) good (hao³) one (ti⁴) motor car.
- I go to Delhi by a train = I mount (ch'êng²) train to (tao⁴) Delhi go (ch'ü⁴).
- He is going by an aeroplane = he (t'a¹) travel by (tso⁴) aeroplane.
- I go to the tram-stop = I walk (tsou³) to (tao⁴) tram (tien⁴-ch'ê¹) stop (chan⁴).
- I then get on the bus = I then (chiu⁴) ascend (上 shang⁴) lo¹ (a final particle) bus. [shang⁴-lo¹, to get on.]
- This ship is very small = this (chê⁴) ship very (hên³) small (hsiao³).
- There are boats in the river = in (tsai⁴) river there are (yu³) number (shu⁴) many (to¹) boat.

37 Cf. Bengali নি <<ni>>, an interrogative and emphatic particle; e.g. interrogative: এই নি পণ্ডিত <<ei ni paṇḍit>>, কেহ নি আসিয়া আছে <<keha ni āsiyā āche>> (Caitanyabhāgavat); emphatic: $\text{দেখিলে নি দয়া লাগে}$ <<dekhile ni dayā lāge>> (Padmāvatīr Pāncālī).

17. The ocean is bigger than the sea = ocean compare (pi³) sea big (ta⁴).
18. That lake is very broad = that (na⁴) piece (ko⁴) lake very (hên³) broad (k'uo⁴) one (ti⁴).
19. This river is very narrow = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) river very narrow (hsia²).
20. I am going to the station = I to (tao⁴) station (huo³-ch'ê¹-chan⁴) go (ch'ü⁴).
21. Bring here the machine = take (na²) machine to (tao⁴) here (chê⁴-li³) come (lai²) [na²-lai², to bring].



SEVENTEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 印度 yin⁴-tu⁴, India.
2. 中國 chung¹-kuo², China ; where kuo² means 'country, kingdom'.
3. 華 hua², China, Chinese. (The original meaning is flower or flowery, glory or glorious.)
4. 俄國 ngo² (o²)-kuo², Russia.
5. 英 ,, ying¹-kuo², England.
6. 法 ,, fa⁴-kuo², France.
7. 德 ,, tê²-kuo², Germany.
8. 美 ,, mei³-kuo², America (U.S.A.)
9. 獅子國 shih¹-tzu³-kuo², Ceylon.
10. 阿富汗 a¹-fu⁴-han⁴, Afghanistan.
11. 巴基斯坦 pa¹-chi¹-su¹-tan⁴ Pakistan.
12. 波斯 po¹-szü¹ (ssu¹), Persia.
13. 阿剌伯 a¹-la²-pai³ (or pê²), Arabia.
14. 埃及 ai¹-chi², Egypt.
15. 日本 jih⁴-pên³, Japan.
16. 爪哇 chao³-wa¹ (chua³-wa¹) Java.
17. 父母國 fu⁴-mu³-kuo², (one's) native land ; parent country, i.e. father-land or mother-land.
18. 縣 hsien⁴, a district.
19. 城市 ch'êng²-shih⁴, a city, a town ; where the former means 'a city, a town' and the latter means 'a market'.
20. 鄉下 hsiang¹-hsia⁴, a country, a village ; where the former means 'a country'.
21. 曉得 hsiao³-tê², to understand ; where the former means 'to understand' and the latter means 'to get'.
22. 駐 chu⁴, to dwell temporarily.

Exercise (with hints)

1. I am an Indian = I am (shih⁴) India man (jên²).
2. He is a Pakistani = he is (shih⁴) Pakistan man.
3. Where did you come from? = you from (ts'ung²) where (na³-li³) come (lai²)?
4. I came from Russia = I from (ts'ung²) Russia come (lai²).
5. Have you been to China? = you to (tao⁴) pass (kuo⁴) China mo³ (an interrogative particle)? [tao⁴-kuo⁴, to have been.]
6. Can you speak Chinese? = you can (hui⁴) speak (shuo¹) China language (hua⁴) mo³?
7. Yes, I can speak = yes (shih⁴), I can (hui⁴) speak.
8. No, I cannot speak = no (pu⁴) I not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) speak.
9. I understand a little = I understand not (pu⁴) much (to¹).
10. I can speak French and German = I can (hui⁴) speak France language (hua⁴) and (kên¹) Germany language (hua⁴).
11. He is going to China = he to (tao⁴) China go (ch'ü⁴).
12. My friend is going to England = my (wo³-ti⁴) friend (p'êng²-yu³) to (tao⁴) England go (ch'ü⁴).
13. I am going to the town = I to (tao⁴) town go (ch'ü⁴).
14. He speaks Arabic and Persian well = he speak (shuo¹) one (ti⁴) good (hao³) Arabia language (hua⁴) and (kên¹) Persia language (hua⁴).
15. Mr. Datta has lived in Japan for three years = Datta Mr. (hsien¹-shêng¹) in (tsai⁴) Japan already (i³-ching¹) dwell temporarily (chu⁴) past (liao³) three (san¹) year (nien²) lo¹ (a final particle).
16. I have been a year in the country = I in (tsai⁴) country dwell temporarily (chu⁴) past (liao³) one (i¹) year (nien²).



EIGHTEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 教室 chiao⁴-shih⁴, the class-room; where the former means 'to teach' and the latter means 'a room, a house'.
2. 皮包 p'i²-pao¹, a bag; where the former means 'leather' and the latter means 'to wrap'.
3. 本子 pên³-tzŭ³, an exercise book; where 'pên³' means 'origin, root'.
4. 徧 pien⁴, a time, a turn.
5. 次 tz'ŭ⁴, a time, a turn.
6. 章 chang¹, a chapter, a section.
7. 課 k'o⁴, a lesson.
8. 抹布 mo³-pu⁴, a duster; where the former means 'to wipe, to rub' and the latter means 'cloth'.
9. 塊 k'uai⁴, a lump, a piece.
10. 聲 shêng¹, a tone, sound.
11. 陰平 yin¹-p'ing², the name of the first tone; where 'yin¹' means 'dark, darkness; the negative or female principle in nature; female' and p'ing² means 'level'.
12. 陽 „ yáng²-p'ing², the name of the second tone; where the former means 'light; the positive or male principle in nature; male'.
13. 上聲 shang⁴-shêng¹, the name of the third tone, i.e. the rising tone; where shang⁴ means 'to rise, to ascend'.
14. 去 „ ch'ü⁴-shêng¹, the name of the fourth tone, i.e. the departing tone; where ch'ü⁴ means 'to go'.
15. 部首 pu⁴-shou³, radicals (for Chinese characters); where pu⁴ means 'a section' and shou³ means 'the head, heading'.

16. 號碼 hao⁴-ma³, number; where hao⁴ means 'a number' and ma³ means 'a form of Chinese numerals'.
17. 字典 tzŭ⁴-tien³, a dictionary; where the former means 'a letter, a written character, a word' and the latter means 'a statute, a law, a code, a canon, documents, records'.
18. 法 fa³, method, law, statutes.
19. 打 ta³, to strike, to hit, to hit.
20. 念 nien⁴, to read, to chant, to think, to remember, to recall.
21. 起 ch'i³, to rise, to raise.
22. 擦 ts'a¹, to rub, to wipe.
23. 去 ts'a¹-ch'ü⁴, to rub out, to wipe out.
24. 擱 ko¹, to put, to place.
25. 完 wan², to finish, to complete.
26. 查 ch'a², to search, to seek out.
27. 記得 chi⁴-tê², to remember; where chi⁴ means 'to remember' and tê² means 'to get, to obtain'.
28. 地道 ti⁴-tao⁴, genuine, thoroughly; where the former means 'the earth' and the latter means 'a road'.
29. 全 ch'üan², perfect, complete.
30. 不方便 pu⁴-fang¹-pien⁴, inconvenient; where pu⁴ means 'not', fang¹ means 'a place' and pien⁴ means 'convenient'.
31. 要是 yao⁴-shih⁴, if; where yao⁴ means 'if' and 'shih⁴' means 'to be'.
32. 或 hu⁴-shih⁴, or; where hu⁴ means 'or'.

Exercise (with hints)

1. The teacher teaches in the class-room = teacher (hsien¹-shêng¹) in (tsai⁴) class-room teach (chiao¹) book (shu¹) or explain (chiang³) book (shu¹).
2. He picks up a duster = he take (na²) rise (ch'i³) one (i¹) piece (k'uai⁴) duster come (lai²) [na²-ch'i³ and subsequent lai² means 'to pick up'].



3. He rubs out the characters which he has written = he rub out writing (寫的 *hsieh³-ti⁴*) character (*tzũ⁴*).
4. The third chapter is very long = order (*ti⁴*) three (*san¹*) chapter very (*hên³*) long (*ch'ang²*).
5. The fourth lesson is very difficult = order (*ti⁴*) four (*ssũ⁴*) lesson very (*hên³*) difficult (*chien¹-nan²*).
6. The character *i¹* (one) is the first tone or *yin¹-p'ing²* = one (*i¹*) character (*tzũ⁴*) is (*shih⁴*) order (*ti⁴*) one (*i¹*) tone (*shêng¹*) or (*huo⁴-shih⁴*) say (*shuo¹*) *yin¹-p'ing²*.
7. The character *jên²* (man) is the second tone or *yang²-p'ing²* = man (*jên²*) character (*tzũ⁴*) is (*shih⁴*) order (*ti⁴*) two (*êrh⁴*) tone (*shêng¹*) or (*huo⁴-shih⁴*) say (*shuo¹*) *yang²-p'ing²*.
8. The character *shui³* (water) is the third tone or *shang⁴-shêng¹* = water (*shui³*) character (*tzũ⁴*) is (*shih⁴*) order (*ti⁴*) three (*san¹*) tone (*shêng¹*) or (*huo⁴-shih⁴*) say (*shuo¹*) *shang⁴-shêng¹*.
9. The character *êrh⁴* (two) is the fourth tone or *ch'ũ⁴-shêng¹* = two (*êrh⁴*) character (*tzũ⁴*) is (*shih⁴*) order (*ti⁴*) four (*ssũ⁴*) tone (*shêng¹*) or (*huo⁴-shih⁴*) say (*shuo¹*) *ch'ũ⁴-shêng¹*.
10. All these characters are the radicals = this (*chê⁴*) some (*sieh¹* or *hsieh¹*) characters (*tzũ⁴*) all (都 *tu¹*) are (*shih⁴*) radicals (*pu⁴-shou³*).
11. *i¹* is radical no. 1 = one (*i¹*) is (*shih⁴*) radical (*pu⁴-shou³*) order (*ti⁴* = no.) one (*i¹*).
12. *jên²* is radical no. 9 = man (*jên²*) is (*shih⁴*) radical (*pu⁴-shou³*) order (*ti⁴*) nine (*chiu³*).
13. *shui³* is radical no. 85 = water (*shui³*) is (*shih⁴*) radical (*pu⁴-shou³*) order (*ti⁴*) eight ten five (*pa¹-shih²-wu³*).
14. *êrh⁴* is radical no. 7 = two (*êrh⁴*) is (*shih⁴*) radical (*pu⁴-shou³*) order (*ti⁴*) seven (*ch'i¹*).
15. The student takes the exercise book out of his bag = student (*hsüeh²*) *shêng¹* from (*ts'ung²*) his (*t'a¹-ti⁴*) bag (*p'i²-pao¹*) inside (*li³*) take (*na²*) out (*ch'u¹*) one (*i¹*) piece (*ko⁴*) exercise book (*pên³-tzũ³*) come (*lai²*).
16. He opens this exercise book = he take hold of (*pa³*) this (*chê⁴*) piece (*ko⁴*) exercise book (*pên³-tzũ³*) strike (*ta³*) open (*k'ai¹*). [*ta³-k'ai¹*, to open.]
17. He writes some very simple or easy Chinese characters = he write (*hsieh³*) several (*chi³*) piece (*ko⁴*) very (*hên³*) easy (*yung²-yi⁴*) writing (*hsieh³-ti⁴*) China (*chung¹-kuo²*) character (*tzũ⁴*).
18. He has finished writing = he write (*hsieh³*) finish (*wan²*) ed (*liao³*).
19. He reads these characters three times = he take hold of (*pa³*) this (*chê⁴*) some (*sieh¹* or *hsieh¹*) piece (*ko⁴*) character (*tzũ⁴*) read (*nien⁴*) three (*san¹*) time (*pien⁴* or *tz'u⁴*).

20. He puts the duster down = he get hold of (pa³) duster (mo³-pu⁴) put (ko¹) down (hsia⁴).
21. So he is learning very thoroughly how to write and read the Chinese characters, the four tones and the numbers of radicals = so (so³-i³) he take hold of (pa³) China (chung¹-kuo²) character (tzū⁴) -'s (ti⁴) write (hsieh³) method (fa³) read (nien⁴) method (fa³) four (ssū⁴) tone (shêng¹) and (kên¹) radical (pu⁴-shou³) -'s (ti⁴) number (hao⁴-ma³) perfect (ch'üan²) learning (hsüeh²-ti⁴) very (hên³) thoroughly (ti⁴-tao⁴).
22. To look up the Chinese dictionary is very difficult or inconvenient, if one does not remember the numbers of the radicals = search (ch'a²) China (chung¹-kuo²) dictionary (tzū⁴-tien³), if (yao⁴-shih⁴) not (pu⁴) remember (chi⁴-tê²) radical (pu⁴-shou³) -'s (ti⁴) number (hao⁴-ma³) is (shih⁴) very (hên³) inconvenient (pu⁴-fang¹-pien⁴) one (ti⁴).
-



NINETEENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 風 fung¹, wind.
2. 空氣 k'ung¹-ch'i⁴, air; where k'ung¹ means 'empty, hollow' and ch'i⁴ means 'air, breath, steam'.
3. 天空 t'ien¹-k'ung¹, the sky, the firmament.
4. 雲彩 yün²-ts'ai³, the cloud; where yün² means 'cloud' and ts'ai³ means 'variegated colours'.
5. 雨 yü², the rain.
6. 雷 lei², thunder.
7. 閃 shan³, a flash of lightning, lightning.
8. 雹 pao² (tzü³), hail.
9. 雪 hsüeh³, snow.
10. 冰 ping¹, ice.
11. 霧 wu⁴, fog, mist.
12. 露 lu⁴, dew.
13. 昏 hun¹, dark.
14. 晴 ch'ing² (or ts'ing²), clear (sky), fair (weather).
15. 滿 man³, full, whole, complete.
16. 刮 kua¹, to blow (as the wind).
17. 散 san⁴, to scatter, to disperse.
18. 就 chiu⁴, then; to come, to go, to follow.
19. 把 pa³, to take hold of.
20. 消 hsiao¹, to melt.
21. 化 hua⁴, to change, to transform.
22. 又 yu⁴, again.
23. 也 yeh³, an emphatic particle giving special emphasis to the preceding word.

} to blow away.

} to take.

} to melt.

Exercise (with hints)

1. The sky is very cloudy = sky (t'ien¹) very (hên³) dark.
2. There are thunder, lightning and rain = then (yu³-shih⁴, lit. have is) thunder, then (yu³-shih⁴) lightning, then (yu³-shih⁴) rain.
3. A strong wind is blowing away the clouds = great (ta⁴) wind take (chiu⁴-pa³) cloud (yün²-ts'ai³) blow away.
4. It rains and snows = then (yu³-shih⁴) rain, then (yu³-shih⁴) snow.
5. Ice is melting = ice melt.
6. Dew is falling = dew fall (hsia⁴, down).
7. A fog overspreads the sky = full (man³) sky (t'ien¹) fog.
8. The sky has cleared up again = sky (t'ien¹) again (yu⁴) clear-ed (liao³).
9. Both the moon and the stars were seen (came out) = moon (yüeh⁴) both (liang³) yeh³ (an emphatic particle) star (hsing¹) star (hsing¹) yeh³ (an emphatic particle) out (ch'u¹) come (lai²) ed (liao³).



TWENTIETH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 疾 chi² (tsi²), disease, sickness. }
2. 病 ping⁴, disease. } disease.
3. 人 ping⁴-jên², a patient.
4. 醫 i¹, to heal, to cure; a doctor. }
5. 生 shêng¹, a scholar, a student. } a doctor, a physician.
6. 太 t'ai⁴, very, too. }
7. 夫 fu¹, a man. } a doctor, a physician.
8. 醫院 i¹-yüan⁴, a hospital; where the latter means 'a hall, a public building'.
9. 藥 yao⁴, medicine.
10. 水 yao⁴-shui³, mixture; where the latter means 'water; liquids'.
11. 丸 yao⁴-wan² (uan²), a pill, a tablet; where the latter means 'a pill'.
12. 醫針 i¹-chên¹, injection; where the latter means 'a needle'.
13. 注 chu⁴, water flowing. }
14. 射 shê⁴, to project, to shoot out. } inoculation.
15. 溫 wên¹ (uên¹), warm, hot. }
16. 度 tu⁴, a measure, a degree. } temperature.
17. 體 t'i², the body. }
18. 溫 wên¹, warm, hot. } thermometer.
18. 表 piao³, an index, a chart. }
19. 聽 t'ing¹, to hear. }
20. 診 chên³, to examine (disease). } stethoscope.
21. 器 ch'i⁴, organ in the body. }
22. 脈 or 脉 mai⁴, the pulse.

23. 膏藥 kao¹-yao⁴, a plaster; where the former means 'plaster'.
24. 藥方 yao⁴-fang¹, a prescription; where the latter means 'direction'.
25. 頭疼 t'ou²-t'êng², headache; where the former means 'head' and the latter 'pain, to ache'.
26. 熱 jê⁴, fever; hot.
27. 燒 shao¹, fever.
28. 瘧疾 yao⁴-chi² (tsi²), malaria; where the former means 'fever'.
29. 咳嗽 k'ê²-sou⁴, cough; both mean 'to cough'.
30. 霍 huo⁴, quickly, suddenly.
31. 亂 luan⁴, disorderly, reckless; rebellion.
32. 痢疾 li⁴-chi² (tsi²), dysentery; where the former means 'dysentery, diarrhoea'.
33. 白痢 pai²-li⁴, diarrhoea; where the former means 'white'.
34. 喉 pai²-hou², diphtheria; where the latter means 'the throat, the gullet'.
35. 疹子 chên³-tzŭ³, measles.
36. 天花 t'ien¹-hua¹, small-pox; where the former means 'the sky, heaven' and the latter 'flowers'.
37. 流 liu², to flow, a current.
38. 行 hsing², to walk, to travel.
39. 傳 ch'uan², to spread.
40. 染 jan³, to infect, to catch a disease.
41. 病 ping⁴, disease.
42. 肺炎 fei⁴-yên², pneumonia; where the former means 'the lungs' and the latter 'a flame; to flame; inflammation'.
43. 肺病 fei⁴-ping⁴, tuberculosis.
44. 瘟 wên¹ (uên¹)-ping⁴, epidemics; where the former means 'epidemic, plague'.

} cholera.

} epidemic.

} influenza.

45. 瘟疫 wên¹-i⁴, plague; where the latter means 'epidemic'.
46. 時間 shih²-chien¹, time; where the former means 'time' and the latter 'while, among, in, on'.
47. 傳 ch'uan², to spread.
48. 染 jan³, to infect, to catch a disease. } infectious.
49. 右 yu⁴, the right-hand side, the right side.
50. 左 tso³, the left-hand side, the left side.
51. 鬧 nao⁴, to suffer (from).
52. 開 k'ai¹, to write (a prescription).
53. 號 hao⁴, to feel (the pulse).
54. 發 fa¹, to rise, to manifest.
55. 摩 mo², to feel with the hand.
56. 用 yung⁴, to use.
57. 打 ta³, to send (a telegram), to speak (by telephone).
58. 服 fu², to take (medicine); a dose of medicine.
59. 跳 t'iao⁴, to jump, to leap.
60. 快 k'uai⁴, quickly, rapidly.
61. 以 i³, when.
62. 按照 an⁴-chao⁴, according to; where both mean 'according to'.
63. 詳 hsiang², in detail, such as.
64. 等等的 têng³-têng³-ti⁴, et cetera; etc.

Exercise (with hints)

1. I have fever = I (wo³) rise (fa¹) fever (shao¹).
2. You are suffering from fever = you (ni³) suffer (nao⁴) fever (jê⁴).
3. Your temperature is 102.4° = your (ni³-ti⁴) temperature is (shih⁴) one (i¹) hundred (pai³) zero (ling²) two (êrh⁴) degree (tu⁴) four (ssü⁴).

4. When I put my hand to your head, it feels hot = I (wo³) use (yung⁴) my (wo³-ti⁴) hand (shou³) when (i³) feel with hand (mo²) your (ni³-ti⁴) head (t'ou²) head (t'ou²) hot (jê⁴).
5. I shall ask Dr. Pal to come and see you = I (wo³) request (ch'ing³) Pal Dr. (t'ai⁴-fu¹) come (lai²) give (kei³) you (ni³) look (k'an⁴) look (k'an⁴) pa⁴ (罷 a final particle).
6. I telephone for Dr. Pal = I send (ta³) telephone (tien⁴-hua⁴) for (kei³) Pal Dr.
7. Dr. Pal comes to examine you = Pal Dr. grant (kei³, give) you (ni³) look (k'an⁴) disease (ping⁴).
8. The doctor feels your pulse with the right hand = doctor (t'ai⁴-fu¹) use (yung⁴) right (yu⁴) hand (shou³) feel (hao⁴) feel (hao⁴) your (ni³-ti⁴) pulse.
9. In the left hand he holds a watch and looks at the time = he use (yung⁴) left (tso³) hand (shou³) take (na³) cho² (着 a durative suffix) watch (piao³) look (k'an⁴) time (shih²-chien¹).
10. The doctor says, 'your pulse is beating very quickly = doctor say (shuo¹) 'your (ni³-ti⁴) pulse jump (t'iao⁴)-ing (ti⁴) very (hên³) quickly (k'uai⁴).'
11. He asks again, 'Have you a cough?' = he again (yu⁴) ask (wên⁴) 'you (ni³) cough (k'ê²-sou⁴) mo³ (an interrogative particle) ?'
12. The doctor writes you a prescription = doctor give (kei³) you (ni³) write (k'ai¹) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) prescription (yao⁴-fang¹).
13. You take medicine according to his prescription = you (ni³) according to (an⁴-chao⁴) his (t'a¹-ti⁴) prescription take (fu²) medicine (yao⁴).
14. He is quite well now = now (hsien⁴-tsai⁴) he (t'a¹) illness (ping⁴) well (hao³) lo¹ (a final particle).
15. We have injections and inoculations = we (wo³-mên) have (yu³) injection and (kên¹) inoculation.
16. There are infectious diseases or epidemics, such as, cholera, small-pox, diphtheria, measles, influenza, dysentery, tuberculosis, etc. = there are (yu³) infectious disease (ch'uan²-jan³ ping⁴) or (或 huó) epidemics (wên¹-ping⁴) such as (hsiang²) cholera, small-pox, diphtheria, measles, influenza, tuberculosis, etc. (têng³-têng³-ti⁴).



TWENTY-FIRST LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 考試 k'ao³-shih⁴, examination; both mean 'to test, to examine; examination'.
2. 筆 ,, pi³-shih⁴, written examination.
3. 口 ,, k'ou³-shih⁴, oral examination.
4. 題目 t'i²-mu⁴, a question, a theme; where the former means 'the forehead'; hence 'a heading, a theme, a subject, a proposition' and the latter means 'the eyes, an index, a list, an item'.
5. 卷子 chüan⁴-tzü³, examination paper.
6. 一篇文章 i¹-p'ien¹-wên²-chang¹, an essay; where p'ien¹ means 'a leaf of a book, an essay, a passage', wên² (uen²) means 'literature' and chang¹ means 'chapter' [wên²-chang¹, an essay, an article, a paper] [p'ien¹ is here a numerative].
7. 英文 ying¹-wên², English, the English text.
8. 華 ,, hua²-wên², Chinese, the Chinese text.
9. 文法 wên²-fa³, grammar. ?
10. 史 shih³, history.
11. 系主任 hsi⁴-chu³-jên⁴, the Head of the Department; where hsi⁴ means 'a connection', chu³ means 'a lord, a master' and jên⁴ means 'an official position, an office' [chu³-jên⁴, a principal, a chairman].
12. 道 tao⁴, a road, truth, doctrine.
13. 圖書館 t'u²-shu¹-kuan³, a library-, where t'u² means 'a map, a picture, a diagram, a portrait', shu¹ means 'a book' and kuan³ means 'a hall'.
14. 國家圖書館 kuo²-chia¹ t'u²-shu¹-kuan³, National Library [kuo²-chia¹ means 'nation, national'].

15. 小說 hsiao³-shuo¹, a novel; where the former means 'small; a concubine' and the latter means 'to speak, to say, to tell'.
16. 著作人 chu⁴-tso⁴-jên², an author; where chu⁴ means 'to write (a book)' and tso⁴ means 'to write, to compose, to do, to work, to make'.
17. 架子 chia⁴-tzü³, a shelf.
18. 書目 shu¹-mu⁴, a catalogue of books.
19. „ 架 shu¹-chia⁴, a book-shelf.
20. „ 櫃 shu¹-kuei⁴, a book-case; where the latter means 'a cupboard, a shop-counter'.
21. 借書證 chieh⁴ (tsieh⁴)-shu¹-chêng⁴, a library-card; where chieh⁴ means 'to borrow, to lend' and chêng⁴ means 'evidence, proof; to give evidence, to testify'.
22. „ „ 單 chieh⁴-shu¹-tan¹, a book-ticket, a borrowing slip; where tan¹ means 'a document, a bill, a cheque, a single sheet of paper'.
23. 及格 chi² (chih²)-ko² (kê²), to pass (an examination), where both mean 'to reach, to come up to'.
24. 進 chin⁴ (tsin⁴), to enter.
25. 繙譯 fan¹-i⁴, to translate; where both mean 'to translate'.
26. 填 t'ien², to fill up, to fill in.
27. 搆 kou⁴, to pull, to drag.
28. 簽 ch'ien¹ (ts'ien¹), to sign, to endorse.
29. 並且 ping⁴-ch'ieh³ (ts'ieh³), moreover, besides; where ping⁴ means 'and, also' and ch'ieh³ means 'moreover, further'.
30. 一共 i¹-kung⁴, altogether.

Exercise (with hints)

1. The student enters the examination hall = student (hsüeh²-shêng¹) enter (chin⁴) examination (k'ao³ or shih⁴) hall (t'ang²).
2. He wants an examination paper and a question = he (t'a¹) want (yao⁴) examination (k'ao³-shih⁴) paper (chüan⁴-tzu³) and (kên¹) question (t'i²-mu⁴).

3. There are nine questions in all, six of which are to be answered = altogether (i¹-kung⁴) is (shih⁴) nine (chiu³) question (t'i²) allow (任 jên⁴) answer (ta²) six (liu⁴) question (t'i²).
4. The Head of the Department asks the student to read and translate it into English = Head of the Department (hsi⁴-chu³-jên⁴) call (chiao⁴) student (hsüeh²-shêng¹) read (nien⁴) moreover (ping⁴-ch'ieh³) call (chiao⁴) student translate (fan¹-i⁴) English text (ying¹-wên²).
5. The student passed the examination = student (hsüeh²-shêng¹) examination (k'ao³-shih⁴) pass (chih²-ko²) ed (liao³).
6. I passed the written examination = I (wo³) written examination (pi³-shih⁴-k'ao³) pass (chih²-ko²) ed.
7. He did not pass the oral examination = he (t'a¹) not (mei²) pass (chih²-ko²) oral examination (k'ou³-shih⁴).
8. We borrow books from the library = we (wo³-mên) from (ts'ung²) library borrow (chieh⁴) book (shu¹).
9. There are great many Chinese books in our National Library = our (wo³-mên-ti⁴) national library (kuo²-chia¹ t'u²-shu¹-kuan³) in (li³) has (yu³) very (hên³) many (to¹) Chinese (chung¹-kuo²) book (shu¹).
10. He is very fond of reading novels = he (t'a¹) very (hên³) love (ai⁴) read (k'an⁴, to look at, to read) novel.
11. He takes the book from the shelf = he take (pa³) book from (ts'ung²) shelf (chia⁴-tzü³) on (shang⁴) pull (kou⁴) down (hsia⁴) come (lai²).
12. He fills in a book-ticket (a borrowing slip) = he fill (t'ien²) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) book-ticket (chiêh⁴-shu¹-tan¹).
13. He fills in the title of the book and the name of the author = he fill (t'ien²) on (shang⁴) book ((shu¹) name (ming²) and (kên¹) author (chu⁴-tso⁴-jên²)-'s (ti⁴) name (hsing⁴-ming²).
14. He signs it (or his name) = he sign (ch'ien¹) on (shang⁴) letter (tzü⁴) (his name, t'a¹-ti⁴ ming²-tzü³).



TWENTY-SECOND LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 警察 ching³-ch'a², the police, policeman; where the former means 'to warn' and the latter 'to examine judicially, to find out.'
2. „ „ 局 ching³-ch'a²-chü², a police station; where chü² means 'an office'.
3. „ 士 ching³-shih⁴, a constable; where the latter means 'a soldier'.
4. „ 長 ching³-chang³, Inspector of police, police sergeant; where chang³ means 'old, senior, chief'.
5. „ 察總監 ching³-ch'a²-tsung³-chien¹, Commissioner of police; where tsung³ means 'the chief; to manage' and chien¹ means 'to inspect'.
6. 報才架 pao⁴-t'an⁴, a detective; where pao⁴ means 'to report, to inform' and t'an⁴ means 'to spy, to search out'.
7. 法堂 fa³-t'ang², a court; where the former means 'laws, statutes' and the latter means 'a hall'.
8. 案件 an⁴-chien⁴, a case, a trial; where the former means 'a case at law, legal records' and the latter means 'an article'.
9. 報告 pao⁴-kao⁴, a report; where kao⁴ means 'to tell, to inform'.
10. 獄 yü⁴ (iuh⁴) a prison, a gaol.
11. 海關 hai³-kuan¹, a custom-house; where the former means 'the sea' and the latter means 'a frontier-pass or gate; a custom-house'.
12. 行李 hsing²-li³, a luggage, a baggage; where the former means 'to travel' and the latter means 'a plum'.


13. 護照 hu⁴-chao⁴, a passport; where hu⁴ means 'to guard, to escort' and chao⁴ means 'a pass, a permit'.
14. 監察 chien¹-ch'a², to examine, to inspect; where chien¹ means 'to inspect'.
15. 兵 ping¹, soldier.
16. 陸軍 lu⁴-chün¹, army; where lu⁴ means 'dry land' and chün¹ means 'military, army'.
17. 海,, hai²-chün¹, navy.
18. 空,, k'ung¹-chün¹, air force; where k'ung¹ means 'empty, hollow'.
19. 師 shih¹, a division (military unit).
20. 劍 chien⁴, a sword.
21. 鎗 ch'iang¹, a gun.
22. ,, 彈 ch'iang¹-tan⁴, a cartridge, a bullet; where tan⁴ means 'a bullet, a shell'.
23. 子,, tzü³-tan⁴, a cartridge, a bullet.
24. 手鎗 shou³-ch'iang¹, a pistol.
25. 機關鎗 chi¹-kuan¹-ch'iang¹, a machine-gun; where ch¹ means 'a machine'.
26. 六輪式手鎗 liu⁴-lun²-shih⁴-shou³-ch'iang¹, a revolver; where liu⁴ means 'six', lun² means 'a wheel' and shih⁴ means 'a pattern'.
27. 轉,, ,, ,, chuan⁴-lun²-shih⁴-shou³-ch'iang¹, a revolver; where chuan⁴ means 'to revolve'.
28. 炸彈 cha⁴-tan⁴, a bomb; where cha⁴ means 'to explode, to burst'.
29. 軍官 chün¹-kuan¹, an officer; where kuan¹ means 'an official'.
30. 礮臺 p'ao⁴-t'ai², a fort; where the former means 'a cannon, a gun' and the latter means 'a tower, a terrace'.
31. 旗 ch'i², a flag.
32. 顏色 yên²-sê⁴, colour; where both mean 'colour'.

33. 烟 yen¹, a cigarette, smoke, tobacco.
34. „ 灰 碟 yen¹-hui¹-tieh², an ashtray; where hui¹ means 'ashes, dust, lime' and tieh² means 'a plate, a saucer'.
35. 鼻 烟 pi²-yen¹, snuff; where pi² means 'the nose'.
36. 種 chung³, a kind or sort.
37. 酒 chiu³ (tsiu³), wine.
38. 紙 牌 chih³-p'ai², playing-cards; where the former means 'paper' and the latter means 'a placard, a sign-board, a tablet'.
39. 網 球 wang³ (uang³)-ch'iu², tennis; where wang³ means 'a net, a web' and ch'iu² means 'a ball'.
40. 籃 „ lan²-ch'iu², basket-ball; where lan² means 'a basket'.
41. 排 „ p'ai²-ch'iu², volley-ball; where p'ai² means 'a row, a line, a rank'.
42. 足 „ chü² (tsu²)-ch'iu², foot-ball; where chü² means 'the foot'.
43. 應該 ying¹-kai¹, should, ought to; where both mean 'should, ought to'.
44. 抽 ch'ou¹, to smoke; to draw out, to take out.
45. 打 ta³, to play (cards), to beat, to strike.
46. 喜 歡 hsi³-huan¹, like, fond of; where both mean 'pleasure, joy, pleased, glad'.
47. 踢 t'i¹, to kick (the ball).

Exercise (with hints)

1. He is an Inspector of Police = he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) Inspector of Police (ching³-chang³).
2. I am going to the Police Station = I (wo³) to (到) tao⁴ Police Station go (ch'ü⁴).
3. The Commissioner of Police will come to-morrow from Delhi = Commissioner of Police from (ch'ung² or ts'ung²) Delhi to-morrow (ming²-t'ien¹) will (yao⁴) come (lai²).
4. What are the soldiers doing? = soldier do (tso⁴) what (shên²-mo³)?



5. They are playing football = they (t'a¹-mên) kick ball (ch'iu²).
6. The officers are playing cards = officer (chün¹-kuan¹) play (ta³) playing-card.
7. This fort is very big = this (chê⁴) fort very (hên³) big (ta⁴).
8. That gaol is very small = that (na⁴) gaol very (hên³) small (hsiao³).
9. Where is the court? = where (na³-li³) is (shih⁴) court.
10. There is a customs-house over there = there (na⁴-li³) have (yu³) customs-house.
11. He is examining my luggage = he (t'a¹) examine (chien¹-ch'a²) my (wo³-ti⁴) luggage.
12. Have you a gun = you (ni³) have (yu³) gun mo³ (an interrogative particle)?
13. No, I have not = no (pu⁴), I (wo³) not (mei²) have (yu³).
14. We should not drink wine = we (wo³-mên) not (pu⁴) should (ying¹-kai¹) drink (ho¹) wine.
15. I have no cigarette = I (wo³) not (mei²) have (yu³) cigarette.
16. I do not like smoking = I (wo³) not (pu⁴) like (hsi-huan¹) smoke (ch'ou¹) cigarette.
17. Here is an ashtray = this (chê⁴) has (yu³) one (i¹) ashtray.
18. What is the colour of our National Flag = our (wo³-mên-ti⁴) national ( kuo²) flag is (shih⁴) what (shên²-mo³) colour (yên²-sê⁴)?
19. Our national flag has three colours—yellow, white and green = our national flag has (yu³) three (san¹) kind (chung³) colour—yellow (huang²) white (pai⁴) and (kên¹) green (ch'ing¹-sê⁴).



TWENTY-THIRD LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 臥室 wó⁴-shih⁴, a bed-room; where the former one means 'to rest, to lie down' and the latter means 'a room, an apartment'.
2. 浴 „ yü⁴-shih⁴, a bath-room; where the former means 'to bathe'.
3. 肥皂 fei²-tsao⁴, soap; where the former means 'fat' and the latter means 'black'.
4. 塊 k'uai⁴, a piece (of).
5. 海綿 hai³-mien², sponge; where hai³ means 'the sea' and mien² means 'soft; floss silk'.
6. 水關子 shui³-kuan¹-tzü³, water-tap; where shui³ means 'water' and kuan¹ means 'a frontier-pass or gate'.
7. 臉 lien³, the face.
8. 口 k'ou³, the mouth.
9. 衣裳 i¹-shang², clothes; where i¹ means 'clothing' and shang² means 'clothes'.
10. 刷子 shua¹-tzü³, a brush.
11. 牙粉 ya²-fên³, tooth-powder; where the former means 'tooth' and the latter means 'powder'.
12. „ 膏 ya²-kao¹, tooth-paste; where kao¹ means 'ointment, fat, grease'.
13. „ 牀子 ya²-ch'uang²-tzü³, the gum; where ch'uang² means 'a couch, a bed'.
14. 手巾 shou³-chin¹, a towel; where the former means 'the hand' and the latter means 'a napkin; a cap'.
15. 頭 „ t'ou²-chin¹, a turban; where t'ou² means 'the head'.

16. 理髮匠 li³-fa³-chiang⁴ (tsiang⁴), a barber; where li³ means 'to arrange', fa³ means 'the hair on the human head' [li³-fa³, to dress the hair, hair-cut] and chiang⁴ denotes 'a workman, a mechanic'.
17. „ „ 室 li³-fa³-shih⁴, a barber's shop, where shih⁴ means 'a house'.
18. 刮臉刀 kua¹-lien³-tao¹, a razor; where kua¹ means 'to shave', lien³ denotes 'the face' and tao¹ means 'a knife, a sword, a razor'.
19. 推子 t'ui¹-tzü³, a hair-clipper; where t'ui¹ means 'to push, to expel'.
20. 剪 „ chien³ (tsien³)-tzü³, scissors; where 'chien³' denotes 'to cut with scissors; to trim'.
21. 梳 „ shu¹-tzü³, a comb; where shu¹ means 'to comb'.
22. 鏡 „ ching⁴-tzü³, a mirror.
23. 洗頭 hsi³ (si³)-t'ou², a shampoo; where hsi³ means 'to wash' and t'ou² denotes 'the head'.
24. 桌子 cho¹-tzü³, a table.
25. 畫報 hua⁴-pao⁴, an illustrated magazine; where hua⁴ means 'a picture, a painting, a drawing' and pao⁴ denotes 'a newspaper'.
26. 每 mei³, each, every.
27. „ 天 mei³-t'ien¹, every day.
28. 睡覺 shui⁴-chiao⁴, sleep, to sleep, where the former means 'to sleep, to doze' and the latter denotes 'a nap'.
29. „ 的 shui⁴-ti⁴, asleep.
30. 全 ch'üan² (ts'üan²), all, the whole.
31. 享 hsiang³, to enjoy.
32. 醒 hsing³ (sing³), to wake up, to be aroused.
33. „ 叫 hsing³-chiao⁴, to awake; when the latter means 'to cause, to let'.
34. „ 鐘 hsing³-chung¹, the alarm-clock; where chung¹ means 'a clock'.

35. 游 *yu*², to go, to roam, to travel.
36. 拏 or 拿 *na*², to take.
37. 起 *ch'i*³, to rise, to raise.
[*na*²-*ch'i*³+*lai*² (to come) = to pick up, to take].
38. 搓上 *ts'o*¹-*shang*⁴, to rub over; where the former means 'to rub' and the latter denotes 'on, over'.
39. 嗽 *shu*⁴ (also read *sou*⁴), to rinse (the mouth).
40. 磨 *mo*², to sharpen.
41. 完 *wan*², to finish, to complete. [*wan*²-*la*¹ (= *liao*³), finished].
42. 找 *chao*³, to look for, to find, to seek.
43. 於是 *yü*²-*shih*⁴, then; where the former denotes 'in, on, at, by, from' and the latter means 'to be'.
44. 然後 *jan*²-*hou*⁴, then; where the former means 'really, nevertheless, although, on the other hand' and the latter denotes 'afterwards, behind, then'.
45. 亦 *i*⁴, and.

Exercise (with hints)

- Every morning he sleeps = everyday (*mei*³-*t'ien*¹) morning (*chao*¹-*shang*⁴) he sleep (*shui*⁴-*chiao*⁴).
- He wakes up = he wake up [*hsing*-*kuo*⁴ (過)-*lai*² (來)].
- Then he goes from the bed-room to the bath-room = then (*yü*²-*shih*⁴) he go (*yu*²) from (*ts'ung*²) bed-room to (到 *tao*⁴) bath-room.
- He has a bath = he bathe (*hsi*³-*tsao*³).
- He takes a sponge and a piece of soap = he take (*na*²) rise (*ch'i*³) one (*i*¹) piece (*k'uai*⁴) sponge and (*kên*¹) one (*i*¹) piece (*k'uai*⁴) soap come (*lai*³).
- Then with the sponge he rubs soap over his whole body = then (*yü*²-*shih*⁴) he use (*yung*⁴) sponge take (把 *pa*³) he (*t'a*¹) whole (*ch'üan*²) body (*shên*¹-*tzü*³) (then) all (*tu*¹) rub over soap.
- He washes his face = he wash (*hsi*³) face (*lien*³).
- He puts the tooth-paste on the tooth-brush = he put (放 *fang*⁴) tooth-paste on (在 *tsai*⁴) tooth-brush (*ya*²-*shua*¹-*tzü*³) on (*shang*⁴).

42 Cf. Bengali চাওয়া *cāoyā*, meaning পাইতে ইচ্ছা করা (to seek, to look for), দেখা (to find).

9. He brushes his teeth and rinses his mouth = he brush (shua¹) tooth (ya²)
rinse (shu⁴) mouth (k'ou³).
10. He rinses his teeth, gums and tongue = he rinse (shu⁴) tooth, gum and
(ken¹) tongue (shê².t'ou²).
11. After washing his face and brushing his teeth he puts on his clothes and
his shoes = he wash (hsi³) finished (wan².la¹) face (lien³) brush (shua¹)
finished (wan².la¹) tooth (ya²) and (i⁴) then (hou⁴) he put on (ch'uan¹)
clothes (i¹.shang²) put on (ch'uan¹) shoes (hsieh².tzu³).
12. I went to the barber's shop for hair-cut = I to (tao⁴) barber's shop go
(ch'ü⁴) ed (liao³) hair-cut (li³.fa³).
13. On the table there were newspapers and illustrated magazines = table on
(shang⁴) there were (yu³) newspaper (pao⁴) and (kên¹) illustrated
magazine (hua⁴.pao⁴).
14. The barber asked me, 'Do you want a hair-cut or a shave?' = barber
(li³.fa³.chian⁴) ask (wên⁴) ed me (wo³) you (nin²) are (shih⁴) hair-cut,
are (shih⁴) shave (kua¹) face (lien³).
15. I said, 'Hair-cut and shave' = I say (shuo¹) ed hair-cut and (kên¹)
shave face.
16. He takes the clippers and clips the short hair and then using a comb and
scissors he cuts the long hair = he take rise (na².ch'i³) clipper come
(lai²) first (先 hsien¹) clip (t'ui¹) short (tuan³) hair (t'ou².fa³) then
(jan².hou⁴) use (yung⁴) comb (shu¹.tzü³) and (kên¹) scissors (chien³.
tzü³) cut (chien³) long (ch'ang²) hair (t'ou².fa³).
17. Hair-cut is finished = hair-cut finished (wan².la¹).
18. The barber hands to me a mirror = barber hand over (ti⁴) give (kei³)
one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) mirror.
19. He invites me to look at myself = please (ch'ing³) myself (wo³.tzü⁴.
chi³) look (chao³).
20. Then he sharpens his razor = then (yü².shih⁴) he sharpen (mo²)
sharpen (mo²) his (t'a¹.ti⁴) razor.
21. He shaves my face = he shave (kua¹) my (wo³.ti⁴) face (lien³).
22. He gives me a shampoo = he give (kei³) me (wo³) shampoo.



TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 地 ti^4 , the earth, land, soil.
2. „ 方 ti^4 -fang¹, a place; where the latter means 'a place, a square, a direction'.
3. 世界 $shih^4$ -chieh⁴, the world; where the former means 'the world, society' and the latter 'a boundary, a limit'.
4. 事情 $shih^4$ -ch'ing² (ts'ing²), a matter, a business; where the former means 'an affair, a matter, a business' and the latter denotes 'circumstances'.
5. 工作 $kung^1$ -tso⁴, a work, to work; where the former means 'labour, a labourer, a job' and the latter 'to do, to make, to work'.
6. 和平 ho^2 -ping², peace; where the former means 'peace, harmony' and the latter 'level, even, just, equal, common'.
7. 路 lu^4 , a road, a way.
8. 旅行 $lü^3$ -hsing², journey, to travel; where the former means 'to travel,' and the latter 'to travel, to walk'.
9. 航海 $hang^2$ -hai³, voyage, to navigate; where the former means 'to sail, to navigate' and the latter 'the sea'.
10. 歡迎 $huan^1$ -ying², welcome; to welcome; where the former means 'to welcome, to enjoy' and the latter 'to receive, to welcome'.
11. 生命 $shêng^1$ -ming⁴, life; where both mean 'life'.
12. 戰爭 $chan^4$ -chêng¹, war; where the former means 'to fight, to war' and the latter 'to strive, to contend, to wrangle'.
13. 敵人 ti^2 -jên², a foe, an enemy [lit. enemy-man].

14. 山 shan¹, a mountain, a hill.
15. 石 shih², stone, rock.
16. 煤 mei², coal.
17. 棉 mien², cotton.
18. 輪子 lun²-tzü³, a wheel [lun², to revolve].
19. „ 轉 lun²-chuan⁴, to revolve, to turn around ; where chuan⁴ means 'to turn around, to revolve'.
20. 蠢 ch'un³, foolish, stupid.
21. 聰明 ts'ung¹-ming², wise ; where the former means 'quick of apprehension' and the latter 'bright, intelligent'.
22. 堅牢 chien⁴-lao², hard ; where the former means 'hard, durable, strong' and the latter 'firm, firmly'.
23. 硬 ying⁴, hard.
24. 軟 juan³, soft, tender, light.
25. 有用 yu³-yung⁴, useful [lit. have use].
26. 奇怪 ch'i²-kuai⁴, strange ; where the former means 'strange, wonderful, rare' and the latter 'strange, wonderful'.
27. 平安 ping²-an¹, safe ; where an¹ means 'peace, quiet'.
28. 肥 fei², fertile, fat.
29. 靖 tsing⁴, quiet, to pacify.
30. 需要 hsü¹ (sü¹)-yao⁴, necessary, demand ; where the former means 'to require, to need, essential' and the latter 'necessary'.
31. 急 chi², urgent, important.
32. 緊要 chin³-yao⁴, urgent, important ; where chin³ means 'urgent, important'.
33. 懶惰 lan³-to⁴, lazy, idle ; where both mean 'lazy, idle'.
34. 贏 ying², to win.

14. It is also pronounced as 'san' ; Cf. Skt. शानु sānu, meaning 'a peak, a summit', also 'a mountain, a hill' (RV. VI. 39. 2).

15. Cf. Skt. शिला śi-lā, a stone.

35. 成功 ch'êng²-kung¹, to succeed, successful; where the former means 'to succeed' and the latter 'achievement'.
36. 反抗 fan³-k'ang⁴, to resist; where the former means 'to rebel, to turn over' and the latter 'to oppose, to resist'.
37. 拒絕 chü⁴-tsüeh², to refuse; where the former means 'to oppose, to resist' and the latter 'to cut short, to break off, to interrupt'.
38. 逆 ni⁴, to rebel, rebellion.
39. 換 huan⁴, to change, to exchange.
40. 變化 pien⁴-hua⁴, to change; where both mean 'to change, to alter'.
41. 私人 ssü¹ (szü¹)-jên², a private individual; personal.
42. 讓 jang⁴, to let.
43. 剛剛 kang¹-kang¹, just.
44. 只 chih³, only.
45. 僅僅 chin³-chin³, only.
46. 一同 i¹-t'ung², together; where the former means 'one, unity' and the latter 'together'.

Exercise (with hints)

1. The soil is very fertile = soil (ti⁴) very (hên³) fertile (fei²).
2. The world goes round like a wheel (i.e. the affairs of the world are constantly changing = world (shih⁴-chieh⁴) like (ju²) wheel (lun²) revolve (chuan⁴) [lun²-chuan⁴, to revolve].
3. This is my personal business = this (chê⁴) is (shih⁴) my (wo³-ti⁴) personal (ssü¹-jên²) business (shih⁴-ch'ing²).
4. The matter is urgent = this (chê⁴) is (shih⁴) urgent matter (shih⁴).
5. That work is very useful = that (na⁴) piece (ko⁴) work (kung¹-tso⁴) very (hên³) useful (yu³-yung⁴).
6. May you enjoy peace all the way (Bon voyage) = one (i¹) road (lu⁴) safe (ping²-an¹).
7. They won the war = they (t'a¹-mên) win (ying²) ed (liao³) war (chan⁴-chêng¹).

41. Cf. Skt. स्व svá, own, self; Gk. ἑ, ὅς, ὁφός; Lat. se, suos, suus; Goth. sik; Germ. sich.

8. An idle man cannot succeed in life = idle (lan³-to⁴) man (jên²) in (tsai⁴) one life (i¹-shêng¹) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) succeed (ch'êng²-kung¹).
9. The Russians resisted the enemy = Russia (ngo²-kuo²) man (jên²) resist (fan³-k'ang⁴) ed (liao³) enemy (ti²-jên²).
10. My brother has just arrived = my (wo³-ti⁴) brother (hsiung¹-ti⁴) just (kung¹-kung¹) arrive (到) tao⁴.
11. You are a fool = you (ni³) are (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) foolish (ch'un³) man (jên²).
12. He is a wise man = he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) one piece wise (ts'ung¹-ming²) man.
13. Your younger brother is a strange man = your (ni³-ti⁴) younger brother (ti⁴-ti⁴) is (shih⁴) strange (ch'i²-kuai⁴) man.
14. Change it for a new one = change (huan⁴) it (上 shang⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) new (hsin¹) one (的 ti⁴).
15. We travelled together = we (wo³-mên) together (i¹-t'ung²) travel (lū³-hsing²) ed (liao³).
16. Let us go = let (jang⁴) we (wo³-mên) go (ch'ü⁴).
17. The soldiers put down rebellion = soldier (ping¹) pacify (tsing⁴) ed (liao³) rebellion (ni⁴).
18. India and Pakistan should cease hostilities = India (yin⁴-tu⁴) and (kên¹) Pakistan (pa¹-chi¹-su¹-tan⁴) should (ying¹-kai¹) pacify arms (兵 ping¹).
19. I am going to the railway station to welcome my friend = I (wo³) to (tao⁴) railway station (huo³-ch'ê¹-chan⁴) go (ch'ü⁴) welcome (huan⁴-yin²) my (wo³-ti⁴) friend (p'êng²-yu³).
20. I have only three rupees = I (wo³) only (chih³) have (yu³) three (san¹) piece (ko⁴) rupee.
21. This mountain is the biggest of all = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) mountain (shan¹) most (tsui⁴) big (ta⁴).
22. Cotton is soft, but coal is hard = cotton (mien²) is (shih⁴) soft (juan³) one (ti⁴) but (tan⁴-shih⁴) coal (mei²) is (shih⁴) hard (ying⁴ or chien⁴-lao²) one (ti⁴).
23. Stone is as hard as iron = stone (shih²) is (shih⁴) hard (ying⁴) as (ju²) iron (t'ieh³).
24. He has changed his mind (views) = he change (pien⁴-hua⁴) ed mind (了) hsin¹ or sin¹.



TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 話匣子 hua⁴-hsia²-tzü³, a gramophone ; where hua⁴ means 'a word, talk, to speak' and hsia² denotes 'a small box, a casket'.
2. 片子 p'ien⁴-tzü³, a (gramophone) record ; where p'ien⁴ means 'a splinter, a slice, a strip, a slip, a flake'.
3. 無線電 wu²-hsien⁴-tien⁴, a radio ; where wu² means 'without', hsien⁴ means 'wire, thread' and tien⁴ denotes 'electricity'.
4. 電影 tien⁴-ying³, cinema ; where the latter means 'a shadow, an image, a reflection'.
5. 影戲 ying³-hsi⁴, motion picture ; where the latter means 'a play, to play'.
6. 戲園 hsi⁴-yüan², a theatre, where the latter means 'a park, a garden'.
7. „ 劇 hsi⁴-chü⁴, a play, a drama ; where the latter means 'a comedy, a play, a drama'.
8. „ 曲 hsi⁴-ch'ü³, a drama ; where the latter means 'a song, a play'.
9. „ „ 家 hsi⁴-ch'ü³-chia¹, a dramatist.
10. „ 子 hsi⁴-tzü³, an actor.
11. „ 臺 hsi⁴-t'ai², the stage ; where the latter means 'a platform, a stage, a tower'.
12. 票 p'iao⁴, a ticket.
13. 頭等 t'ou²-têng³, 1st class ; where the latter means 'a class'.
14. 二 „ êrh⁴-têng³, 2nd class.
15. 三 „ san¹-têng³, 3rd class.
16. 片子 p'ien⁴-tzü³, a (cinema) film.

17. 墮 to⁴ (tuo⁴), to fall, to sink, to set (as the sun).
 18. 從來沒 ts'ung²-lai²-mei², never ; where ts'ung² means
 'from, by, since' ; lai² means 'to come' and
 ts'ung²-lai² = at any time ; mei² denotes 'not'.

Exercise (with hints)

1. He has brought the gramophone = he take (na²) come (lai²) [na²-lai² = to bring] ed (liao³) gramophone.
2. My sister opens the gramophone and hears the record = my (wo³-ti⁴) sister (chie³-mo⁴) take (pa³) gramophone strike (ta³) open (k'ai¹) [ta³-k'ai¹ = to open] and (kên¹) hear (t'ing¹) record.
3. Mrs. Sen has bought the radio = Sen Mrs. (t'ai⁴-t'ai⁴) buy (mai³) ed (liao³) radio.
4. They went together to the cinema to see a film = they (t'a¹-mên) have (yu³) together (i¹-t'ung²) to (tao⁴) cinema (tien⁴-ying³) hall (yüan⁴) look (k'an⁴) ed (liao³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) film.
5. It was past six o'clock when the film was over = look (k'an⁴) finish (wan²) ed (liao³ or la¹) cinema (tien⁴-ying³) already (i³-ching¹) six (liu⁴) dot (tien³) fall (to⁴) ed [= past] (liao³).
6. Both of them have never seen the theatre = two (liang³) piece (ko⁴) all (tu¹) never (ts'ung²-lai²-mei²) look (k'an⁴) ed (liao³) theatre.
7. The world is a stage where we all are actors = world (shih⁴-chieh⁴) is (shih⁴) stage (hsi⁴-t'ai²) we (wo³-mên) all (tu¹) are (shih⁴) actor (hsi⁴-tzü³).



TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 故事 ku⁴-shih⁴, a story ; where the former means 'old' and the latter 'an affair, a matter'.
2. 意 i⁴, a meaning, an idea, an opinion, wish, will, purpose.
3. 自來水筆 tzü⁴-lai²-shui³-pi³, a fountain-pen ; where tzü⁴ means 'self', lai² means 'to come', shui³ denotes 'water' and pi³ means 'a pen'.
4. 墨 mo⁴ (mê⁴), ink.
5. 吸墨紙 hsi¹-mo⁴-chih³, blotting-paper ; where hsi¹ means 'to suck up, to attract, to inhale' and chih³ means 'paper'.
6. 橡皮 hsiang⁴ (siang⁴)-p'i², India-rubber ; where hsiang⁴ means 'the chestnut-oak' and p'i² means 'skin, bark'.
7. 擦子 ts'a¹-tzü³, an eraser, where the former means 'to rub, to wipe, to clean, to scour'.
8. 印刷 yin⁴-shua¹, to print ; where yin⁴ means 'to print, to stamp ; a stamp, a mark, an official seal' and shua¹ means 'a brush, to brush, to cleanse, to scrub, to print, specially from blocks'.
9. „ „ 機 yin⁴-shua¹-chi¹, a printing machine ; where chi¹ means 'a machine, a loom'.
10. „ „ 品 yin⁴-shua¹-p'in³, a printed matter ; where p'in³ means 'a kind, a class, a series, an order, degree, rank, a thing, to classify, to estimate'.
11. 鎖頭 so³-t'ou², a lock ; where so³ (suo³) means 'a lock, chains, fetters ; to lock' and t'ou² means 'the head, a noun-suffix'.



12. 鑰匙 *yo⁴ (yao⁴)-shih²*, a key; where both mean 'a key'.
13. 口袋 *k'ou³-tai⁴*, a pocket; where *k'ou³* means 'an opening, a mouth, a hole' and *tai⁴* means 'a pocket, a bag'.
14. 乾 *kan¹*, dry, to dry.
15. 由 *yu² (iu²)*, from.

Exercise (with hints)

1. He is writing a story with a fountain-pen = he use (*yung⁴*) fountain-pen on (*tsai⁴*) write (*hsieh³*) story (*ku³-shih⁴*).
2. The boy first dries the ink with blotting-paper = boy (*hsiao³-hai²-tzü³*) first (*hsien¹*) use (*yung⁴*) blotting-paper take (*pa³*) liquid ink (*mo⁴-shui³*, lit. ink-water) suck up (*hsi¹*) dry (*kan¹*) lo¹ (a final particle).
3. He erases the character with India-rubber = he use (*yung⁴*) India-rubber take (*pa³*) character (*tzü⁴*) erase (*ts'a¹-hsia⁴-ch'ü⁴*, lit. rub-down-go).
4. Every word has a meaning = word (*tzü⁴*) word (*tzü⁴*) has (*yu³*) meaning (*i⁴*).
5. He has a good printing machine = he has (*yu³*) one (*i¹*) piece (*ko⁴*) good (*hao³-ti⁴*) printing machine (*yin⁴-shua¹-chi¹*).
6. Have you an eraser? = you have (*yu³*) one (*i¹*) piece (*ko⁴*) eraser *mo³* (an interrogative particle)?
7. He takes the key out of the pocket = he from (*yu²*) pocket (*k'ou³-tai⁴*) inside (*li³*) take (*na²*) out (*ch'u¹*) key come (*lai²*) [*na²-ch'u¹-lai²*, to take out].
8. He unlocks the door with the key = he use (*yung⁴*) key take (*pa³*) door (*mên²*)-'s (*ti⁴*) lock (*so³*) strike (*ta³*) open (*k'ai¹*).
9. Lock the door = lock (*so³*) up (*shang⁴*) door (*mên²*).

Note.— 用 *yung⁴* is used for expressing the English preposition 'with' denoting the means by which an action is done; whereas denoting possession 有 *yu²*, to have, is used; e.g., a house with six rooms—有六間屋子的房子 *yu³ liu⁴ chien¹-wu¹-tzü³ ti⁴ fang²-tzü³*. Again denoting company 跟 *kên¹* or 同 *t'ung²* is used; e.g., he goes with me—他跟我 去 *t'ai¹ kên¹ wo³ ch'ü⁴*; I come with you 我同你來 *wo³ t'ung² ni³ lai²*.



TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 第一層樓 $ti^4-i^1-ts'êng^2-lou^2$, the first floor; where ti^4 is 'an indicator of ordinal number', $ts'êng^2$ means 'a storey, a stair', lou^2 'an upper storey' and $ts'êng^2-lou^2$ means 'a floor'.
2. „ 二 „ „ $ti^4-êrh^4-ts'êng^2-lou^2$, the second floor.
3. „ 三 „ „ $ti^4-san^1-ts'êng^2-lou^2$, the third floor.
4. 地下的一層 $ti^4-hsia^4-ti^4-i^1-ts'êng^2$, the ground-floor; where ti^4 means 'ground, earth', $hsia^4$ means 'below, down', ti^4 'an indicator of possessive case', i^1 means 'one'.
5. 電梯 $tien^4-t'i^1$, an electric lift; where the former means 'electricity' and the latter 'a ladder, steps, stairs'.
6. 樓 „ $lou^2-t'i^1$, a staircase.
7. 燈 $têng^1$, a lamp, a lantern.
8. 電門 $tien^4-mên^2$, or 開關 $k'ai^1-kuan^1$, a switch; where $mên^2$ means 'a door, a gateway, an opening', $k'ai^1$ denotes 'to open' and $kuan^1$ means 'to shut, to close'.
9. „ 扇 $tien^4-shan^4$, an electric fan; where $shan^4$ means 'a fan'.
10. „ 燈泡 $tien^4-têng^1-p'ao^4$, an electric light-bulb; where $p'ao^4$ means 'a bubble, a blister'.
11. 開 „ $k'ai^1 têng^1$, to put on the light.
12. 關 „ $kuan^1 têng^1$, to put off the light.
13. 風扇 $fêng^1-shan^4$, a punkha; where $fêng^1$ means 'wind'.
14. 屋子 $wu^1-tzũ^3$, a house, a room.
15. 書房 shu^1-fang^2 , the study; where shu^1 means 'a book' and $fang^2$ denotes 'a house, a building, a room'.

16. 窗戶 ch'uang¹-hu⁴, a window ; where the former means 'a window' and the latter 'a door'.
17. 天窗 t'ien¹-ch'uang¹, a skylight ; where t'ien¹ means 'the sky'.
18. 亮 liang⁴, light, bright, clear, brightness, transparent.
19. 許多 hsü³-to¹, many ; where the former means 'very' and the latter 'many, much'.
20. 拉 la¹, to pull, to drag, to seize.
21. 照 chao⁴, to illumine, to reflect.
22. 撚 nien³, to twist (with the fingers), to play with.

Exercise (with hints)

1. He walks to the lift = he (t'a¹) walk (tsou³) to (tao⁴) lift (tien⁴-t'i¹).
2. He is going to the fourth floor = he go (上 shang⁴) four (ssü⁴) storey (ts'êng²).
3. He goes up by the lift = he travel by (坐 tso⁴) lift (tien⁴-t'i¹) upper storey (lou²).
4. The student walks to the staircase = student (hsüeh²-shêng¹) walk (tsou³) to (tao⁴) staircase (lou²-t'i¹).
5. Is Mr. Tung upstairs? = Tung Mr. (hsien¹-shêng¹) in (tsai⁴) upstairs (lou²-shang⁴ 上) mo³ (an interrogative particle)?
6. No, he has gone out = no (pu⁴), he (t'a¹) out (ch'u¹) go (ch'ü⁴) ed (liao³).
7. His room is on the third floor = his (t'a¹-ti⁴) room (wu¹-tzü³) is (shih⁴) on (tsai⁴) order (ti⁴) three (san³) floor (ts'êng²-lou²) up (shang⁴).
8. My friend is in the ground-floor = my (wo³-ti⁴) friend (p'êng²-yu³) is (shih⁴) in (tsai⁴) ground-floor (ti⁴-hsia⁴-ti⁴-i¹-ts'êng²).
9. The teacher opens the window of his study = teacher (hsien¹-shêng¹) take (pa³—a sign of the objective case) study (shu¹-fang²)-'s (ti⁴) window (ch'uang¹-hu⁴) open (k'ai¹) open (k'ai¹).
10. He switches on the light = he (t'a¹) take (pa³) lamp (têng¹) open (k'ai¹) open (k'ai¹).
11. The bulb is lighted = bulb (tien⁴-têng¹-p'ao⁴) light (chao⁴).
12. Now the room is lighted = now (hsien³-tsai⁴) room (wu¹-tzü³) light (liang⁴).
13. Then he turns off the switch = then (yü²-shih⁴) he (t'a¹) take (pa³) switch (tien⁴-mên³ or k'ai¹-kuan¹) twist (nien³) open (k'ai¹).
14. The man is pulling the punkha = man (jên²) pull (la¹) punkha (fêng¹-shan⁴).
15. There are many electric fans in the class-room = in (tsai⁴) class-room (chiao⁴-shih⁴) in (li³) there are (yu³) many (hsü³-to¹) electric fan (tien⁴-shan⁴).



TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 東方 tung¹-fang¹, the east; where the former means 'the east' and the latter 'the region'.
2. 西 ,, hsi¹ (si¹)-fang¹, the west; where the former means 'the west'.
3. 北 ,, pei³-fang¹, the north; where the former means 'the north'.
4. 南 ,, nan²-fang¹, the south; where the former means 'the south'.
5. 東北 tung¹-pei³, the north-east.
6. ,, 南 tung¹-nan², the south-east.
7. 西北 hsi¹-pei³, the north-west.
8. ,, 南 hsi¹-nan², the south-west.
9. 東西 tung¹-hsi¹, a thing.
10. 大小 ta⁴-hsiao³, size (lit. big and small).
11. 山水 shan¹-shui³, scenery, landscape (lit. a hill and water).
12. 早茶 tsao³-ch'a², breakfast, early morning tea; where tsao³ means 'early, in the morning'.
13. ,, 飯 tsao³-fan⁴, breakfast; where fan⁴ means 'food'.
14. 午 ,, wu³-fan⁴, lunch, luncheon; where the former means 'noon'.
15. 晚 ,, wan³-fan⁴, supper; where the former means 'evening'.
16. 照片 chao⁴-p'ien⁴ or 相片 hsiang⁴-p'ien⁴, a photograph; where chao⁴ means 'to reflect, to illumine', hsiang⁴ 'a form' and p'ien⁴ 'a splinter, a slice'.
17. ,, 相機 chao⁴-hsiang⁴-chi¹, a camera; where chi¹ means 'a machine'.

18. 軟片 juan³-p'ien⁴, (photographic) film; where the former means 'soft, tender, light'.
19. 鏡頭 ching⁴-t'ou², lens; where the former means 'a mirror' and the latter 'the head; a noun-suffix'.
20. 放大 fang⁴-ta⁴, to enlarge (as a photograph); where fang⁴ means 'to loosen, to liberate, to let go' and ta⁴ denotes 'big, great'.
21. .. 鏡 fang⁴-ta⁴-ching⁴, magnifying glass.
22. 眼鏡 yen³-ching⁴, spectacles; where the former means 'the eye'.
23. 腳踏車 chiao³-t'a⁴-ch'ê¹, a bicycle; where chiao³ means 'the foot, legs', t'a⁴ denotes 'to tread, to walk, to plant the feet' and ch'ê¹ means 'a cart, a carriage'.
24. 車胎 ch'ê¹-t'ai¹, a tyre; where the latter means 'the pregnant womb'.
25. 洋車 yang²-ch'ê¹, a rickshaw; where the former means 'the ocean; foreign'.
26. 輪船 lun²-ch'uan², a steamer; where lun² means 'a wheel, a turn, to revolve' and ch'uan² 'a boat, a ship'.
27. 水手 shui³-shou³, a sailor; where the former means 'water' and the latter 'the hand'.
28. 乘客 ch'êng²-k'ê⁴, a passenger; where ch'êng² means 'to ascend, to ride, to avail of' and k'ê⁴ denotes 'a guest, a traveller, a visitor'.
29. 主 chu³, a host.
30. 各人 ko⁴-jên², everybody; where ko⁴ means 'each, every'.
31. 橋 ch'iao², a bridge.
32. 坐 tso⁴, to ride (a vehicle).
33. 出 ch'u¹, to rise (as the sun).
34. 落 lo⁴ (or lao⁴), to set (as the sun).



35. 相遇 hsiang¹ (siang¹)-yü⁴, to meet; where the former means 'mutual, reciprocal, direction towards' and the latter 'to meet'.
36. 遇見 yü⁴-chien⁴, to meet; where chien⁴ means 'to see'.
37. 待 tai⁴, to treat, to behave, to entertain, to wait for.
38. 弔 tiao⁴, to suspend, to droop, to hang.
39. 時常 or 常常 shih²-ch'ang², or ch'ang²-ch'ang², often, always; where the former means 'time' and the latter 'constantly, frequently'.
40. 永不 yung³-pu⁴, never; where yung³ means 'perpetual, eternal, long, far-reaching' and pu⁴ 'not'.

Exercise (with hints)

- The sun rises in the east and sets in the west = sun (jih⁴) in (tsai⁴) east (tung¹) rise (ch'u¹) and (kên¹) in (tsai⁴) west (hsi¹) set (lo⁴).
- Everybody worships the rising sun = everybody (ko⁴-jên²) worship (拜 pai⁴) rise (shêng¹) sun.
- East is east and west is west and never the twain shall meet = east (tung¹) is (shih⁴) east (tung¹) west (hsi¹) is (shih⁴) west (hsi¹) and (kên¹) two (liang³) never (yung³-pu⁴) meet (hsiang¹-yü⁴).
- I met him yesterday = I (wo³) yesterday (tso²-t'ien¹) meet (yü⁴-chien⁴) ed (liao³) him (t'a¹).
- I do not know the size of that thing = I (wo³) not (pu⁴) know (chih¹-tao⁴) that (na⁴) piece (ko⁴) thing (tung¹-hsi¹)-'s (ti⁴) size (ta⁴-hsiao³).
- The scenery of Darjeeling is very beautiful = Darjeeling-'s (ti⁴) scenery (shan¹-shui³) very (hên³) beautiful (p'iao¹-liang⁴).
- We had breakfast at the restaurant = we (wo³-mên) at (tsai⁴) restaurant (ts'an¹-kuan³) in (li³) eat (ch'i¹) ed (liao³) breakfast (tsao³-ch'a² or tsao³-fan⁴).
- They had luncheon at the hotel = they (t'a¹-mên) at (tsai⁴) hotel (lū³-kuan³) in (li³) eat (ch'i¹) ed (liao³) luncheon (wu³-fan⁴).
- We had supper = we (wo³-mên) eat (ch'i¹) finish (wan²) ed (liao³) supper (wan³-fan⁴).
- I want to enlarge the photograph of my mother = I (wo³) want (yao⁴) enlarge (fang⁴-ta⁴) my (wo³-ti⁴) mother (mu³-ch'in¹)-'s (ti⁴) photograph (chao⁴-p'ien⁴ or hsiang⁴-p'ien⁴).
- I have a good camera = I (wo³) have (yu³) one (i⁴) piece (ko⁴) good (hao³) one (ti⁴) camera (chao⁴-hsiang⁴-chi¹).
- This lens is very small = this (chê⁴) lens (ching⁴-t'ou²) very (hên³) small (hsiao³).
- An old man always uses spectacles = old (lao³) man (jên²) always (shih²-ch'ang²) use (yung⁴) spectacles (yen³-ching⁴).

14. The tyre of the bicycle is not good = bicycle (chiao³-t'a⁴-ch'ê¹)-'s (ti⁴)
tyre (ch'ê¹-t'ai¹) not (pu⁴) good (hao³).
15. How many sailors have you seen in the steamer? = you (ni³) in (tsai⁴)
steamer (lun²-ch'uan²) in (li³) look (k'an⁴) see (chien⁴) ed (liao³) how
many (to¹-shao³) sailor (shui³-shou³)?
16. I have seen eight or more sailors = I (wo³) look (k'an⁴) see (chien⁴) ed
eight (pa¹) several (chi³) piece (ko⁴) sailor (shui³-shou³).
17. Passengers are waiting for the steamer = passenger (ch'êng²-k'ê⁴) wait
for (têng³) steamer (lun²-ch'uan²).
18. The steamer starts at twenty minutes past three = that (na⁴) steamer
(lun²-ch'uan²) three (san¹) dot (tien³) one (i¹) quarter (k'o⁴) five (wu³)
open (k'ai¹, to start as a train, steamer, etc.).
19. The host is entertaining the guest = host (chu³) entertain (tai⁴) guest
(k'ê⁴).
20. Have you seen the Howrah bridge? = you (ni³) see (k'an⁴) pass (過
kuo⁴) Howrah bridge (ch'iao²) mo³ (an interrogative particle)?
21. Yes, it is a hanging bridge = yes (yu³-ti⁴) hanging (tiao³) bridge (ch'iao²).
22. He rides a rickshaw = he (t'a¹) ride (tso⁴) rickshaw (yang²-ch'ê¹).



TWENTY-NINTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 動物 tung⁴-wu⁴-, an animal; where tung⁴ means 'to move' and wu⁴ 'all living creatures, matter'.
2. 野獸 yeh³-shou⁴, a (wild) beast; where yeh³ means 'wild' and shou⁴ means 'a beast, a brute'.
3. 家畜 chia¹-ch'u⁴, a domestic animal; where chia¹ means 'a house, a home' and ch'u⁴ denotes 'cattle, a domestic animal'.
4. 獅子 shih¹ (also read szü¹)-tzü³, a lion; where shih¹ means 'a lion'.
5. 老虎 lao²-hu³, a tiger; where the former means 'old, aged' and the latter 'a tiger'.
6. 豹子 pao⁴-tzü³, a leopard, a panther.
7. 犀牛 hsi¹ (si¹)-niu², a rhinoceros; where the former means 'a rhinoceros' and the latter 'a cow'.
8. 象 hsiang⁴ (siang⁴), an elephant.
9. 馬 ma³, a horse.
10. 驢 lü², an ass, a donkey.
11. 熊 hsiung², a bear.
12. 野豬 yeh³-chu¹, a boar; where the former means 'wild' and the latter 'a hog, a pig'.
13. 鹿 lu⁴, a deer.
14. 水牛 shui³-niu², a buffalo [lit. water-cow].
15. 公 „ kung¹-niu², a bull; where the former means 'male'.
16. 狗 kou³, a dog.
17. 小狗 hsiao²-kou³, a puppy.

4. Cf. Skt. सिंहा simhá, a lion.

5. Cf. Arabic حَوْلٍ hawl, strong, powerful.

9. Cf. Skt. मय máya, a horse (VS. XXII. 19).

13. Cf. Skt. रुरु ruru, a species of antelope.

16. Cf. Skt. kukura, kukkura, a dog.



18. 貓子 mao² (miao²)-tzü³, a cat.
19. 老鼠 lao²-shu³ (ch'u³), a rat; where shu³ means 'a rat, a mouse'.
20. 小老鼠 hsiao²-lao²-shu³, a mouse.
21. 狐狸 hu²-li², a fox; where both mean 'a fox'.
22. 猴子 hou²-tzü³, an ape, a monkey.
23. 兔子 t'u⁴-tzü³, a hare, a rabbit.
24. 蝦 ha²-ma², a frog; where both mean 'a frog'.
25. 蛇 shê², a snake, a serpent.
26. 螞蟻 ma²-i³, an ant; where both mean 'an ant'.
27. 白, pai²-i³, a white ant; where pai² means 'white'.
28. 虱子 shih¹-tzü³, a louse.
29. 臭蟲 ch'ou⁴-ch'ung², a bug; where the former means 'strong-smelling' and the latter 'a worm, an insect'.
30. 蚊子 wên²-tzü³, a mosquito.
31. 蚊帳 or 帳子 wên²-chang⁴, or chang⁴-tzü³, a mosquito-net; where chang⁴ means 'a curtain' or 'screen'.
32. 蠍子 hsieh¹-tzü³, a scorpion.
33. 龜 kuei¹, a tortoise.
34. 鱷魚 ngo⁴ (o⁴)-yü², a crocodile, an alligator; where the former means 'a crocodile, an alligator' and the latter 'a fish'.
35. 鳥 niao³, a bird.
36. 鳶 niao³-yüan¹, a kite; where the latter means 'a kite, a hawk'.
37. 烏鴉 wu¹-ya¹, a crow; where both mean 'a crow'.
38. 天鵝 t'ien¹-ngo² (o²), a swan; where the former means 'the sky' and the latter 'a domestic goose'.

18. It is an onomatopoeia.

19. Cf. Bengali ; Skt. चूचुन्दर chuchundara (Suśruta, 5. 6. 2; 3), a musk-rat, is from chuchu and undura (a rat).

39. 隼 chun³ (also read shuen³), a hawk.
40. 鳴鳩 shih¹-chiu¹, a cuckoo ; where the former means 'a cuckoo' and the latter 'a pigeon'.
41. 孔雀 k'ung³-ch'iao³ ; a peacock ; where the former means 'a peacock' and the latter 'a small bird'.
42. 鷲鳥 chih⁴-niao³, a vulture ; where the former means 'a bird of prey, bloodthirsty'.
43. 窩 wo¹ (o¹), a nest (of the bird).
44. 象牙 hsiang⁴ (siang⁴)-ya², the tusk of the elephant, ivory ; where the latter means 'a tooth'.
45. 井 ching³ (tsing³), a well.
46. 瘋 fêng¹, mad, insane.
47. 絨 jung², wool.
48. 吼叫 hou³-chiao⁴, to roar ; where the former means 'the roar of animals' and the latter 'to call'.
49. 騎 ch'i², to mount, to ride (an animal).
50. 遊歷 yu²-li⁴, to roam, to travel ; where both mean 'to travel, to roam'.
51. 破壞 p'o⁴-huai⁴ or 毀壞 hui³-huai⁴, to destroy, destruction ; where p'o⁴ means 'to destroy', huai⁴ 'to ruin' and hui³ 'to destroy, to ruin'.
52. 強 ch'iang³, to force, to compel, to insist.
53. 叫 chiao⁴, to bark (as a dog).
54. 咬 yao³ (iao³), to bite, to gnaw.
55. 鳴 ming², to bray, to neigh.
56. 哭泣 k'u¹-ch'i⁴, to weep ; where both mean 'to weep'.
57. 死亡 szü³ (ssü³)-wang² (uang²), to die, death ; where both mean 'to die, dead'.
58. 翔 hsiang² (siang²), to soar, to hover over.
59. 游水 or yu²-shui³, 浮水 fu³-shui³, to swim ; where yu² means 'to swim, to float', shui³ 'water' and fu² 'to float'.

39. Cf. Skt. श्येन śyená, a hawk.

60. 開始 k'ai¹-shih³, to begin; where both mean 'to begin'.
61. 跔 tieh⁴, to swoop down, to fall.
62. 墮 to⁴ (tuo⁴), to sink, to fall.
63. 飛 fei¹, to fly, to go quickly.
64. 條 t'iao², a numerative or classifier of nouns, such as, a dog, a snake, a fish, a road, long and narrow things, i.e. string, thread, rope, etc.; hereafter indicated by 'piece'.
65. 罕 han³, seldom, hardly, scarcely.
66. 阿 a⁴, oh!

Exercise (with hints)

1. A lion is roaring = lion (shih¹) roar (hou³).
2. A tiger and a deer do not roam together = tiger (lao²-hu³) deer (lu⁴) not (pu⁴) together (同 t'ung²) roam (yu²-li⁴).
3. Elephant is destroyed for the sake of its tusks (दन्तयोर्हन्ति कुञ्जरम्) = elephant-tusk (hsiang⁴-ya²) destroy (p'o⁴-huai⁴) body (shên¹).
4. A horse is neighing = horse (ma³) neigh (ming²).
5. The Inspector of Police rides the horse = Inspector of Police (ching³-chang³) ride (ch'i²) horse (ma³).
6. If a donkey does not drink, you cannot force it = donkey (lū²) not (pu⁴) drink (ho¹) water (shui³), force (ch'iang³) drink (in³) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²).
7. A dog which barks, seldom bites = bark (fei⁴) dog (kou⁴) seldom (han³) bite (yao³).
8. A mad dog barks and bites = one (i¹) piece (t'iao²) mad (fêng¹) dog (kou⁴) bark (fei⁴) bite (yao³).
9. He is a frog in a well (कूपमण्डूक) = he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) well (ching³) frog (ha²-ma²).
10. O cuckoo! shall I call thee a bird = O (a⁴) cuckoo (shih¹-chiu¹)! I (wo³) call (chiao⁴) thee (= you sir, nin²) bird (niao³).
11. When the fox dies, the hare weeps = fox (hu²) die (szū³), hare (t'u⁴) weep (k'u¹-ch'i⁴).
12. A cat and a rat are sleeping together = cat (mao²) rat (shu³) together (t'ung²) sleep (shui⁴-chiao⁴).
13. The white ant has destroyed my woollen cloth = white ant (pai²-i³) destroy (p'o⁴-huai⁴) ed (liao³) my (wo-ti) wool (jungz) cloth (pu⁴).
14. The cow and the sheep are domestic animals = cow (niu²) sheep (yang²) is (shih⁴) domestic animal (chia¹-ch'u⁴).
15. The buffalo gives milk = buffalo (shui³-niu²) give (kei³) milk (nai³).
16. The louse and the bug are small insects = louse (sê¹) bug (mu⁴-sê¹) is (shih⁴) small (hsiao³) insect (ch'ung²).

17. A vulture is soaring high in the sky = vulture (chih⁴-niao³) high (kao¹)
soar (hsiang²) sky (t'ien¹).
18. The swan swims in water = swan (t'ien¹-o²) swim (yu²-shui³).
19. The flying kite swoops down into the water = fly (fei¹) kite (yüan¹)
swoop down (tieh⁴) swoop down (tieh⁴) sink (to⁴) water (shui³) inside
(中 chung¹).
20. The bull draws the cart = bull (kung¹-niu²) draw or pull (la¹) cart
(ch'ê¹).
21. Some mosquitoes beget malaria = some (i⁴-hsieh¹) mosquito (wên²-tzü³)
beget (shêng¹) malaria (yao⁴-chi²).
22. So we should always use the mosquito-net = so (so³-yi³) we (wo³-mên)
always (ch'ang²-ch'ang²) should (ying¹-kai¹) use (yung⁴) mosquito-net
(wên²-chang⁴).
23. The peacock begins to dance at the sight of cloud = peacock
(k'ung³-ch'iao³) see (chien⁴) cloud (yün²) begin (k'ai-shih³) dance
(t'iao⁴-wu³).

Note.—A masculine gender is generally formed by adding the prefix 公 kung¹, meaning 'male' before a noun and a feminine by adding the prefix 母 mu³, meaning 'mother':—kung¹ shih¹-tzü³, lion, mu³ shih¹-tzü³, lioness.



THIRTIETH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 香蕉 hsiang¹-chiao¹ (tsiao¹), the banana, the plantain ;
where the former means 'fragrant' and the
latter 'the plantain or the banana'.
2. 葡萄 p'u²-t'ao², grape ; where both mean 'grape'.
3. 蘋果 p'in²-kuo³, apple ; where the former means
'duckweed' and the latter 'fruit'.
4. 橘子 chü²-tzü³, an orange.
5. 芒果 mang²-kuo³, mango.
6. 波羅果 po¹-lo²-kuo³, a pineapple.
7. 荔枝 li⁴-chih¹, a lichi.
8. 香桃 hsiang¹-t'ao², lemon ; where the latter means
'peach'.
9. ,, 水 hsiang¹-t'ao²-shui³, lemonade.
10. 杏仁露 hsing⁴-jên²-lu⁴, syrup ; where hsing⁴ means
'the apricot, the almond', jên 'a kernel' and
lu⁴ 'dew, scent'.
11. 蜂蜜 fêng¹-mi⁴, honey ; where the former means 'a
bee' and the latter 'honey'.
12. 蜜蜂 mi⁴-fêng¹, a bee.
13. 棗子 tsao³-tzü³, date.
14. 杏兒 hsing⁴ (often hêng³)-êrh², an apricot, an almond ;
where the latter is a noun indicator.
15. 蔥頭 ts'ung¹-t'ou², onion ; where the latter is a noun-
suffix.
16. 蒜 suan⁴, garlic.

11. Cf. Cantonese, mêt ; Japanese, mitsu^{mitsu} ; Skt. मधु mādhu ; Gk. μέθυ, μέθη ;
Slav. medû ; Lith. midūs, medūs ; Germ. meth ; Eng. mead.

17. 薑 *chiang¹*, ginger.
18. 醋 *ts'u⁴*, vinegar.
19. 馬鈴薯 or 薯 *ma³-ling²-shu³*, potato; where *ma³* means 'a horse', *ling²* means 'a small round bell used on a horse' and *shu³* denotes 'potato'.
20. 餅乾 *ping³-kan¹*, biscuit; where the former means 'cake, biscuit' and the latter 'dry'.
21. 朱古力 *chu¹-ku³-li⁴*, chocolate.
22. 咀片 *chü³ (tsü³)-p'ien⁴*, lozenge; where the former means 'to suck, to chew' and the latter 'a slice'.
23. 玫瑰花 *mèi²-kuei⁴-hua¹*, the rose; where *mei²* means 'a sparkling red gem', *kuei⁴* 'the rose' and *hua¹* 'flower'.
24. 百合花 *pai³-ho²-hua¹*, a lily; where *pai³* means 'all, every, a hundred' and *ho²* 'to shut, to close'.
25. 蓮花 *lien²-hua¹*, a lotus; where the former means 'a lotus'.
26. 荷 ,, *ho²-hua¹*, a lotus; where the former means 'a lotus'.
27. 水池子 *shui³-ch'ih²-tzü³*, a pond, a tank; where *ch'ih²* means 'a pond'.
28. 竹子 *chu²-tzü³*, a bamboo.
29. 樹 *shu⁴*, a tree.
30. 幹 *kan⁴*, the trunk (of a tree).
31. 枝子 *chih¹-tzü³*, a branch (of a tree).
32. 葉 ,, *yeh⁴-tzü³*, a leaf (of a tree).
33. 叉 ,, *ch'a¹-tzü³*, a fork.
34. 刀 ,, *tao¹-tzü³*, a knife.
35. 筷 ,, *k'uai⁴-tzü³*, chopsticks.

30. Cf. Skt. कण्डा *kāṇḍa*, the trunk of a tree.



36. 雙 shuang¹, a pair, a couple, even as opposed to odd ;
e.g. 一雙筷 i¹ shuang¹ k'uai⁴, a pair of chopsticks.
37. 寡婦 kua³-fu⁴, a widow ; where the former means 'friendless, alone' and the latter 'a wife, a lady, a woman'.
38. 鰥夫 kuan¹-fu¹, a widower, a bachelor ; where the former means 'a widower, an unmarried man' and the latter 'man'.
39. 棍 kuan¹-kun⁴, a widower, a bachelor ; where the latter means 'a stick'.
40. 農夫 nung²-fu¹, a farmer ; where the former means 'a farmer, agriculture'.
41. 製造廠 chih⁴-tsao⁴-ch'ang³, a mill, a factory ; where ch'ang³ means 'a factory, a workshop, a depot'.
42. 造紙 tsao⁴-chih³-ch'ang³, a paper mill ; where chih³ means 'paper'.
43. 紗廠 sha¹-ch'ang³, a cotton mill ; where sha¹ means 'yarn'.
44. 甘蔗 kan¹-chê⁴, the sugar-cane ; where the former means 'sweet' and the latter 'the sugar-cane'.
45. 甜 t'ien², sweet.
46. 酸 suan¹, sour.
47. 苦 k'u³, bitter.
48. 辣 la⁴, pungent, astringent.
49. 熟 shu², ripe.
50. 青 ts'ing¹ (ch'ing¹), green.
51. 右 yu² (iu²), right (side).
52. 喜歡 hsi³-huan¹, to like ; where the former means 'joy, pleasure' and the latter 'joy, pleased, to be glad'.
53. 製造 chih⁴-tsao⁴, to manufacture ; where both mean 'to make'.
54. 榨 cha⁴, to squeeze, to press (for extracting juice, oil, etc.).
55. 招 chao¹, to beckon, to call.



Exercise (with hints)

1. Banana is green = banana (hsiang¹-chiao¹) is (shih⁴) green (ts'ing¹).
2. Grapes are sour = grape (p'ü²-t'ao²) sour (suan¹) one (ti⁴).
3. The boy eats an apple = boy (hsiao³-hai²-tzü³) eat (ch'i¹) apple (p'in²-kuo³).
4. Now he begins to eat the orange = now (hsien²-tsai⁴) he (t'a¹) begin (k'ai¹-shih³) eat (ch'i¹) orange (chü²-tzü³).
5. A ripe mango is as sweet as honey = ripe (shu²) mango (mang²-kuo³) is (shih⁴) sweet (t'ien²) as (ju²) honey (fêng¹-mi⁴).
6. The bee makes honey = bee (mi⁴-fêng¹) make (chih⁴) honey (fêng¹-mi⁴).
7. The pineapple is not very ripe = pineapple (po¹-lo²-kuo³) not (pu⁴) very (hên³) ripe (shu²) one (ti⁴).
8. The lichi is very green = lichi (li⁴-chih¹) very (hên³) green (ts'ing¹) one (ti⁴).
9. Do you like to drink lemonade with syrup? = you (ni³) like (hsi³-huan¹) drink (ho¹) lemonade (hsiang¹-t'ao²-shui³) with (kên¹) syrup (hsing⁴-jên²-lu⁴) mo³?
10. Dates and almonds are dry fruits = date (tsao³-tzü³) and (kên¹) almond (hsing⁴-êrh²) is (shih⁴) dry (kan¹) fruit (kuo³).
11. Hindu widows do not eat onions and garlies = Hindu (yin⁴-tu⁴) widow (kua³-fu⁴) not (pu⁴) eat (ch'i¹) onion (ts'ung¹-t'ou²) and (kên¹) garlic (suan⁴).
12. Ginger is pungent = ginger (chiang¹) pungent (la⁴) one (ti⁴).
13. Give me some vinegar = give (kei³) me (wo³) some (tien³) vinegar (ts'u⁴).
14. Children like to eat biscuits, chocolates and lozenges = child (hai²-tzü³) like (hsi³-huan¹) eat (ch'i¹) biscuit (ping³-kan¹), chocolate (chu¹-ku³-li⁴) and (kên¹) lozenge (chü³-p'ien⁴).
15. Potatoes are vegetables = potato (ma³-ling²-shu³) is (shih⁴) vegetable (ts'ai⁴).
16. There are roses, lotuses and lilies in the garden = garden (hua¹-yüan²) inside (li³) has (yu³) rose (mei²-kuei⁴-hua¹), lotus (lien²-hua¹) and (kên¹) lily (pai³-ho²-hua¹).
17. Big trees attract the wind = tree (shu⁴) big (ta⁴) call (chao¹) wind (fung¹ or fêng¹).
18. Paper is made from bamboos = bamboo (chu²-tzü³) make (chih⁴-tsao⁴) paper (chih³).
19. The Chinese eat food with a pair of chopsticks = the Chinese (chung¹-kuo²-jên²) use (yung⁴) one pair of chopsticks (i¹ shuang¹ k'uai⁴) eat (ch'i¹) food (fan⁴).
20. The English eat food with a fork and a knife = the English (ying¹-kuo²-jên²) use (yung⁴) fork (ch'a¹-tzü³) and (kên¹) knife (tao¹-tzü³) eat (ch'i¹) food (fan⁴).
21. An Indian eats food with the right hand = an Indian (yin⁴-tu⁴-jên²) use (yung⁴) right (yu²) hand (shou²) eat (ch'i¹) food (fan⁴).

22. The farmer is pressing sugar-canes = farmer (nung²-fu¹) press (cha⁴) sugar-cane (kan¹-chê⁴).
23. There is a big paper-mill in Calcutta = in (tsai⁴) Calcutta has (yu³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) big (ta⁴) paper-mill (tsao⁴-chih³-ch'ang³).
24. Mr. Mazumdar is the manager of the Banga-Lakshmi cotton-mill = Mazumdar Mr. (hsien¹-shêng¹) is (shih⁴) Banga-Lakshmi cotton-mill (sha¹-ch'ang³) -'s (ti⁴) manager (ching¹-li³).



THIRTY-FIRST LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

VOCABULARY

1. 宗教 tsung¹-chiao⁴, religion; where the former means 'a sect, a school of thought' and the latter 'religion'.
2. 印度教 yin⁴-tu⁴-chiao⁴, the Hindu religion, Hinduism.
3. 回回 „ hui²-hui²-chiao⁴, the Mohammedan religion, Mohammedanism; where hui² means 'Mohammedans'.
4. 基督 „ chi¹-tu¹-chiao⁴ } the Christian religion, Christianity; where chi¹-tu¹ means
or { 'Christ' and yeh¹-su¹ denotes
耶穌 „ yeh¹-su¹-chiao⁴ { 'Jesus'.
5. „ „ 誕 yeh¹-su¹-tan⁴, Christmas; where tan⁴ means 'a birthday'.
6. 佛教 fo²-chiao⁴, the Buddhist religion, Buddhism; where fo² means 'Buddha'.
7. 孔 „ k'ung³-chiao⁴ } the Confucian religion, Confucianism; where k'ung³ means
or { 'Confucius' and ju² denotes 'the
儒 „ ju²-chiao⁴ { learned, an all-knowing person,
a scholar, a Confucianist'.
8. 道 „ tao⁴-chiao⁴, the Taoist religion, Taoism; where tao⁴ means 'road, way, truth, doctrine, principle, reason'.
9. 韋陀 wei²-t'o², the Veda.
10. 可蘭 k'o³-lan², the Qur'ān.
11. 聖經 shêng⁴-ching¹ } the Bible; where shêng⁴ means
or { 'holy, sacred, divine, a saint, a
„ 書 shêng⁴-shu¹ } sage', and shu¹ denotes 'book'.
12. 廟 miao⁴, a temple (a building for worship). 廟
13. 座 tso⁴, a numerary adjunct; e.g. a temple, i² (one) tso⁴ miao⁴.
14. 禮拜堂 li³-pai⁴-t'ang², a church; where li³ means 'worship', pai⁴ 'to worship' and t'ang² denotes 'a hall'.

15. 天 t'ien¹ or 神 shên², a god.
16. 女神 nü³-shên², a goddess.
17. 世界 shih⁴-chiai⁴ (or chieh⁴), the world; where both mean 'the world'.
18. 宇宙 yü³-chou⁴, the universe; where the former means 'space' and the latter 'time'.
19. 根本 kên¹-pên³, a root, a source; where both mean 'a root, a base, a foundation'.
20. „ 據 kên¹-chü⁴, to base, to found; where chü⁴ means 'to rely on, to lean on'.
21. 大洲 ta⁴-chou¹ or 大陸 ta⁴-lu⁴, a continent, where ta⁴ means 'great, big', chou¹ denotes 'a continent', and lu⁴ means 'a dry land'.
22. 亞 „ ya³-chou¹, Asia.
23. 非 „ fei¹-chou¹, Africa.
24. 澳 „ ao⁴-chou¹, Australia.
25. 歐 „ ou¹-chou¹, Europe.
26. 島 tao³ or 海島 hai³-tao³, an island; where tao³ means 'an island' and hai³ 'a sea'.
27. 文化 wên²-hua⁴, culture, civilization; where wên² means 'literature, elegant, refined', and hua⁴ 'to change, to transform, to influence'.
28. „ 明 wên³-ming², civilized; where ming² means 'bright, clear, light'.
29. 兼愛 chien¹-ai⁴, 'universal love; where chien¹ means 'to unite in one, to connect', and ai⁴ 'love, to love'.
30. 普通 p'u³-t'ung¹, common, universal (general); where the former means 'universal, general, all', and the latter 'through, to go through, to circulate'.
31. 唯物主義 wei² (uei²)-wu⁴-chu³-i⁴, materialism; where wei² means 'only', wu⁴ 'matter' and chu³-i⁴ 'theory, doctrine'—used as a suffix similar to English '-ism'.

32. 人民 jên²-min², people; where jên² means 'man' and min^{2*} 'people, mankind'.
33. 婦人 fu⁴-jên², a woman, a lady; where fu⁴ means 'a lady'.
34. 唯靈論 wei²-ling²-lun⁴, spiritualism; where ling² means 'spirit, spiritual, divine' and lun⁴ 'to reason, to argue, to speak of'.
35. 所有的 so²-yu³-ti⁴, all (adj.), where so² means 'whatsoever', yu³ 'to have' and ti⁴ 'an adjective-suffix'.
36. 有道德 yu³-tao⁴-tê²-(ti⁴), virtuous; where tao⁴ means 'road' and tê² 'virtue'.
37. 快樂 k'uai⁴-lo⁴, happy; where both mean 'happy, cheerful'.
38. 虔心 ch'ien²-hsin¹, pious; where ch'ien² denotes 'devout, sincere', and hsin¹ 'heart'.
39. 每 mei³, each, every.
40. 保護 pao³-hu⁴ } to protect, protection; where pao³
or and hu⁴ mean 'to protect, to
,, 障 pao³-chang⁴ } guard' and chang⁴ 'to screen,
screen, veil'.
41. 創造 ch'uang⁴-tsao⁴, to create; where both mean 'to create'.
42. 帶 tai⁴, to guide.
43. 怕 p'a⁴, to fear.
44. 站起來 chan⁴-ch'i³-lai², to arise; where chan⁴ means 'to stand up', ch'i³ 'to rise, to raise' and lai² 'to come'.
45. 叫醒 chiao⁴-hsing³ (sing³), to awaken.
46. 相反的 hsiang¹-fan³-ti⁴, on the contrary, whereas; where hsiang¹ means 'mutual' and fan³ 'contrary'.

* Cf. Skt. mánu, man, mankind; Goth. manna; Angl. Sax. man; Eng. man.

34 ling², denoting the 'Male Principle of Nature,' is undoubtedly the origin of Skt. līṅga, the male organ or phallus, especially that of Śiva worshipped in the form of a stone, which generally rises out of a yoni (Cf. Chinese 陰 yin¹, also pronounced as yun¹, yung¹, the 'Female Principle of Nature.')



Exercise (with hints)

1. God is great = God (shên²) is (shih⁴) great (ta⁴).
2. All religions teach universal love = all (so²-yu³-ti⁴) religion (tsung¹-chiao⁴) teach (chiao¹) universal love (chien¹-ai⁴).
3. Religion protects the virtuous = religion protect (pao³-hu⁴ or pao³-chang⁴) virtuous (yu³-tao⁴-tê²-ti⁴) man (jên²).
4. The virtuous are happy in the world = world (shih⁴-chieh⁴) on (上 shang⁴) virtuous man is (shih⁴) happy (k'uai⁴-lo⁴).
5. The Veda is the root of Hinduism = Veda is (shih⁴) Hinduism (yin⁴-tu⁴-chiao⁴)-'s (ti⁴) root (kên¹-pên³).
6. God has created the universe = God (shên²) create (ch'uang⁴-tsao⁴)-ed (liao³) universe (yü³-chou⁴).
7. The Quran guides those who fear God = Quran guide (tai⁴) God (shên²) fear (p'a⁴)-ing (的 ti⁴) people (jên²-min²).
8. Mrs. Mukherjee is a pious lady. She everyday reads the Bible and every Sunday goes to Church = Mukherjee Mrs. (t'ai⁴-t'ai⁴) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) pious (ch'ien²-hsin¹-ti⁴) lady (fu⁴-jên²). She (t'a¹) every (mei³) day (天 t'ien¹) [or everyday (t'ien¹-t'ien¹)] read (tu²) Bible (shêng⁴-ching¹ or shêng⁴-shu¹) and (kên¹) every (mei³) Sunday (li³-pai⁴-jih⁴) to (到 tao⁴) church (li³-pai⁴-t'ang²) go (ch'ü⁴).
9. My grand-mother always goes to the temple of the goddess Kali = my (wo³-ti⁴) grand-mother (tsu³-mu³) always (ch'ang²-ch'ang² or shih²-ch'ang²) to (tao⁴) goddess (nü³-shên²) Kali-'s (ti⁴) temple (miao⁴) go (ch'ü⁴).
10. The Asians have arisen and awakened = Asia (ya³-chou¹) man (jên²) arise (chan⁴-ch'i³-lai²) and (kên¹) awaken (chiao⁴-hsing³)-ed (liao³).
11. The European civilization is based on materialism; whereas the Asiatic civilization is based on spiritualism = Europe (ou¹-chou¹) civilization (wên²-hua⁴) is (shih⁴) base (kên¹-chü⁴) materialism (wei²-wu⁴-chu³-i⁴); whereas (hsiang¹-fan³-ti⁴) Asia (ya³-chou¹) civilization is base spiritualism (wei²-ling²-lun⁴).
12. Africa is a continent = Africa (fei¹-chou¹) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) continent (ta⁴-chou¹ or ta⁴-lu⁴).
13. Australian butter is good = Australia (ao⁴-chou¹)-'s (ti⁴) butter (niu²-yu²) is (shih⁴) good (hao³).



THIRTY-SECOND LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 省主席 shêng²-chu³-hsi², Governor ; the former means 'province' and chu³-hsi² 'a chairman'.
2. 校長 hsiao⁴-chang³, Chancellor (of a university), Principal (of a college), Headmaster (of a school) ; hsia⁴ means 'school' ; chang³ 'senior'.
3. 副校長 fu⁴-hsiao⁴-chang³, Vice-Chancellor ; where fu⁴ means 'an assistant, to aid, to second'.
4. 註冊處主任 chu⁴-ts'ê⁴-ch'u⁴-chu³-jên⁴, Registrar (an administrative officer of an educational institution) ; where chu⁴ denotes 'to sign, to record', ts'ê⁴ 'a register, a list', ch'u³ 'to manage', chu³ 'a lord, a master', jên⁴ 'an official position'. Again chu³-jên⁴ means 'a principal, a manager, a chairman', and chu⁴-ts'ê⁴-ch'u⁴ denotes 'office of the Registrar'.
5. 管考員 kuan³-k'ao³-yüan², Controller of Examinations ; where kuan³ means 'to control', k'ao³ 'examination' and yüan² 'an official'.
6. 大學 ta⁴-hsüeh², a university, a college ; where the latter means 'to learn'.
7. 中學 chung¹-hsüeh², a high school.
8. 小 ,, hsiao³-hsüeh², a primary school.
9. 視學員 shih⁴-hsüeh²-yüan², Inspector of schools ; where shih⁴ means 'to inspect'.
10. 教授 chiao⁴-shou⁴, a professor ; where chiao⁴ means 'education, teaching', but chiao¹, 'to teach' and shou⁴ denotes 'to give, to transmit'.
11. ,, 員 chiao⁴-yüan², a teacher.

12. 講演 *chiang³-yen³* } lecture, to lecture, to address, to
or
演說 *yen³-shuo¹* } deliver a speech ; where *chiang³*
means 'to preach, to expound, to discuss, to
speak', *yen³*, 'extended, wide, to practise, to
perform, to exercise' and *shuo¹* means 'to
speak'.
13. 大學生 *ta⁴-hsüeh²-shêng¹*, a university student.
14. 科 ,, *k'o¹-hsüeh²*, science ; where *k'o¹* means 'a class,
an order or series, a department'.
15. 文 ,, *wên²-hsüeh²*, arts, literature ; where *wên²* means
'literature'.
16. 散文 *san³-wên²*, prose ; where *san³* means 'to scatter'.
17. ,, ,, 家 *san³-wên²-chia¹*, a prose-writer ; where *chia¹*
used as a suffix to indicate a specialist in any
branch.
18. 詩 *shih¹*, poetry, a poem.
19. ,, 人 *shih¹-jên²*, a poet.
20. 女詩人 *nü³-shih¹-jên²*, a poetess.
21. 首 *shou³*, numerary adjunct of poems, plays, etc.
22. 哲科博士 *chê²-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴*, Ph.D. Doctor of
Philosophy ; where *chê²* means 'wise'
and *po²-shih⁴*, means Doctor (academic
degree)—*po²* means 'extensive, ample'
and *shih⁴* means 'a scholar'.
23. 文 ,, ,, *wên²-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴*, D.Litt. Doctor of
Literature.
24. ,, ,, 碩 ,, *wên²-k'o¹-shih²-shih⁴*, M.A. Master of
Arts ; where *shih²* (or *shuo⁴*)-*shih⁴* means
Master (academic degree); *shih²* (or *shuo⁴*)
means 'great, eminent, large, full, ripe'.

25. 文科學士 wên²-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, B.A. Bachelor of Arts; where hsüeh²-shih⁴, Bachelor (academic degree).
26. 理 „ „ „ li³-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, B.Sc. Bachelor of Science.
27. 法 „ „ „ fa³-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, LL.B. Bachelor of Law.
28. 醫 „ „ „ i¹-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, M.B. Bachelor of Medicine.
29. 理 „ 碩 „ li³-k'o¹-shih²-shih⁴, M.Sc. Master of Science.
30. „ „ 博 „ li³-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, D.Sc. Doctor of Science; where li³ means 'reason, principle, right as an abstract principle'.
31. 法 „ „ „ fa³-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, LL.D. Doctor of Law; where fa³ means 'law'.
32. 醫 „ „ „ i¹-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, M.D. Doctor of Medicine; where i¹ means 'to cure, to heal'.
33. 神 „ „ „ shên²-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, D.D. Doctor of Divinity; where shên² means 'God, divine'.
34. 工程科學士 kung¹-ch'êng²-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, B.E. Bachelor of Engineering; where kung¹ means 'labour, work, to work'; and ch'êng² 'a road, journey'; kung¹-ch'êng² means 'engineering'.
35. 數學 shu⁴-hsüeh², mathematics; where shu⁴ means 'number'.
36. 算 „ suan⁴-hsüeh², arithmetic; where suan⁴ means 'to calculate, to reckon'.
37. 代數學 tai⁴-shu⁴-hsüeh², algebra; where tai⁴ means 'a substitute'.



38. 幾何學 *chi³-ho²-hsüeh²*, geometry.
39. 物理 „ *wu⁴-li³-hsüeh²*, physics; where *wu⁴* means 'matter, substance' and *li³* 'principle, reason'.
40. 化學 *hua⁴-hsüeh²*, chemistry; where *hua⁴* means 'to change'.
41. 生物學 *shêng¹-wu⁴-hsüeh²*, biology; where *shêng¹* means 'life'.
42. „ 理 „ *shêng¹-li³-hsüeh²*, physiology.
43. 地 „ „ *ti⁴-li³-hsüeh²*, geography; where *ti⁴* means 'earth'.
44. „ 質 „ *ti⁴-chih²-hsüeh²*, geology; where *chih²* means 'elements, matter'.
45. 動物 „ *tung⁴-wu⁴-hsüeh²*, zoology; where *tung⁴* means 'to move, to start' and *tung⁴-wu⁴* means 'a moving creature, an animal'.
46. 植 „ „ *chih²-wu⁴-hsüeh²*, botany; where *chih²* means 'a tree, a plant', and *chih²-wu⁴* means 'a plant'.
47. 心理 „ *hsin¹-li³-hsüeh²*, psychology; where *hsin¹* means 'the heart, the mind'.
48. 語言 „ *yü³-yen²-hsüeh²*, linguistics, philology; where *yü³* means 'language, a word, to talk' and *yen²* means 'a word, speech, to speak, to talk'.
49. 人類 „ *jên²-lui⁴* (or *lei⁴*)-*hsüeh²*, anthropology; where *jên²* means 'man', *lui⁴* denotes 'a class, a species, a kind' and *jên²-lui⁴* denotes 'a human being'.
50. 政治 „ *chêng⁴-chih⁴-hsüeh²*, politics; where *chêng⁴* means 'government, administration' and *chih⁴* 'to govern'.



51. 經濟學 ching¹-chi⁴ (or tsi⁴)-hsüeh², economics ;
where ching¹ means 'to manage, to regulate,
to transact' and chi⁴ (tsi⁴) 'to aid, to
relieve'.
52. 論理 ,, lun⁴-li³-hsüeh², logic ; where lun⁴ means 'to
discuss, to reason, to argue'.
53. 哲學 che⁴-hsüeh², philosophy ; where che² means
'wise, to know intuitively'.
54. 歷史 li⁴-shih³, history ; where li⁴ means 'successive,
in order' and shih³ 'history'.
55. 天文 t'ien¹-wên², astronomy, astrology.
- NOTE.—家 chia¹ is used as a suffix to indicate a specialist
in any branch ; *e.g.*, li⁴-shih³-chia¹, a historian ; che⁴-hsüeh²-
chia¹, a philosopher.
56. 地圖 ti⁴-t'u², a map ; where ti⁴ means 'earth' and t'u²
'a map, a picture'.
57. ,, ,, 書 ti⁴-t'u²-shu¹, an atlas ; where shu¹ means 'a
book'.
58. 學識 hsüeh²-shih⁴, knowledge (learning) ; where the
former means 'to learn, to study' and the
latter 'to know, to recognize'.
59. 沒有 mei²-yu³, without, not having.
60. 不行 pu⁴-hsing², impossible ; where the former means
'not' and the latter 'to do, to act, to walk'.
61. 記性 chi⁴-hsing⁴ (sing⁴), memory ; where the former
means 'to remember, to record, a sign, a
mark' and the latter 'nature, temper, a
property, a quality'.
62. 公佈 kung¹-pu⁴, to make public, to publish ; where
the former means 'public, open to all' and
the latter 'to inform'.
63. 日期 jih⁴-ch'i², date ; where the former means 'a day'
and the latter 'date, period'.



64. 假期 chia⁴-ch'i², vacation; where the former means 'leave of absence'.
65. 暑假 shu³-chia⁴, the summer vacation; where the former means 'the heat of summer'.
66. 裏 li³, within, inside.
67. 徧 pien⁴, a time, a turn, whole, everywhere.
68. 所有(的) so²-yu³ (ti⁰), all; where so³ means 'what, whatsoever, that which' and yu³ 'to have'.
69. 合 ho², to shut, to close (as book).
70. 擱 ko¹, to put, to place.
71. 皮包 p'i²-pao¹, a bag; where the former means 'leather' and the latter 'to wrap'.
72. 話 hua⁴, speech, talk, word, to speak.
73. 訓 hsün⁴, to instruct, to advise.
74. 完 wan² (uan²), finish.
75. 同 t'ung², all, together.
76. 鼓掌 ku²-chang³, to clap (the hands); where the former means 'a drum, to drum, to beat (a drum), to strike (a ball)' and the latter 'the palm of the hand'.
77. 代 tai⁴ officiating, acting.
78. 又 yu⁴ (iu⁴), and, also, again, moreover, further.

Exercise (with hints)

1. The Governor is the Chancellor of our university = Governor (shêng²-chu³-hsi²) is (shih⁴) our (wo³-mên²) university (ta⁴-hsüeh²)-'s (ti⁴) Chancellor (hsiao⁴-chang³).
2. The Vice-Chancellor will address the students to-day = Vice-Chancellor (fu⁴-hsiao⁴-chang³) to-day (chin¹-t'ien¹) will (yao⁴) respond (對 tui⁴) student (hsüeh²-shêng¹) address (chiang³-yen³).
3. The Registrar publishes the date of the examination = Registrar (chu⁴-ts'ê⁴-ch'u⁴-chu³-jên⁴) publish (kung¹-pu⁴) examination (k'ao³-shih⁴)-'s (ti⁴) date (jih⁴-ch'i²).
4. I want to see the Controller of Examinations = I (wo³) want (yao⁴) see (chien⁴) Controller of Examinations (kuan³-k'ao³-yüan²).



5. The Inspector of schools will meet the Headmasters of High schools = Inspector of schools (shih⁴-hsüeh²-yüan²) will (yao⁴) meet (會 hui⁴) high schools (chung¹-hsüeh²)-'s (ti⁴) headmaster (hsiao⁴-chang³).
6. The professor is teaching philology in the class-room = professor (chiao⁴-shou⁴) in (tsai⁴) teach (chiao⁴) room (shih⁴) explain (chiang³) philology (yü³-yen²-hsüeh²).
7. Our headmaster is an M.A. = our (wo³-mên²-ti⁴) Headmaster (hsiao⁴-chang³) is (shih⁴) M.A. (wên²-k'o¹-shih²-shih⁴).
8. The teacher is teaching algebra = teacher (chiao⁴-yüan²) explain (chiang³) algebra (tai⁴-shu⁴-hsüeh²).
9. Miss Ray is an officiating teacher = Ray Miss (hsiao³-chieh³) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) officiating (tai⁴) teacher (hsien¹-shêng¹).
10. Both of us will teach both prose and poetry = both of us [= we two piece (wo³-mên² liang³ ko⁴)] will (yao⁴) teach (chiao¹) both [= and (yu⁴)] prose (san³-wên²) and (yu⁴) poetry (shih¹).
11. Rabindranath was a great poet = Rabindranath was [= is (shih⁴)] one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) great (ta⁴) poet (shih¹-jên²).
12. Mrs. Naidu was a poetess = Naidu Mrs. (t'ai⁴-t'ai) was [= is (shih⁴)] one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) poetess (nū³-shih¹-jên²).
13. The study of physics is impossible without the knowledge of mathematics = not (pu⁴) knowledge (hsüeh²-shih⁴) mathematics (shu⁴-hsüeh²) is (shih⁴) impossible (pu⁴-k'o³-nêng²) learn (hsüeh²) physics (wu⁴-li³-hsüeh²).
14. The study of chemistry requires good memory = study (hsüeh²) chemistry (hua⁴-hsüeh²) must (yao⁴) have (yu³) good (hao³) one (ti⁴) memory (chi⁴-hsing⁴).
15. The student closes the atlas and puts it back into his bag = student (hsüeh²-shêng¹) take hold of (把 pa³) atlas (ti⁴-t'u²-shu¹) close (ho²) upon (上 shang⁴) again (yu⁴) take hold of (pa³) it (t'a¹) put (ko¹) back (回 hui²) his (t'a¹-ti⁴) bag (p'i²-pao¹) into [= inside (li³)] go (ch'ü⁴). [ko¹-hui²-ch'ü⁴ = to put back].
16. He carries the map of India in his hand = he (t'a¹) hand (shou²) inside (li³) take (na²) place (着 cho², to place, durative suffix) India (yin⁴-tu⁴)-'s (ti⁴) map (ti⁴-t'u²). [na²-cho², to carry].
17. After the Head of the Department had ended his speech the university students clapped their hands = Head of the Department (hsi⁴-chu³-jên⁴) instruct (hsün⁴) finish (wan²)-ed after (hou⁴) university student (ta⁴-hsüeh²-shêng¹) then (chiu⁴) clap (ku²-chang³)-ed (liao³).
18. I hope that you will read botany in the vacation = I (wo³) hope (希望 hsi¹-wang⁴) you (ni³-mên²) in (tsai⁴) vacation (chia⁴-ch'i²) within (li³) will (yao⁴) read (k'an⁴, to see, to read silently) Botany (chih²-wu⁴-hsüeh²).
19. Dr. Meghnad Saha is a great scientist = Meghnad Saha D.Sc. (li³-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) great (ta⁴) scientist (k'o¹-hsüeh²-chia¹).



THIRTY-THIRD LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 革命 ko²-ming⁴, revolution; where the former means 'to remove' and the latter 'a command, Government notification'.
2. 萬歲 wan⁴-sui⁴, long live! Where the former means 'ten thousand' and the latter 'a year'.
3. 民主政體 min²-chu³-chêng⁴-t'i³, democracy; where min² means 'mankind, people', chu³ 'a lord, a master, to act as lord', chêng⁴ 'to rule, administration, Government', t'i⁴ 'a class or body of persons, limbs, the trunk'. [chêng⁴-t'i³, system of government.]
4. „ „ 黨 min²-chu³-tang³, Democratic party; where tang³ means 'party, association'.
5. „ „ 黨 min²-tang³, People's party.
6. 工 „ kung¹-tang³, Labour party; where kung¹ means 'labour'.
7. 布 „ pu⁴-tang³, Bolshevik party.
8. 共和黨 kung⁴-ho²-tang³, Republican party; where kung⁴ means 'all' and ho² 'peace, harmony'.
9. „ 產 „ kung⁴-ch'an³-tang³, Communist party; where ch'an³ denotes 'property'.
10. 國民 „ kuo²-min²-tang³, Nationalist party; where kuo² means 'a nation, a country'.
11. 社會 „ shê⁴-hui⁴-tang³, Socialist party; where shê⁴ means 'a society' and hui⁴ also denotes 'a society'. [shê⁴-hui⁴, society.]
12. 反對 „ fan³-tui⁴-tang³, Opposition party; where fan³ means 'to resist' and tui⁴ 'against, to oppose'. [fan³-tui⁴, to oppose.]

N.B.—員 yüan², an official, is used as a suffix to 'tang³' denoting the member of a party; e.g. kung⁴-ch'an³-tang³-yüan², a communist; shê⁴-hui⁴-tang³-yüan², a socialist; etc.



13. 資本主義 tzŭ¹-pên²-chu³-i⁴, Capitalism; where tzŭ¹ means 'wealth, property' and pên² 'a root'.
[tzŭ¹-pên², a capital (in trade).]
14. 法西斯蒂主義 fa⁴-hsi¹-szŭ¹-ti⁴-chu³-i⁴, Fascism.
[fa⁴-hsi¹-szŭ¹-ti⁴-tang³-yüan², a fascist.]
- N.B.*—chu³-i⁴ used as a suffix similar to English '-ism';
e.g. kung⁴-ch'an³-chu³-i⁴, Communism; shê⁴-hui⁴-chu³-i⁴, Socialism; etc.
15. 左派 tso³-p'ai⁴-, a leftist party; where tso³ means 'the left side, the left hand side' and p'ai⁴ 'a clique'.
16. 領袖 ling³-hsiu⁴, a leader; the former means 'to lead' and the latter 'a sleeve'.
17. 假冒 chia³-mao⁴, hypocrisy; where the former means 'false' and the latter 'to feign'.
18. 意思 i⁴-szŭ¹, to mean; where the former means 'meaning' and the latter 'to think, to consider'.
19. 選舉 hsüan³-chü³, election, to elect; where hsüan³ means 'to select or choose a person' and chü³ 'to elect'.
20. „ „ 票 hsüan³-chü³-p'iao⁴, a voting paper, a ballot; where p'iao⁴ means 'a slip of paper'.
21. „ „ 人 hsüan³-chü³-jên², a voter.
22. 投票 „ t'ou²-p'iao⁴-jên², a voter; where t'ou² means 'to cast (as a vote)' and t'ou²-p'iao⁴ denotes 'to vote'.
23. 箱子 hsiang¹-tzŭ³, a box, a case.
24. 詭詐 kuei³-cha⁴-(ti⁴), treacherous; where both the words mean 'to cheat, to deceive'.
25. 財 ts'ai², wealth.
26. 平等 p'ing²-têng³, equality; where both mean 'equal'.
27. 暴動 pao⁴-tung⁴ } riot, violence; where pao⁴ means
or } 'violent', tung⁴ 'action' and luan⁴
„ 亂 pao⁴-luan⁴ } 'rebellion'.

28. 引起 yin³-ch'i³, to lead; where yin³ means 'to lead, to guide' and ch'i³ 'to rise, to raise'.
29. 最後 tsui⁴-hou⁴ } ultimately; where tsui⁴ means 'very,
or } most, exceedingly', hou⁴ 'afterwards',
到底 tao⁴-ti³ } tao⁴ 'to (a place), to reach, towards'
and ti³ 'below, the base, at last'.
30. 內戰 nei⁴-chan⁴ } civil war; where nei⁴ means 'within,
or } inside' and chan⁴ 'to fight, to war'.
,, 亂 nei⁴-luan⁴ }
31. 平定 p'ing²-ting⁴ } to suppress; where p'ing² means
or } 'to control', ting⁴ 'to decide, to
鎮壓 chên⁴-ya¹ } fix', chên⁴ 'to repress' and ya¹
'to oppress, to control, to repress'.
32. 壓制 ya¹-chih⁴, oppression; where chih⁴ means 'to restrain'.
33. 哥哥 ko¹-ko¹, an elder brother.
34. 女婿 nü³-hsü⁴ (sü⁴), a son-in-law; where the latter means 'a son-in-law'.
35. 公公 kung¹-kung¹, a father-in-law (husband's father).
36. 丈人 chang⁴-jên² } a father-in-law (wife's father);
or } where chang⁴ means 'senior,
岳父 yüeh⁴-fu⁴ } respectable', yüeh⁴ 'wife's parents'
or } and fu⁴ 'father'.
,, 丈 yüeh⁴-chang,
37. 強 ch'iang², strong.
38. 公權 kung¹ ch'üan², a civil right; where ch'üan² means 'an inherent right, authority, influence'.
39. 自由 tzü⁴-yu², liberty; where the former means 'self', and the latter 'self-possessed, at ease'.
40. 貧苦 p'in²-k'u³ } poverty; where p'in² means 'poor',
or } k'u³ 'bitter, sorrow, to be in bad
窮 ,, ch'iong²-k'u³ } circumstances' and ch'iong² 'poor'.
41. 窮乏 ch'iong²-fa², want (poverty); where the latter means 'to be in want'.
42. 繁榮 fan²-jung², prosperity; where fan² means 'many' and jung² 'prosperous, flourishing'.

43. 增加 tsêng¹-chia¹, to increase; where the former means 'to increase' and the latter 'to add'.
44. 消滅 hsiao¹-mieh⁴, to remove, to eradicate; where the former means 'to disperse, to melt' and the latter 'to destroy, to exterminate'.
45. 攻擊 kung¹-chi¹, to attack; the former means 'to attack' and the latter 'to strike'.
46. 互 hu⁴, each other, mutual.
47. 定 ting⁴, to settle, to decide.
48. 侵 ch'in¹ (ts'in¹), to usurp, to encroach upon.
49. 犯 fan⁴, to invade, to clash, to transgress, to violate.
50. 協定 hsieh²-ting⁴, a pact, an agreement; where the former means 'an agreement' and the latter 'to settle'.
51. 和 „ ho²-yüeh¹ a treaty of peace; where ho² means 'peace'.
52. 友好條約 yu³-hao³-t'iao²-yüeh¹, a treaty of friendship; where yu³ means 'friend' and hao³ 'good'.
53. 通商 „ „ t'ung¹-shang¹-t'iao²-yüeh¹, a commercial treaty; where t'ung¹ means 'through, to go through' and shang¹ 'trade, commerce'.
54. 簽 ch'ien¹ (ts'ien¹), to sign, to endorse. [ch'ien yüeh¹, to sign a treaty.] chieh² 'to contract, to give a bond for.
55. 締結 ti⁴-chieh², to make or conclude (a treaty). [ti⁴ yüeh¹, to conclude a treaty.] [chieh² 'to contract.']
56. 發生 fa¹-shêng¹, to grow, to happen; where fa¹ means 'to rise' and shêng¹, 'to produce'.
57. 經濟 ching¹-chi⁴, economy; where the former means 'to manage, to transact' and the latter 'to aid, to relieve'.
58. 崩潰 pêng¹-k'uei⁴, breakdown; where the former means 'to fall in ruins' and the latter 'to break (an agreement)'.

59. 向 hsiang⁴, to, facing towards.
60. 提出 t'i²-ch'u⁰, to make (a protest), to deliver (an ultimatum); where the former means 'to raise, to mention, to pick up, to pull up' and the latter 'out, as in (to come) out, (to go) out'.
61. 抗議 k'ang⁴-i⁴, a protest; where the former means 'to oppose, to resist' and the latter 'to discuss, to deliberate'.
62. 最後通牒 tsui⁴-hou⁴-t'ung¹-tieh², an ultimatum; where tieh² means 'a despatch, a warrant, a document, official instruction'.
63. 屬於 shu³-yü², to belong to; where the former means 'to belong to' and the latter 'to, in, on, at, by, from'.
64. 瑞典 jui⁴-tien³, Sweden.
65. 緬甸 mien³-tien⁴, Burma.
66. 馬來 ma³-lai², Malay.
67. 曾 ts'êng², already; a sign of the past tense.

Exercise (with hints).

1. Long live revolution (inquilab zindabad)! = revolution (ko²-ming⁴) long live (wan⁴-sui⁴).
2. Long live China! = China (chung¹-kuo⁰) long live.
3. Long live India! = India (yin⁴-tu⁰) long live.
4. Democracy is hypocrisy; because people vote wealth at each election = democracy (min²-chu³-chêng⁴-t'i³) is (shih⁴) hypocrisy (chia³-mao⁴) one (ti⁰); because (yin¹-wei⁴) people (jên²-min²) at (tsai⁴) each (mei³) time (hui²) election (hsüan²-chü³) vote (t'ou²) wealth (ts'ai²).
5. Communism means equality. But communism with violence leads ultimately to civil war = communism (kung⁴-ch'an²-chu³-i⁴) is (shih⁴) equality (p'ing²-têng³) one (ti⁰). But (k'o³-shih⁰ or tan⁴-shih⁰) communism is (shih⁴) use (使用 shih³-yung⁴) violence (pao⁴-tung⁴) and (而 êrh²) ultimately (tsui⁴-hou⁴) lead (yin²-ch'i³) civil war (nei⁴-chan⁴).
6. What does that mean? = that (na⁴) is (shih⁴) what (shên²-ma⁰) mean (i⁴-szü⁰).
7. Fascism suppresses civil rights and liberty = fascism (fa⁴-hsi¹-szü¹-ti⁴-chu³-i⁴) is (shih⁴) suppress (p'ing²-ting⁴) civil rights (kung¹-ch'üan²) and (kên¹) liberty (tzü⁴-yu²).
8. So fascism means oppression = so (so²-i³) fascism is (shih⁴) oppression (ya¹-chih⁴) one (ti⁰) mean (i⁴-szü⁰).

9. Socialism removes want and poverty and increases national prosperity = socialism (shê⁴-hui⁴-chu³-i⁴) is (shih⁴) remove (hsiao¹-mieh⁴) want (ch'iong²-fa²) and (kên¹) poverty (p'in²-k'u³) and (ho²) increase (tsêng¹-chia¹) national (kuo²-chia¹-ti⁰) prosperity (fa¹-ta²).
10. Leader of the Democratic party is the leader of the opposition = democratic party (min²-chu²-tang³)-'s (ti⁰) leader (ling³-hsiu⁴) just (chiu⁴) is (shih⁴) opposition-party (fan³-tui⁴-tang³)-'s (ti⁰) leader (ling³-hsiu⁴).
11. Is your elder brother a communist? = your (ni³-ti⁰) elder brother (ko¹-ko⁰) is (shih⁴) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) communist (kung⁴-ch'an³-tang³-yüan²) ma⁰ (an interrogative particle).
12. No, he is a socialist = no (pu⁴), he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) socialist (shê⁴-hui⁴-tang³-yüan²).
13. Does your son-in-law belong to the People's party? = your (ni³-ti⁰) son-in-law (nü³-hsü⁴) is (shih⁴) belong to (shu³-yü²) People's party (min²-tang³) ma⁰.
14. His father-in-law is the leader of the Republican party = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) father-in-law (chang⁴-jên²) is (shih⁴) Republican party (kung⁴-ho²-tang³) leader (ling³-hsiu⁴).
15. Her father-in-law is the leader of the Labour party = her (t'a¹-ti⁰) father-in-law (kung¹-kung⁰) is labour party (kung¹-tang³) leader.
16. Communism and capitalism attack each other = communism capitalism (tzü¹-pên²-chu³-i⁴) each other (hu⁴) mutual (hsiang¹) attack (kung¹-chi¹).
17. Some days ago Egypt concluded a non-aggression pact for five years with England = ago (𠂔 ch'ien²) some (chi³) day (t'ien¹) Egypt (ai¹-chi²) already (ts'êng²) with (kên¹) England (ying¹-kuo⁰) settle (ting⁴)-ed one (i²) piece (ko⁴) five (wu³) year (nien²)-'s (ti⁰) each other (hu⁴) not (pu⁴) usurp (ch'in¹) invade (fan⁴) agreement (hsieh²-ting⁴).
18. Malay starts a revolution = Malay (ma³-lai²) grow (fa¹-shêng¹) revolution (ko²-ming⁴).
19. Japan will suffer an economic breakdown = Japan (jih⁴-pên³)-'s (ti⁰) economy (ching¹-chi⁴) will (yao⁴) breakdown (pêng¹-k'uei⁴).
20. Afghanistan has signed a treaty of friendship with India = Afghanistan (a¹-fu⁴-han⁴) already (ts'êng²) with (kên¹) India (yin⁴-tu⁰) sign (ch'ien¹)-ed (liao⁰) treaty of friendship (yu²-hao³-t'iao²-yüeh¹).
21. Burma has concluded a commercial treaty with China = Burma (mien³-tien⁴) already (ts'êng²) with (kên¹) China (chung¹-kuo⁰) conclude (ti⁴-chieh²)-ed commercial treaty (t'ung¹-shang¹-t'iao²-yüeh¹).
22. Sweden has lodged a protest with Russia = Sweden (jui⁴-tien³) already (ts'êng²) to (hsiang⁴) Russia (ngo²-kuo⁰) make (t'i²-ch'u⁰)-ed protest (k'ang⁴-i⁴).
23. Russia has delivered an ultimatum to Persia = Russia (ngo²-kuo⁰) already (ts'êng²) to (hsiang⁴) Persia (po¹-szü¹) deliver (t'i²-ch'u⁰)-ed (liao⁰) ultimatum (tsui⁴-hou⁴-t'ung¹-tieh²). [t'i²-ch'u⁰ = to deliver (an ultimatum)].



THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 國王 kuo²-wang², a king; where the latter means 'a king, a ruler'.
2. 王后 wang²-hou⁴, a queen; where the latter means 'empress'.
3. „ 國 wang²-kuo², kingdom.
4. 皇帝 huang²-ti⁴, an emperor; where the former means 'a ruler' and the latter 'an emperor'.
5. „ 后 huang²-hou⁴, an empress.
6. 帝國 ti⁴-kuo², empire.
7. 總裁 tsung³-ts'ai²
 or
 大總統 ta⁴-tsung²-t'ung³ { President (of a country); where tsung³ means 'the chief', ts'ai² 'to regulate, to settle, to decide', ta⁴ 'great' and t'ung³ 'to govern.'
8. 副總 „ fu⁴-tsung²-t'ung³, Vice-President (of a country); where fu⁴ means 'an assistant'.
9. 大學校長 ta⁴-hsüeh²-hsiao⁴-chang³, President (of a college or university); where hsüeh² means 'to learn, to study', hsiao⁴ 'a school' and chang³ 'senior'.
10. 會長 hui⁴-chang³, President (of an association); where the former means 'a society, an association'.
11. 大學副校長 ta⁴-hsüeh²-fu⁴-hsiao⁴-chang³, Vice-President (of a college or university).
12. 副會長 fu⁴-hui⁴-chang³, Vice-President (of an association).
13. 主席 chu³-hsi² (or si²), Chairman (of a meeting or committee).

14. 中央政府 chung¹-yang¹-chêng⁴-fu³, Central Government; where chung¹ means 'middle', yang¹ 'the centre', chêng⁴ 'government' and fu³ 'a prefecture, a treasury'. [chêng⁴-fu³, government].
15. 省政府 shêng³-chêng⁴-fu³, Provincial Government; where shêng³ means 'a province, a state'.
16. 部 pu⁴, ministry (office of cabinet official).
17. „ 長 pu⁴-chang³, minister (cabinet post).
18. 首相 shou³-hsiang⁴ (siang⁴), Prime Minister; where shou³ means 'the head, a chief' and hsiang⁴ 'minister'.
19. 外交部 wai⁴-chiao¹-pu⁴, Ministry of Foreign affairs; where wai⁴ means 'foreign' and chiao¹ 'relation'.
20. „ „ „ 長 wai⁴-chiao¹-pu⁴-chang³, Minister of Foreign Affairs.
21. 內務 „ „ nei⁴-wu⁴-pu⁴-chang³, Home Minister; where nei⁴ means 'inside' and wu⁴ 'affairs'.
22. 財政 „ „ ts'ai²-chêng⁴-pu⁴-chang³, Minister of Finance; where ts'ai² means 'wealth'. [ts'ai²-chêng⁴, finance].
23. 教育 „ „ chiao¹-yü⁰-pu⁴-chang³, Education Minister; where chiao¹ means 'to teach', and yü⁴ (iuh⁴) 'to give birth to, to bring up'; and chiao¹-yü⁰ 'education'.
24. 衛生 „ „ wei⁴-shêng¹-pu⁴-chang³, Health Minister; where wei⁴ means 'to protect, to guard', shêng¹ 'life'; and wei⁴-shêng¹ 'health'.
25. 糧食 „ „ liang²-shih²-pu⁴-chang³, Food Minister; where liang² means 'grain, food, rations' and shih² 'food, to eat'.

26. 大使 ta⁴-shih³, an ambassador; where ta⁴ means 'great' and shih⁴ 'a commissioner'.
27. 大使館 ta⁴-shih²-kuan³, embassy; where kuan³ means 'a public office'.
28. 總領事 tsung²-ling³-shih⁴, consul-general; where ling³ means 'to lead, to have control of, to guide', shih⁴ 'an affair' and ling³-shih⁴ 'consul'.
29. 副 ,, fu⁴-ling³-shih⁴, vice-consul.
30. 署理公使 shu⁴-li³-kung¹-shih³, chargé d'affaires; where shu⁴ means 'acting, temporary appointment', li³ 'to manage' and kung¹ 'public, all'.
31. 旅長 lü²-chang³, brigadier; where lü² means 'a brigade'.
32. 陸軍學生 lu⁴-chün¹-hsüeh²-shêng⁰, cadet; where lu⁴-chün means 'army' and 'hsüeh-shêng' 'a student'.
33. 隊 tui⁴, corps (military).
34. 國家陸軍學生隊 kuo²-chia¹-lu⁴-chün¹-hsüeh²-shêng⁰-tui⁴, national cadet corps (N.C.C.)
35. 指揮官 chih³-hui¹-kuan¹ } commander; where chih³ means 'to direct', hui¹ 'to direct' kuan¹ 'an official',
or
司令 ,, szü¹-ling⁴-kuan¹ } szü¹ 'an officer, to control' and ling⁴ 'to command'.
36. 總指揮 tsung²-chih³-hui¹ } commander-in-chief.
or
,, 司令 tsung³-szü¹-ling⁴ }
37. ,, 督 tsung³-tu¹, Viceroy or Governor-General; where tu¹ means 'a Viceroy or Governor-General'.
38. 團 t'uan², corps (diplomatic), home-guard.
39. 副官 fu⁴-kuan¹, aide-de-camp.
40. 市長 shih⁴-chang³, mayor; where the former means 'a market, a city, a town'.

41. 失 shih¹, to lose.
42. 名譽 ming²-yü⁴, reputation; where the former means 'a name, reputation', and the latter 'fame'.
43. 得人心 tê²-jên²-hsin¹ (ti⁰), popular; where tê² means 'to get', jên² 'man' and hsin¹ 'heart'.
44. 地方 ti⁴-fang⁰, area; where ti⁴ means 'earth' and fang¹ 'square'.
45. 廣大 kuang³-ta⁴, vast; where both mean 'vast'.
46. 演說 yen³-shuo¹, to make a speech; where the former means 'to perform, to exercise' and the latter 'to speak'.
47. 回話 hui² hua⁴, to make an answer (verbally); where the former means 'to return' and the latter 'to speak'.
48. 待 tai⁴, to treat (to act toward), to behave, to wait.
49. 親熱 ch'in¹ (or ts'in¹)-jê⁴, cordial; where the former means 'affection, to love' and the latter 'hot, fever, earnest, to heat'.
50. 升 shêng¹, to hoist (a flag).
51. 國旗 kuo²-ch'i², national flag; where the former means 'nation' and the latter 'a flag'.
52. 領 ling³, to draw, to receive.
53. 厚 hou⁴, substantial, thick, good or fat (in case of salary).
54. 薪俸 hsin¹-fêng⁴, salary; where the former means 'fuel' and the latter 'salary, emolument'.
55. 津貼 chin¹ (tsin¹)-t'ieh¹, allowance; where the former means 'to moisten' and the latter 'to paste, to stick to.'
56. 腐敗 fu³-pai⁴, corrupt, corruption; where the former means 'corrupt, rotten' and the latter 'to ruin, to destroy, to defeat'.
57. 苦 k'u³ or 痛苦 t'ung⁴-k'u³, suffering; where k'u³ means 'bitter' and t'ung⁴ 'pain'.



58. 叫 chiao⁴, to call, to cause.
59. 會議 hui⁴-i⁴ or 談判 t'an²-p'an⁴, conference, meeting, where hui⁴ means 'to meet, meeting', i⁴ 'to discuss', t'an² 'to chat, to converse' and p'an⁴ 'to judge, to decide'.
60. 開幕 k'ai¹-mu⁴, to inaugurate; where k'ai¹ means 'to open' and mu⁴ 'a curtain, a screen.'
61. 主持 chu³-ch'ih², to preside; where chu³ means 'a lord, a master, to act as lord' and ch'ih² 'to manage'.
62. 參加 ts'an¹-chia¹, to participate, participation; where ts'an¹ means 'to take part in' and chia¹ 'to add to, to grant to'.
63. 典禮 tien²-li³, ceremony; where tien³ means 'a statute, a law' and li³ 'ceremony'.
64. 由 yu², from.
65. 而 êrh², and, and yet, still, also, but.
66. 首都 shou³-tu¹, the capital; where the former means 'the head' and the latter 'the metropolis'.
67. 照 chao⁴, according to, to shine.
68. 意見 i⁴-chien⁰, an opinion; where the former means 'an idea, an opinion' and the latter 'to see'.
69. 饑饉 chi¹-chin⁴, famine; where the former means 'famine, hunger' and the latter 'a dearth'.
70. 看來 k'an⁴-lai⁰, viewpoint; where the former means 'to see' and the latter 'to come'.
71. 情形 ch'ing²-hsing⁰, case (situation); where ch'ing² means 'circumstances' and hsing² 'form, appearance'.
72. 可是 k'o³-shih⁰, but; where the former means 'may, can, able' and the latter 'to be'.
73. 餓死 ngo⁴-szü³, death from starvation; where the former means 'hungry, starved' and the latter 'to die, death'.
74. 對 tui⁴, right.
75. 錯 ts'o⁴, wrong.



76. 國書 kuo²-shu¹, credentials (diplomatic); where the former means 'country' and the latter 'a book'.
77. 呈遞 ch'êng²-ti⁴, to present, to submit; where the former means 'to present to a superior, a petition' and the latter 'to hand to, to pass over'.
78. 貿易 mao⁴-i⁴, trade; where the former means 'to trade, to barter' and the latter 'to change'.
79. 協定 hsieh²-ting⁴, agreement; where the former means 'agreement' and the latter 'to settle, to decide, to fix'.
80. 發育 fa¹-yü⁴, to develop; where the former means 'to manifest, to issue' and the latter 'to give birth to, to nourish, to bring up'.
81. 覺 chüeh², to perceive, to be conscious of, sense.
82. 紀律 chi⁴-lү⁴, discipline; where the former means 'to regulate' and the latter 'a law, a rule'.
83. 閱 yüeh⁴, to inspect.
84. 假 chia⁴, leave (of absence).
85. 本事 pên³-shih⁰, ability; where pên³ means 'root' and shih⁴ 'an affair'.
86. 牀 ch'uang², a bed.
87. 醫病 i¹-ping⁴, treatment (cure); where the former means 'to cure' and the latter 'disease'.
88. 外交關係 wai⁴-chiao¹-kuan¹-hsi⁴, diplomatic relation; where wai⁴ means 'outside, foreign', chiao¹ 'friendship', kuan¹ 'a frontier pass or gate' and hsi⁴ 'to belong to, related, relation'.
89. 斷絕 tuan⁴-chüeh⁰ (or tsüeh⁰), to break off; where the former means 'to cut off, to sever' and the latter 'to break off'.
90. 恢復 hui¹-fu⁰, to restore; where hui¹ means 'to restore' and fu⁴ 'to return, again.'
91. 西藏 hsi¹-tsang⁴, Tibet.
92. 蘇俄 su¹-ngo², Soviet Russia.
93. 凡俗 fan²-su², secular; where the former means 'all, common, general' and the latter 'common'.



Exercise (with hints)

1. The king of Egypt loses the affection of the people = Egypt (ai¹-chi²) king (kuo²-wang²) already (i³-ching¹) lose (shih¹) people (民 min²) heart (心²) hsin¹).
2. He also loses reputation = he (t'a¹) also (yeh³) lose (shih¹) go (ch'ü⁴) reputation (ming²-yü⁴).
3. The queen of England is very popular = England (ying¹-kuo⁰) queen (wang²-hou⁴) very (hên³) popular (tê²-jên²-hsin¹).
4. The area of the kingdom is small = kingdom (wang²-kuo²) area (ti⁴-fang⁰) is small (hsiao³).
5. The area of the empire is vast = empire (ti⁴-kuo²) area (ti⁴-fang⁰) is vast (kuang³-ta⁴).
6. The emperor would neither make a speech nor make an answer = emperor (huang²-ti⁴) also (yeh³) not (pu⁴) make a speech (yen³ shuo¹) also (yeh³) not (pu⁴) make an answer (hui² hua⁴).
7. Even if the empress do not go, it does not matter = empress (huang²-hou⁴) not (pu⁴) go (ch'ü⁴) also (yeh³) not (pu⁴) urgent (chin³-yao⁴ or yao⁴-chin³).
8. The President of the Indian Republic treats everybody with cordiality = Indian Republic (yin⁴-tu⁰ kung⁴-ho²-kuo²) president (ta⁴-tsung²-t'ung³ or tsung³-ts'ai²) treat (tai⁴) man (jên²) very (hên³) cordial (ch'in¹-jê⁴).
9. The Vice-President of the Indian Republic will hoist the national flag to-morrow = Indian Republic vice-president (fu⁴-tsung²-t'ung³) to-morrow (ming²-t'ien⁰) want (yao⁴) hoist (shêng¹) national flag (kuo²-ch'i²).
10. The ministers of the Central Government draw fat salaries = central government (chung¹-yang¹-chêng⁴-fu³) minister (pu⁴-chang³) draw (ling³) fat (hou⁴) one (ti⁰) salary (hsin¹-fêng⁴).
11. The ministers of the Provincial Government also draw allowances = provincial government (shêng³-chêng⁴-fu³) minister (pu⁴-chang³) also (yeh³) draw (ling³) allowance (chin¹-t'ieh¹).
12. The corrupt government causes the sufferings of the masses = corrupt (fu³-pai⁴) government (chêng⁴-fu³) cause (chiao⁴) man (jên²) suffering (t'ung⁴-k'u³).
13. The Education Minister will preside over and the Prime Minister will inaugurate the conference = education minister (chiao¹-yü⁰-pu⁴-chang³) want (yao⁴) preside (chu³-ch'ih²) and (êrh²) prime minister (shou³-hsiang⁴) want (yao⁴) inaugurate (k'ai¹-mu⁴) ceremony (tien²-li³).
14. Russia and China will not participate in the conference = Russia (o²-kuo⁰) and (kên¹) China (chung¹-kuo⁰) all (tou¹) not (pu²) want (yao⁴) participate (ts'an¹-chia¹) conference (hui⁴-i⁴ or t'an²-p'an⁴).
15. The Home Minister came from the capital = home minister (nei⁴-wu⁴-pu⁴-chang³) is (shih⁴) from (ts'ung²) capital (shou³-tu¹) come (lai²) one (ti⁰).

16. According to the opinion of the Food Minister there is no famine = According to (chao⁴) food minister (liang²-shih²-pu⁴-chang³) opinion (i⁴-chien⁰) that (na⁴) not (mei²) have (yu³) famine (chi¹-chin⁴). [na⁴ mei², there not]
17. But according to my viewpoint he is not right = but (k'o³-shih⁰) according to (chao⁴) I (wo³) viewpoint (k'an⁴-lai⁰) he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) not (pu²) right (tui⁴).
18. He is wrong = he (t'a¹), wrong (ts'o⁴) (liao⁰).
19. There are cases of death from starvation = have (yu³) death from starvation (ngo⁴-szü³) case (ch'ing²-hsing⁰).
20. The ambassador presents credentials = ambassador (ta⁴-shih³) present (ch'êng²-ti⁴) credentials (kuo²-shu¹).
21. Where is the American embassy? = America (mei³-kuo⁰) embassy (ta⁴-shih²-kuan³) is (shih⁴) at (tsai⁴) where (na²-li³)?
22. I want to see the consul-general = I (wo³) want (yao⁴) see (chien⁴) consul-general (tsung²-ling³-shih⁴).
23. Is the vice-consul in? = vice-consul (fu⁴-ling³-shih⁴) at (tsai⁴) home (chia¹) ma³ (interrogative sign)?
24. The chargé d'affaires signed the trade agreement = chargé d'affaires (shu⁴-li³-kung¹-shih³) sign (簽 ch'ien¹)-ed trade agreement (mao⁴-i⁴ hsieh²-ting⁴).
25. There is a brigadier here = here (chê⁴-li⁰) have (yu³) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) brigadier (lû²-chang³).
26. The national cadet corps helps to develop a sense of discipline = national cadet corps (kuo²-chia¹-lu⁴-chün¹-hsüeh²-shêng⁰-tui⁴) help (幫助 pang¹-chu⁴) develop (fa¹-yü⁴) discipline (chi⁴-lû⁴).
27. Is the Commander-in-chief on the hill there? = commander-in-chief (tsung²-chih³-hui¹ or tsung³-szü¹-ling⁴) have (yu³) not (mei²) on (tsai⁴) hill (shan¹) top (shang⁴)?
28. He will inspect troops = he (t'a¹) want (yao⁴) inspect (yüeh⁴) troop (ping¹).
29. The Viceroy is on leave = viceroy (tsung³-tu¹) invite (ch'ing³) leave (chia⁴).
30. The aide-de-camp asks for leave = aide-de-camp (fu⁴-kuan¹) tell (kao⁴) leave (chia⁴).
31. The mayor is a man of ability. He is on his sick bed. He is going abroad for treatment = mayor (shih⁴-chang³) have (yu³) ability (pên³-shih⁰), he (t'a¹) on (tsai⁴) sick (ping⁴) bed (ch'uang²) on (shang⁴), he (t'a¹) for (wei⁴) treatment (i¹-ping⁴) out (ch'u¹) ocean (yang²).
32. Soviet Russia will break off diplomatic relations with Japan = Soviet Russia (su¹-o²) want (yao⁴) with (kên¹) Japan (jih⁴-pên³) break off (tuan⁴-chüeh⁰) diplomatic relation (wai⁴-chiao¹-kuan¹-hsi⁴).
33. Japan will restore diplomatic relations with Tibet = Japan (jih⁴-pên³) want (yao⁴) with (kên¹) Tibet (hsi¹-tsang⁴) restore (hui¹-fu⁰) diplomatic relation (wai⁴-chiao¹-kuan¹-hsi⁴).
34. India is a secular state = India (yin⁴-tu⁰) is one (i²) piece (ko⁴) secular (fan²-su²) state (kuo²).



THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 國會 kuo²-hui⁴, parliament; where the former means 'a nation, a country' and the latter 'an association'.
2. „ „ 議員 kuo²-hui⁴-i⁴-yüan², a member of the parliament; where i⁴ means 'to discuss, to criticize' and yüan² 'an official'.
3. 立法院 li⁴-fa³-yüan⁴, legislative assembly; where li⁴ means 'to set up, to draw up', fa³ 'law' and yüan⁴ 'a hall'.
4. 市區 shih⁴-ch'ü¹, municipality; where shih⁴ means 'a market' and ch'ü¹ 'a place, a district, an area'.
5. „ 政府 shih⁴-chêng⁴-fu³, municipal government; where chêng⁴ means 'administration, government' and fu³ 'a prefecture'.
6. 行 „ hsing²-chêng⁴ administration; where hsing² means 'to do'.
7. 議長 i⁴-chang³, speaker (of the parliament or assembly) or chairman (of the council); where i⁴ means 'to discuss, to deliberate'.
8. 議決案 i⁴-chüeh²-an⁴, a resolution (formal adoption by vote); where chüeh² means 'to decide'.
9. 議 „ i⁴-an⁴, a bill, a motion (proposal); where the latter means 'a case at law, legal records'.
10. 法 „ fa³-an⁴ } act (decision of legislative body);
or } where fa³ means 'law' and ling⁴ 'an
„ 令 fa³-ling⁴ } order, to command'.

11. 提 t'i², to move or propose (a resolution).
12. 附議 fu⁴-i⁴, to second or support (a resolution); where the former means 'to append' and the latter 'to discuss, to consult'.
13. 收回 shou¹-hui², to withdraw (a motion); where the former means 'to receive' and the latter 'to return'.
14. 預算表 yü⁴-suan⁴-piao³, budget; where yü⁴ means 'beforehand, to prepare, to make ready', suan⁴ 'to calculate' and piao³ 'a chart, an index'.
15. 缺點 ch'üeh¹-tein³, a defect, a flaw; where the former means 'deficiency, defective' and the latter 'a dot, a point'.
16. 益處 i⁴-ch'u⁰, profit; where i⁴ means 'profit' and ch'u¹ 'condition'.
17. 損失 sun³-shih¹, loss, deficit; where the former means 'to spoil, to injure' and the latter 'to lose'.
18. 賬目 chang⁴-mu⁰, an account; where chang⁴ means 'an account' and mu⁴ 'an index, a list'.
19. 規矩 kuei¹-chü⁰, discipline, rule; where both mean 'a custom, a law'.
20. 散 san⁴, to adjourn, to disperse.
21. 重 chung⁴, heavy, weighty.
22. 稅 shui⁴, tax.
23. 抽 ch'ou¹, to levy.
24. 付 fu⁴, to pay.
25. 事情 shih⁴-ch'ing⁰, an affair, a business; where shih⁴ means 'an affair' and ch'ing² 'a case, the facts of an affair'.
26. 守 shou³, to maintain.

27. 正 chêng⁴, upright, true.
28. 阿 a⁴, to flatter.
29. 縣知事 hsien⁴-chih¹-shih⁴ } magistrate; where hsien⁴
 or } means 'a district', chih¹
 „ 官 hsien⁴-kuan¹ } 'to know' and kuan¹
 'an official'.
30. 辭職 tz'ü²-chih¹, to resign, resignation; where the former means 'to dismiss, to decline' and the latter 'office, official duty'.
31. 法官 fa³-kuan¹, a judge.
32. 判決 p'an⁴-chüeh², judgment, verdict.
33. 陪審員 p'ei²-shên³-yüan², jury; where p'ei² means 'to accompany', shên³ 'to judge, to examine' and yüan² 'an official'.
34. 樣 yang⁴, way, manner, sample.
35. 公平 kung¹-p'ing⁰, fair, just; where both kung¹ and p'ing² mean 'fair, just'.
36. 大理院 ta⁴-li³-yüan⁴, the supreme court; where ta⁴ means 'great', li³ 'reason, principle' and yüan⁴ 'a hall'.
37. 秘書 mi⁴-shu¹, secretary; where the former means 'secret' and the latter 'a book, to write, writing'.
38. „ „ 處 mi⁴-shu¹-ch'u⁴, secretariat; where ch'u⁴ means 'an office, a department'.
39. 纔 ts'ai², just, just now.
40. 書記 shu¹-chi⁴, a clerk; where the latter means 'to record, a sign, a mark'.

41. 速記員 su⁴-chi⁴-yüan², a stenographer; where su⁴ means 'quickly'.
42. 打字 ,, ta³-tzü⁴-yüan², a typist; where ta³ means 'to strike, to beat' and tzü⁴ 'a written character'.
43. ,, 機 ta³-tzü⁴-chi¹, a typewriter; where chi¹ means 'a machine'.
44. 抄 ch'ao¹, to copy.
45. 明白 ming²-pai⁰, to understand; where ming² means 'bright' and pai² 'white'.
46. 懂 tung³, to understand.
47. 管理人 kuan²-li³-jên² } superintendent; where kuan³
or } means 'to govern, to control',
監督 chien¹-tu¹ } li³ 'to manage', chien¹ 'to inspect' and tu¹ 'to superintend, to oversee'.
48. 工廠 kung¹-ch'ang³, a factory; where the former means 'labour, work' and the latter 'a shed, a workshop or factory, a depot'.
49. 評判員 p'ing²-p'an⁴-yüan², an umpire; where p'ing² means 'to criticize, to arrange'.
50. 商人 shang¹-jên², a merchant; where shang¹ means 'trade or commerce, a merchant'.
51. 學問 hsüeh²-wên⁴, learning, knowledge; where the former means 'to learn' and the latter 'to ask'.
52. 有學問 yu³-hsüeh²-wên⁴, learned.
53. 英雄 ying¹-hsiung², a hero; where both mean 'brave, heroic'.
54. 急 chi², impatient, hurried.
55. 才能 ts'ai²-nêng², ability; where both mean 'ability'.



Exercise (with hints).

1. To-morrow is Sunday, the parliament shall not meet = to-morrow (ming²-t'ien⁰) is (shih⁴) Sunday (li³-pai⁴-jih⁴) parliament (kuo²-hui⁴) not (pu²) will (yao⁴) open (k'ai¹).
2. The parliament was adjourned = parliament (kuo³-hui⁴) adjourn (san⁴)-ed (liao⁰).
3. This legislative assembly has no discipline = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) legislative assembly (li⁴-fa³-yüan⁴) not (mei²) have (yu³) discipline (kuei¹-chü⁰).
4. This member of the parliament can not withdraw the bill = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) member of the parliament (kuo²-hui⁴-i⁴-yüan²) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) withdraw (shou¹-hui²) bill, (i⁴-an⁴).
5. I shall move the resolution = I (wo³) shall (yao⁴) move (t'i²) resolution (i⁴-chüeh²-an⁴).
6. He will second it = he (t'a¹) will (yao⁴) second (fu⁴-i⁴).
7. This act has many flaws = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) act (fa³-an⁴ or fa³ ling⁴) have (yu³) many (hsü³-to¹) flaw (ch'üeh¹-tien³).
8. Budget is a profit and loss account = budget (yü⁴-suan⁴-piao³) is (shih⁴) profit loss account (i⁴ sun³ chang⁴).
9. The municipal government levies heavy taxes = municipal government (shih⁴-chêng⁴-fu³) levy (ch'ou¹) heavy (chung⁴) tax (shui⁴).
10. People can not pay taxes = people (jên²-min²) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) pay (fu⁴) tax (shui⁴).
11. We can not but tell the speaker (of the parliament) of this affair = this (chê⁴) piece (件 chien⁴) affair (shih⁴-ch'ing⁰) we (wo³-mên⁰) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) not (pu²) tell (kao⁴-su⁰) speaker (i⁴-chang³).
12. Administration is neither good nor bad = administration (hsing²-chêng⁴) not (pu⁴) good (hao³) also (yeh³) not (pu²) bad (huai⁴).
13. The speaker (of the parliament) maintains fairness without favour = speaker (i⁴-chang³) is (shih⁴) upright (chêng⁴) not (pu²) flatter (a⁴).
14. The magistrate tendered his resignation on the ground of illness = magistrate (hsien⁴-chih¹-shih⁴ or hsien⁴-kuan¹) because (yin¹) disease (ping⁴) resign (tz'ü²-chih¹)-ed (liao⁰).
15. To tell the jury is the same as to tell the judge = tell (kao⁴-su⁰) jury (p'ei²-shên³-yüan²) harmony (ho²) tell (kao⁴-su⁰) judge (fa³-kuan¹) is shih⁴) one (i²) way (yang⁴).
16. The judgment is fair = judgment (p'an⁴-chüeh²) is (shih⁴) fair (kung¹-p'ing⁰).



17. India has the supreme court in Delhi = India (yin⁴-tu⁰) in (tsai⁴) Delhi (德里 té²-li³) have (yu³) supreme court (ta⁴-li³-yüan⁴).
18. The secretary has sent word saying that he will come to see me day after to-morrow = secretary (mi⁴-shu¹) have (yu³) word (hsin⁴) say (shuo¹), he (t'a¹) day after to-morrow (hou⁴ t'ien⁰) will (yao⁴) come (lai²) see (chien⁴) me (wo³).
19. I never saw the secretariat before; I have only just seen it to-day = I (wo³) from (ts'ung²) before (ch'ien²) not (mei²) see (chien⁴) past (kuo⁴) secretariat (mi⁴-shu¹-ch'u⁴), to-day (chin¹ t'ien⁰) just (ts'ai²) see (chien⁴) reach (到 tao⁴).
20. The clerk has already been writing three hours and has not yet finished = clerk (shu¹-chi⁴) already (i³-ching⁰) use (yung⁴)-ed (liao⁰) three (san¹) dot (tien³) bell (chung¹)-'s (ti⁰) work (kung¹) assist (fu¹) [kung¹-fu⁰, time spent in doing anything; time; work], yet (hai²) not (mei²) write (hsieh³) finished (wan²). [完 wan², to finish,—added as an auxiliary to such words as will take the qualifying idea of finishing or completing.]
21. He can not copy it in one day = one (i⁴) day (t'ien¹)-'s (ti⁰) time (kung¹-fu⁰) he (t'a¹) copy (ch'ao¹) not (pu⁴) rise (ch'i³) come (lai⁰). [起 ch'i³, to rise, to raise up, is joined as an auxiliary to verbs indicating motion upwards, sometimes denotes progressive action, but is more frequently used simply to express the completion of the action. It is generally followed by lai², to come.]
22. The typist understands, but the stenographer understands better = typist (ta³-tzü⁴-yüan²) understand (ming²-pai⁰) but (tan⁴-shih⁰) stenographer (su⁴-chi⁴-yüan²) more (kêng⁴) understand (ming²-pai⁰).
23. Do you understand or not? = you (ni³) understand (tung³) not (pu⁴) understand (tung³)?
24. This typewriter is much better than that one = this (chê⁴) piece (架 chia⁴, classifier of framed things) typewriter (ta³-tzü⁴-chi¹) compare (pi³) that (na⁴) piece (chia⁴) typewriter (ta³-tzü⁴-chi¹) good (hao³) much (to¹) 了 (liao⁰ or lo⁰, a final particle).
25. I want to have a clear understanding with the Superintendent about this matter = this (chê⁴) piece (chien⁴, classifier of various things) matter (shih⁴), I (wo³) want (yao⁴) before (hsien¹) harmony (ho²) superintendent (kuan²-li³-jên² or chien¹-tu¹) speak (shuo¹) understand (ming²-pai⁰).
26. There are over twenty men in the factory = at (tsai⁴) factory (kung¹-ch'ang³) in (li²) have (yu³) two (êrh⁴) ten (shih²) many (to¹) piece (ko⁴) man (jên²).
27. The umpire did not understand your language = umpire (p'ing²-p'an⁴-yüan²) not (pu⁴) understand (ming²-pai⁰) your (ni³-ti⁰) word (hua⁴).

28. This merchant has no learning = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) merchant (shang¹-jên²) not (mei²) have (yu³) learning (hsüeh²-wên⁴).
29. There is nothing here that concerns the learned = this (chê⁴) in (li⁰) [chê⁴-li⁰, here] not (mei²) have (yu³) learned (yu³-hsüeh²-wên⁴) man (jên²)-'s (ti⁰) affair (shih⁴-ch'ing⁰).
30. The hero came, sat for a while and then went off in a hurry = hero (ying¹-hsiung²) come (lai²) sit (tso⁴) ed (liao⁰) one (i²) down (hsia⁰) then (chiu⁴) hurried (chi²) hurried (chi²)-ly (ti⁰) go (tsou³)-ed (liao⁰).
31. I cannot compare with him in ability = I (wo³) compare (pi³) not (pu²) above (shang⁴) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) ability (ts'ai²-néng²).



THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 嬰孩 ying¹-hai² } a baby ; where ying¹ means ' a baby,
or } especially a girl ', hai² ' a child '
娃娃 wa²-wa⁰ } and wa² ' a baby '.
2. 孫子 sun¹-tzü⁰, a grandson (son's son).
3. „ 女 sun¹-nü³, a granddaughter (son's daughter).
4. 外孫子 wai⁴-sun¹-tzü⁰, a grandson (daughter's son) ;
where wai⁴ means ' outside, foreign '.
5. „ „ 女 wai⁴-sun¹-nü³, a granddaughter (daughter's
daughter).
6. „ 甥 wai⁴-shêng⁰, a nephew (sister's son) ; where
shêng¹ means ' a child of the sister '.
7. „ „ 女 wai⁴-shêng⁰-nü³, niece (sister's daughter).
8. 姪子 chih²-tzü⁰, a nephew (brother's son).
9. „ 女 chih²-nü⁰, a niece (brother's daughter).
10. 沒有人 mei²-yu⁰-jên², nobody.
11. 誰 shui², anybody, anyone, who, which.
12. 沒有甚麼 mei²-yu³-shên²-ma⁰, nothing.
13. 甚麼 shên²-ma⁰, anything, everything.
14. „ „ 地方 shên²-ma⁰-ti⁴-fang⁰, anywhere.
15. 沒有 „ „ mei²-yu³-ti⁴-fang⁰, nowhere.
16. 火把 huo³-pa⁰, a torch ; where huo³ means ' fire ' and
pa³ ' to take '.
17. 爐子 lu²-tzü⁰, a stove.
18. 下落 hsia⁴-lo⁴, whereabouts ; where the former means
' below ' and the latter ' a dwelling place '.

19. 可以 k'o²-i³, may (indicating possibility).
20. 鮮 hsien¹, fresh.
21. 管 kuan³, to look after.
22. 不誠實 pu⁴-ch'êng²-shih⁰, dishonest; where ch'êng² means 'honest' and shih² 'sincere, true'.
[ch'êng²-shih⁰, honest].
23. 賄 hui⁴, bribe, to bribe.
24. 受 shou⁴, to receive.
25. 機會 chi¹-hui⁰, opportunity; where the former means 'opportunity' and the latter 'to meet'.
26. 當 tang¹, when.
27. 抓 chua¹, to seize.
28. 傻子 sha³-tzü⁰, a fool.
29. 聰明 ts'ung¹-ming⁰, intelligent; where ts'ung¹ means 'clever' and ming² 'bright, intelligent'.
30. 遲 ch'ih², late, to delay.
31. 熟 shu², ripe, familiar, well-acquainted.
32. 閏 jun⁴, extra, intercalary.
33. 蝕 shih², an eclipse, to eat up slowly.
34. 過於時髦 kuo⁴-yü²-shih²-mao², ultramodern; where kuo⁴ means 'to pass, beyond the ordinary or popular limit', yü² 'in, at, on', shih² 'time' and mao² 'eminent, excellent'.
35. 胭脂 yen¹-chih⁰, rouge; where the former means 'rouge, cosmetic' and the latter 'cosmetic'.
36. 粉 fên³, powder.
37. 點 tien³, to apply (rouge).
38. 白 pai², white.



39. 厭 yen⁴, to dislike.
40. 康健 k'ang¹-chien⁴, healthy; where the former means 'health, vigour' and the latter 'strong, robust'. [chien⁴-k'ang¹, health].
41. 祝 chu⁴, to wish (a good luck), to bless.
42. 成功 ch'êng²-kung¹, to achieve success, to succeed; where the former means 'to succeed' and the latter 'merit, achievement'.
43. 擦 ts'a¹, to rub.
44. 臉 lien³, face.

Exercise (with hints).

1. The baby is healthy = baby (ying¹-hai² or wa²-wa⁰) is (shih⁴) healthy (k'ang¹-chien⁴).
2. I do not know when his grandson (son's son) will come back = I (wo³) not (pu⁴) know (chih¹-tao⁰) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) grandson (sun¹-tzü⁰) when (shên²-ma⁰ << = what >> -shih²-hou⁰ << time >>) will (yao⁴) return (hui²) come (lai⁰).
3. When will your grandson (daughter's son) go home? = your (ni³-ti⁰) grandson (wai⁴-sun¹-tzü⁰) when (shên²-ma⁰-shih²-hou⁰) will (yao⁴) return (hui²) home (chia¹)?
4. When I shall see my granddaughter (son's daughter), I shall tell her = when (tang¹) I (wo³) see (k'an⁴-chien⁰) my (wo³-ti⁰) granddaughter (sun¹-nū³) of (ti⁰) time (shih²-hou⁰) then (chiu⁴) tell (kao⁴-su⁰) her (t'a⁰).
5. He went out when his granddaughter (daughter's daughter) came in = when (tang¹) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) granddaughter (wai⁴-sun¹-nū³) inside (進 chin⁴, to enter) come (lai²) of (ti⁰) time (shih²-hou⁰) he (t'a¹) then (chiu⁴) out (ch'u¹) go (ch'ü⁰)-ed (liao⁰).
6. His nephew (brother's son) does not know his whereabouts = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) nephew (chih²-tzü⁰) not (pu⁴) know (chih¹-tao⁰) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) whereabouts (hsia⁴-lo⁴).
7. You may tell your nephew (sister's son) to come on Thursday = you (ni³) may (k'o²-i³) tell (kao⁴-su⁰) your (ni³-ti⁰) nephew (wai⁴-shêng⁰) request (ch'ing³) him (t'a⁰) or call (chiao⁴) him (t'a¹) Thursday (li³-pai⁴-ssü⁴) come (lai²).

8. Your niece (brother's daughter) and my niece (sister's daughter) are studying in the class-room = your (nī³-ti⁰)-niece (chih²-nū⁰) and (ho²) my (wo³-ti⁰) niece (wai⁴-shēng⁰-nū³) in (tsai⁴) school-room (shu¹-fang², lit. book-room) inside (li³) read (k'an⁴) book (shu¹). [To be in tsai⁴....li³].
9. Nobody sees them = nobody (mei²-yu⁰-jēn²) see (k'an⁴-chien⁰) them (t'a⁰-mēn⁰).
10. Anyone has a torch and a stove = anyone (shui²) has (yu³) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) torch (huo³-pa⁰) and (k'ēn¹) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) stove (lu³-tzū⁰).
11. But nothing is mine = but (tan⁴-shih⁴) nothing (mei²-yu³-shēn²-ma⁰) is (shih⁴) mine (wo³-ti⁰).
12. Everything is all right = everything (shēn²-ma⁰) matter (shih⁴) all (tou¹) right (hao³) liao⁰.
13. This man can go anywhere = this (chē⁴) piece (ko⁴) man (jēn²) anywhere (shēn²-ma⁰-ti⁴-fang⁰) all (tou¹) can (nēng²) go (ch'ū⁴).
14. He is going nowhere = he (t'a¹) nowhere (mei²-yu³-ti⁴-fang⁰) go (ch'ū⁴).
15. We want fresh milk = we (wo³-mēn⁰) want (yao⁴) new (hsin¹) fresh (hsien¹) of (ti⁰) milk (nui²-nai³).
16. That is my affair, you need not look after it = that (na⁴) is (shih⁴) my (wo³-ti⁰) affair (shih⁴), you (ni³) not (pu²) use (yūng⁴) look after (kuan³).
17. He is a dishonest man; he takes bribes = he (t'a) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) dishonest (pu⁴-ch'ēng²-shih²) of (ti⁰) man (jēn²), he (t'a¹) take (shou⁴) bribe (hui⁴).
18. An intelligent man seizes opportunity, but a fool misses it = one (i²) piece (ko⁴) intelligent (ts'ung¹-ming⁰) man (jēn²) seize (chua¹) opportunity (chi¹-hui⁰), but (k'o²-shih⁰) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) fool (sha³-tzū⁰) not (pu⁴) can (nēng²).
19. It is too late = is (shih⁴) too (t'ai⁴) late (ch'ih²).
20. Your face seems familiar = your (ni³-ti⁰) face (lien³) familiar (shu²).
21. This year is a leap year = this year (chin¹ nien²) is (shih⁴) leap year (jun⁴ nien²).
22. This year has both lunar and solar eclipses = this year (chin¹ nien⁰) has (yu³) both (ㄨ ㄩ⁴) lunar eclipse (yūeh⁴ shih²) and (k'ēn¹) solar eclipse (jih⁴ shih²).
23. She is ultramodern; she always uses rouge = she (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) ultramodern (kuo⁴-yū²-shih²-mao²); she (t'a¹) always (ch'ang² ch'ang²) apply (tien³) rouge (yen¹-chih⁰).

24. She also powders her face = she (t'a¹) also (yeh³) rub (ts'a¹) powder (fên³) on (tsai⁴) her (t'a¹-ti⁰) face (lien³).
25. Powder is not disliked for being too white = powder (fên³) not (pu²) dislike (yen⁴) too (t'ai⁴) white (pai²).
26. I wish you success = I (wo³) wish (chu⁴) you (ni⁰) succeed (ch'êng²-kung¹).
27. I wish you a happy new year = I (wo³) wish (chu⁴) you (ni⁰) new (hsin¹) year (nien²) happy (k'uai⁴-lo⁰).



THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 聲音 shēng¹-yin⁰, voice; where the former means 'a voice' and the latter 'a sound'.
2. 低 ti¹, low.
3. 獎品 chiang²-p'in³, prize; where the former means 'a prize or reward' and the latter 'a thing, a kind, a class'.
4. 茅房 mao²-fang⁰, a lavatory; where the former means 'reeds, rushes, grasses, poor' and the latter 'a room, a house'.
5. 髒 tsang¹, dirty, unclean.
6. 封 fēng¹, a classifier of a package, letter, etc., indicated by 'piece'.
7. 可是 k'o³-shih⁰, but.
8. 禁止 chin⁴-chih³, to prohibit, to forbid; where chin⁴ means 'to prohibit, prohibition, to restrict, restriction' and chih³ 'to stop, to desist'.
9. 抽 ch'ou¹, to suck up, to smoke (tobacco).
10. 句子 chü⁴-tzü⁰, sentence. [A sentence—i² ko⁴ chü⁴-tzü⁰].
11. 紀律 chi⁴-lü⁴, discipline; where the former means 'a record' and the latter 'a rule, a law'.
12. 寬 k'uan¹, wide, liberal, lenient.
13. 應當 ying¹-tang¹, should, ought to; where both mean 'should, ought to'.

14. 託辭 t'o¹-tz'ü⁴, an excuse; where the former means 'to entrust, to depute, to request, to ask' and the latter 'to make excuses, to resign'.
15. 容 jung², to admit, to allow.
16. 理由 li³-yu², reason; where the former means 'reason' and the latter 'cause'.
17. 胃口 wei⁴-k'ou⁰, appetite; where the former means 'the stomach' and the latter 'the mouth, an opening'.
18. 害羞 hai⁴-hsiu¹ (siu¹) shy; where the former means 'to injure, to destroy' and the latter 'to feel ashamed, to blush, shame'.
19. 女孩 nü³-hai², a girl.
20. 窗戶 ch'uang¹-hu⁰, a window; where the former means 'a window' and latter 'a door'.
21. 賊 tsei², a thief.
22. 強盜 ch'iang²-tao⁴, a robber; where the former means 'strong, violent' and the latter 'to rob, to steal'.
23. 扒手 p'a²-shou⁰, a pickpocket; where the former means 'to scratch' and the latter 'the hand'.
24. 偷 t'ou¹, to steal.
25. 鋼筆 kang¹-pi³, a fountain pen; lit, a steel-pen.
26. 殺 sha¹, to kill.
27. 不中用 pu⁴-chung¹-yung⁴-(ti⁰), worthless (person).
28. 不重要 pu²-chung⁴-yao⁴, negligible.
29. 值得 chih²-tê⁰, worth; where the former means 'value, price' and the latter 'to obtain, to gain'.

30. 同志 t'ung²-chih⁴, a comrade, a friend; where the former means 'together, identical' and the latter 'purpose, determination, will'.
31. 送 sung⁴, to give to, to send, to hand over.
32. 張 chang¹, a classifier of nouns, such as, paper, beds, tables, etc., indicated by 'one'.
33. 漫畫 man⁴-hua⁴, a cartoon; where the former means 'spreading, diffused' and the latter 'a picture, a painting'.
34. 謹防 chin³-fang², to beware of, to guard against, to be heedful; where the former means 'to be watchful, cautious' and the latter 'to guard against'.
35. 所 so³ (suo³), that which, what.
36. 實話 shih²-hua⁴, truth; where the former means 'true, real' and the latter 'words, talk'.
37. 謊 „ huang³-hua⁴, a lie, falsehood; where the former means 'to lie, lie, falsehood'.
38. 罵 ma⁴, to scold, to abuse, to curse.
39. 準備 chun³-pei⁴, ready; where the former means 'to regulate, to adjust, exact, true' and the latter 'ready, to prepare'.
40. 白天 pai²-t'ien⁰, daytime.
41. 夜 yeh⁴, night.
42. 也許 yeh²-hsü³, perhaps.
43. 嗅 hsiu⁴, to smell.
44. 認 jên⁴, to confess, to acknowledge, to recognize, to know.
45. 債 chai⁴, a debt.
46. 而且 êrh²-ch'ieh³, too (moreover); where the former means 'and, and yet, also' and the latter 'moreover'.



47. 厚 hou⁴, thick.

48. 寧 ning², to prefer, rather, it is better.

49. 辱 ju⁴, disgrace, to disgrace.

50. 敢 kan³, to dare, to venture.

Exercise (with hints).

1. The boy speaks well = boy (hsiao³-hai²-tzü⁰) speak (shuo¹) get (tê⁰) well (hao³).
2. The girl speaks in a low voice = girl (nü³-tzü⁰) speak (shuo¹) low (ti¹) voice (shêng¹-yin⁰).
3. Speak slowly = speak (shuo¹) get (tê⁰) slow (man⁴).
4. His son will win the prize = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) son (êrh²-tzü⁰) will (yao⁴) get (tê²) prize (chiang²-p'in³).
5. The lavatory is dirty = lavatory (mao²-fang⁰) is (shih⁴) dirty (tsang¹).
6. I am sending a letter through him = I (wo³) request (ch'ing³) him (t'a⁰) send (chi⁴) one (i⁴) piece (fêng¹) letter (hsin⁴).
7. Smoking is prohibited (no smoking) = prohibit (chin⁴-chih³) smoke (ch'ou¹) tobacco (yen¹).
8. Every sentence is intelligible = sentence (chü⁴) sentence (chü⁴) understand (ming²-pai⁰).
9. Discipline is very lax = discipline (chi⁴-lū⁴) is (shih⁴) very (hên³) wide (k'uan¹).
10. Public duty admits of no excuse = public (kung¹) matter (shih⁴) not (pu⁴) admit (jung²) excuse (t'o¹-tz'ü⁴).
11. I do not know the reason = I (wo³) not (pu⁴) know (chih¹-tao⁰) reason (li³-yu²).
12. I have no appetite = I (wo³) not (mei²) have (yu³) appetite (wei⁴-k'ou⁰).
13. She is very shy = she (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) very (hên³) shy (hai⁴-hsiu¹).
14. The girl shuts the window = girl (nü³-hai²) shut (關 kuan¹) window (ch'uang¹-hu⁰).
15. Thieves do not steal things when the moon shines forth = thief (tsei²) in (tsai⁴) moon (yüeh⁴) night (yeh⁴) not (pu⁴) steal (t'ou¹) thing (tung¹-hsi¹).
16. The robber killed his father = robber (ch'iang²-tao⁴) kill (sha¹)-ed (liao⁰) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) father (fu⁴-ch'in⁰).



17. A pickpocket stole away my two fountain pens = one (i²) piece (ko⁴) pickpocket (p'a²-shou⁰) steal (t'ou¹) walk (tsou³)-ed (liao⁰) my (wo³-ti⁴) two (liang³) piece (chih¹) steel pen (kang¹-pi³).
18. Beware of pickpockets = beware (chin³-fang²) pickpocket (p'a²-shou⁰).
19. He is a worthless man; he always talks well, but never does well = he (t'a) is (shih⁴) one (i¹) piece (ko⁴) worthless (pu⁴-chung¹-yung⁴-ti⁰) man (jên²); he (t'a¹) only (kuang¹) talk (shuo¹) but (k'o³ shih⁰) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) do (tso⁴) well (hao³).
20. How much is this worth? = this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) worth (chih²-tê⁰) much (to¹) few (shao³) money (ch'ien²).
21. That is negligible = that (na⁴) piece (ko⁴) is (shih⁴) negligible (pu²-chung⁴-yao⁴).
22. I have a comrade who made me a present of two cartoons = I (wo³) have (yu³) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) comrade (t'ung²-chih⁴) give (sung⁴)-ed (liao⁰) two (liang³) piece (chang¹) cartoon (man⁴-hua⁴) give (kei³) me (wo⁰). [sung⁴ kei³, to present to, to make a gift to].
23. Everything that I say is true and everything that he says is false = I (wo³) that which (so³ or suo³) say (shuo¹)-ing (ti⁰) all (tou¹) is (shih⁴) truth (shih²-hua⁴) he (t'a¹) that which (so³ or suo³) say (shuo¹)-ing (ti⁰) all (tou¹) is (shih⁴) lie (huang³-hua⁴).
24. Never tell a lie = not (pu⁴) tell (shuo¹) lie (huang³).
25. He is scolding me without reason = he (t'a¹) not (mei²) have (yu³) reason (li³-yu²) scold (ma⁴) me (wo⁰).
26. He is ready to go = he (t'a¹) ready (chun³-pei⁴) go (ch'ü⁴).
27. Your younger brother says he may go to-morrow = your (ni³-ti⁰) younger brother (ti⁴-ti⁰) say (shuo¹) he (t'a¹) to-morrow (ming²-t'ien⁰) perhaps (yeh²-hsü³) go (ch'ü⁴).
28. If he go, I too may go = he (t'a¹) if (chia²-shih³) go (ch'ü⁴) I (wo³) also (yeh³) may (k'o³) can (nêng²) go (ch'ü⁴).
29. You should help this man = you (ni³) should (ying¹-tang¹) help (pang¹-tso⁴) this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) man (jên²).
30. It is very hot in the daytime = daytime (pai²-t'ien⁰) very (hên³) hot (jê⁴).
31. At night it is very cold = night (yeh⁴) in (li³) very (hên³) cold (lêng³).
32. He wants you badly = he (t'a¹) really (shih²-tsai⁴ = real-at) think (hsiang³) you (ni⁰).
33. I want a tea cup = I (wo³) want (yao⁴) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) tea (ch'a²) cup (pei¹).
34. He wants a cup of tea = he (t'a¹) want (yao⁴) one (i⁴) cup (pei¹) tea (ch'a²).

35. Are your parents still living? = your (ni³-ti⁰) parents (fu⁴-mu³) yet (hai²) at (tsai⁴) ma⁰ (sign of interrogative)?
36. They are still living = yet (hai²) at (tsai⁴).
37. I am smelling the flower = I (wo³) smell (hsiu⁴) flower (hua¹).
38. The boy confessed his fault = boy (hsiao³-hai²-tzü⁰) confess (jên⁴)-ed (liao⁰) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) fault (ts'o⁴).
39. He acknowledged his debt = he (t'a¹) acknowledge (jên⁴) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) debt (chai⁴).
40. The book is very big and very thick too = book (shu¹) is (shih⁴) very (hên³) big (ta⁴) moreover (êrh²-ch'ieh³) very (hên³) thick (hou⁴).
41. She prefers death to disgrace = she (t'a¹) prefer (ning²) death (死 szü³) not (pu²) disgrace (ju⁴).
42. He will rather die than go = he (t'a¹) prefer (ning²) death (szü³) not (pu²) go (ch'ü⁴).
43. You dare to come = you (ni³) dare (kan³) come (lai²).



THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

VOCABULARY

1. 協會 *hsieh²-hui⁴*, society; where the former means 'united, agreement, mutual help' and the latter 'a society'.
2. 花 or 費 *hua¹ or fei⁴*, to spend.
3. 奢侈 *shê¹-ch'ih⁰*, lavish, extravagant; where both *shê¹* and *ch'ih³* mean 'extravagant, wasteful'.
4. 記得 *chi⁴-tê⁰*, to remember; where *chi⁴* means 'to remember, to record, a sign' and *tê²* 'to get'.
5. 知識 *chih¹-shih⁰*, knowledge.
6. 介紹 *chieh⁴-shao⁴*, to introduce, introduction, to recommend, recommendation; where the former means 'to lie between' and the latter 'to connect, to join'.
7. 序 or 序言 *hsü⁴ or hsü⁴-yen²*, preface, introduction; where *hsü⁴* means 'preface'.
8. 經驗 *ching¹-yen⁴*, experience; where the former means 'to experience' and the latter 'to examine, to verify'.
9. 注意 *chu⁴-i⁰*, attention; where *chu⁴* means 'to fix the mind on' and *ti⁴* 'an idea, an opinion'.
10. 單獨 *tan¹-tu²*, alone; where both mean 'alone, single'.
11. 忠告 *chung¹-kao⁴*, advice; where the former means 'loyal, faithful, honest' and the latter 'to tell'.
12. 差不多 *ch'a⁴-pu⁰-to¹*, almost; where *ch'a⁴* means 'to differ, discrepancy'.



13. 請求 ch'ing³ (ts'ing³)-ch'iu,² an application ; where the former means 'to request, please' and the latter 'to beg, to pray, to implore'.
14. 考慮 k'ao³-lū⁴, to consider, consideration ; where the former means 'to examine, to test' and the latter 'anxiety, to be anxious, to plan'.
15. 繼續 chi⁴-hsü⁴(sü⁴), to continue ; where the former means 'to continue' and the latter 'to connect, continuous'.
16. 此 tz'ü³, this.
17. 異 i⁴, to differ, different, strange.
18. 供給 kung¹-chi⁰, supply ; where kung¹ means 'to supply, supply' and chi³ 'to give'.
19. 要求 yao¹-ch'iu², demand, to demand ; where the former means 'to demand, to seek for, to make an agreement'.
20. 應 ying¹, to comply with, to fulfil.
21. 抄本 ch'ao¹-pên⁰, a copy ; where ch'ao¹ means 'to copy'.
22. 附上 fu⁴-shang⁴, to enclose.
23. 原因 yüan²-yin¹, a cause ; where both mean 'a cause'.
24. 普通 p'u³-t'ung¹, common ; where both mean 'universal, general'.
25. 常識 ch'ang²-shih⁴, common sense ; where ch'ang² means 'common' and shih⁴ 'to know, to recognise'.
26. 牌 p'ai², a card.
27. 舒服 shu¹-fu², comfortable ; where the former means 'comfortable' and the latter 'to serve, to submit, to be willing'.
28. 小心 hsiao³-hsin¹, care ; and hsiao³-hsin⁰, careful.

29. 國歌 kuo²-ko¹, national anthem; where the former means 'a nation' and the latter 'a song, to sing'.
30. 語 kuo²-yü³, national language; where the latter means 'language'.
31. 成 ch'êng², percentage, per cent.
32. 提醒 t'i²-hsing³, to remind; where the former means 'to raise, to pick up, to mention' and the latter 'to wake up, to be aroused'.
33. 一同 i¹-t'ung², together.
34. 乘 ch'êng², to multiply.
35. 除 ch'u², to divide.
36. 饒 jao², to spare, to forgive.
37. 名譽學位 ming²-yü⁴ hsüeh² wei⁴, honorary degree (academic); where ming² means 'a name, fame', yü⁴ 'fame' [ming²-yü⁴, honorary], hsüeh² 'to learn' and wei⁴ 'a degree'.
38. 虛 hsü¹, false, unreal.
39. 授 shou⁴, to confer.
40. 絕 chüeh², to give up, to abandon.
41. 所有 so²-yu³, all.
42. 騙子 p'ien⁴-tzü⁰, a swindler, a cheater; where the former means 'to swindle, to cheat'.
43. 上當 shang⁴ tang⁴, to be cheated; where tang⁴ means 'to treat, to pawn'.
44. 爭論 chêng¹-lun⁴, to argue; where the former means 'to wrangle, to contend' and the latter 'to argue'.
45. 同窗 t'ung²-ch'uang¹, a school-mate; where the former means 'with, together' and the latter 'a window'.



46. 親戚 ch'in¹-ch'i⁰, a relative; where both ch'in¹ and ch'i⁴ mean 'a relative'.
47. 馬上 ma³-shang⁴, at once, without delay; where the former means 'horse' and the latter 'on'.
48. 倖運 hsing⁴-yün⁴ }
 'or
 運氣 yün⁴-ch'i⁰ } luck; where hsing⁴ means 'lucky',
 yün⁴ 'luck' and ch'i⁴ 'air, breath'.
49. 棉花 mien²-hua⁰, cotton; where mien² means 'cotton' and hua¹ 'a flower'.

Exercise (with hints).

1. Man cannot live without society = man (jên²) not (mei²) have (yu³) society (hsieh²-hui⁴) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) live (住 chu⁴).
2. He is spending money lavishly = he (t'a¹) lavishly (shê¹-ch'ih⁰ ti⁰) spend (hua¹ or fei⁴) money (ch'ien²).
3. I cannot remember it = I (wo³) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) remember (chi⁴-tê⁰).
4. Knowledge is power = knowledge (chih¹-shih⁰) is (shih⁴) power (li⁴).
5. He will give me a letter of introduction = he (t'a¹) will (yao⁴) give (kei³) me (wo⁰) one (i⁴) piece (fêng¹) introduction (chieh⁴-shao⁴) letter (hsin⁴).
6. My professor will write the introduction of my book = my (wo³-ti⁰) professor (chiao⁴-shou⁴) will (yao⁴) write (tso⁴) my (wo³-ti⁴) book (shu¹) introduction (hsü⁴ or hsü⁴-yen²).
7. He is an experienced teacher = he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) have (yu³) experience (ching¹-yen⁴) teacher (hsien¹-shêng¹).
8. Attention please! = please (ch'ing³) attention (chu⁴-i⁰).
9. I am alone within the house = I (wo³) alone (tan¹-tu²) at (tsai⁴) house (fang²-tzü⁰) inside (li³-t'ou⁰). [li³-t'ou⁰, within.]
10. His advice is sound = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) advice (chung¹-kao⁴) is (shih⁴) true (shih²-tsai⁴).
11. The tiger is almost dead = tiger (hu³) is (shih⁴) almost (ch'a⁴-pu⁰-to¹) dead (szü³).
12. I shall consider your application = I (wo³) shall (yao⁴) consider (k'ao³-lû⁴) your (ni³-ti⁰) application (ch'ing³-ch'iu²).
13. He will continue his work = he (t'a¹) will (yao⁴) continue (chi⁴-hsü⁴) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) work (工作 kung¹-tso⁴).

14. It differs from this = differ (i⁴) from (hu¹) this (tz'ü³).
15. But it agrees with this = but (tan⁴-shih⁰) agree (合 ho²) with (hu¹) this (tz'ü³).
16. Both of them are in fault = two (liang³) piece (ko⁰) all (tu¹) have (yu³) not (pu²) is (shih⁴). [pu²-shih⁴, a fault.]
17. The supply is not equal to the demand = supply (kung¹-chi⁰) not (pu⁴) comply with (ying¹) demand (yao¹-ch'iu²).
18. I am enclosing a copy of it = I (wo³) enclose (fu⁴-shang⁴) copy (ch'ao¹-pên⁰).
19. Our cause is common = our (wo³-mên⁰-ti⁰) cause (yüan²-yin¹) is (shih⁴) common (p'u³-t'ung¹).
20. He has no common sense = he (t'a¹) not (mei²) have (yu³) common sense (ch'ang² shih⁴).
21. The card is here = card (p'ai²) at (tsai⁴) here (chê⁴-li⁰).
22. Our journey to China was comfortable = our (wo³-mên⁰-ti⁰) journey (lû³-hsing²) to (tao⁴) China (chung¹-kuo⁰) is (shih⁴) comfortable (shu¹-fu²).
23. Be careful = you (ni³) require (yao⁴) careful (hsiao³-hsin⁰).
24. When the national anthem is sung, we should stand up = national anthem (kuo²-ko¹) suffer (pei⁴) sing (ch'ang⁴)-ing (ti⁰) time (shih²-hou⁰) we (wo³-mên⁰) then (chiu⁴) stand (chan⁴) rise (起 ch'i⁰) come (lai⁰).
25. We should learn the national language = we (wo³-mên⁰) should (ying¹-kai¹ 應該) learn (hsüeh²) national language (kuo² yü³).
26. There is seventeen per cent success = there is (yu³) seventeen (shih²-ch'i¹) percentage (ch'êng²) success (ch'êng²-kung¹).
27. Please remind me = please (ch'ing²) you (ni⁰) remind (t'i²-hsing³) me (wo⁰).
28. They go together = they (t'a¹-mên⁰) together (i¹-t'ung²) go (ch'ü⁴).
29. Multiply six by nine and divide by four = six (liu⁴) multiply (ch'êng²) nine (chiu³) and (ho²) divide (ch'u²) four (ssü⁴).
30. Please spare him = please (ch'ing²) you (ni⁰) spare (jao²) him (t'a⁰).
31. His honorary degree (academic) is well deserved = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) honorary degree (ming²-yü⁴ hsüeh² wei⁴) not (pu⁴) false (hsü¹) confer (shou⁴).
32. He gave up all hope = he (t'a¹) give up (chüeh²)-ed (liao⁰) all (so²-yu³) hope (hsi¹-wang⁴).
33. I was cheated by a cheater = I (wo³) top (shang⁴)-ed (liao⁰) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) cheater (p'ien⁴-tzü⁰) of (ti⁰) treat (tang⁴). [shang⁴ tang⁴, to be cheated.]
34. Don't argue = not (pu²) want (yao⁴) argue (chêng¹-lun⁴).

35. My school-mate will come within a week = my (wo³-ti⁰) school-mate (t'ung²-ch'uang¹) one (i²) piece (ko⁴) week (li³-pai⁴) inside (li³-t'ou⁰) will (yao⁴) come (lai²).
36. His relative will go without delay = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) relative (ch'in¹-ch'i⁰) without delay (ma³-shang⁴) will (yao⁴) go (ch'ü⁴).
37. His luck is very favourable = his (t'a¹-ti⁰) luck (hsing⁴-yün⁴ or yün⁴-ch'i⁰) is (shih⁴) very (hên²) good (hao³).
38. Egyptian cotton is good = Egypt (ai¹-chi²)-'s (ti⁰) cotton (mien²-hua⁰) is (shih⁴) good (hao³).
-



THIRTY-NINTH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation.

短句	和	成論
tuan ³ -chü ⁴	ho ²	ch'êng ² -yü ³
[short] [sentence]		[perfect] [language]
phrases	and	idioms

1. 破 p'o⁴, to break.
2. 打破 ta³ (to strike)-p'o⁴, to smash, to break.
3. 犯法 fan⁴ (to violate) fa³ (law), to break the law.
4. 中途下車 chung¹ (middle) t'u² (a road) hsia⁴
(below) ch'ê¹ (a cart), to break the journey.
5. 背約 pei⁴ (to turn the back on) yüeh¹ (an agreement),
to break a promise.
6. 失信 shih¹ (to lose) hsin⁴ (a pledge), to break a
promise.
7. 得 té², to get.
8. 生氣 shêng¹ (to produce) ch'i⁴ (breath), to get angry.
9. 走開 tsou³ (to walk) k'ai⁰ (to open), to get away.
10. 下來 hsia⁴ (below) lai⁰ (to come), to get down.
11. 進 „ chin⁴ (to enter) lai⁰, to get in.
12. 出 „ ch'u¹ (out) lai⁰, to get out.
13. 上 „ shang⁴ (above) lai⁰, to get up.
14. 起 „ ch'i³ (to rise) lai⁰, to get up (from a lying or
sitting position).
15. „ 牀 ch'i³ ch'uang² (bed), to get up from bed.
16. 上車 shang⁴ ch'ê¹, to get into a vehicle.
17. 下 „ hsia⁴ ch'ê¹, to get out of a vehicle.

18. 預備 yü⁴ (to prepare) pei⁴ (to prepare), to get ready.
19. 保 pao³, to protect, to preserve.
20. 存 ts'un², to keep.
21. 保存 pao³ ts'un², to keep (to preserve).
22. 留 liu², to keep (to detain).
23. 攔 ko¹, to keep (to place).
24. 履行 lü³ (to walk) hsing² (to walk), to keep (to carry out, as a promise 應許 or 答應 ying¹-hsü³ or ta²-ying⁰; where ying¹ means 'ought, should, right, proper', hsü³ 'to promise' and ta² 'to reply').
25. 守秘密 shou³ (to keep) mi⁴ (secret) mi⁰ (secret), to keep a secret.
26. 記在心裏 chi⁴ (to remember) tsai⁴ (in) hsin¹ (heart) li⁰ (inside), to keep in mind.
27. 製 chih⁴, to make.
28. 印度製 yin⁴-tu⁰ chih⁴, Indian make (goods <huo⁴> 物 huo⁴-wu⁴; where the former means 'goods, commodities' and the latter 'matter, goods').
29. 中國 „ chung¹-kuo⁰ chih⁴, Chinese make (goods).
30. 交 chiao¹, to have intercourse with, intimacy, friendship.
31. „ 朋友 chiao¹ p'êng²-yu⁰, to make friends.
32. „ 友 chiao¹ yu³, to make friends with.
33. 定主意 ting¹ (to fix, to settle) chu³ (a lord) i⁰ (an opinion), to make up one's mind.
34. 趕快 kan³ (as soon as) k'uai⁴ (quickly), to make haste.
35. 媾和 kou⁴ (to wed, love) ho² (peace), to make peace.

36. 開戰 k'ai¹ (to open) chan⁴ (to fight), to make war.
37. „ 玩笑 k'ai¹ wan² (to find pleasure in)-hsiao⁴ (to laugh), to make fun of. [wan²-hsiao⁴, fun.]
38. „ 張 k'ai¹ chang¹ (to open), to open (as a business 商業 shang¹-yeh⁴; where the former means 'trade' and the latter 'business').
39. 打開 ta³ (to strike) k'ai⁰, to open (as a book, shu¹ or a box 盒子 ho²-tzü⁰).
40. 折 „ ch'ai¹ (to break open) k'ai⁰, to open (as a letter hsin⁴ or a package 包 pao¹).
41. 擱 ko¹ or 放 fang⁴, to put.
42. „ 下 ko¹ hsia⁰ }
or } to put down.
放 „ fang⁴ hsia⁰ }
43. 戴上 tai⁴ shang⁰, to put on (as hat or eyeglasses).
44. 穿 „ ch'uan¹ shang⁰, to put on (as clothes, socks, etc.).
45. 關 kuan¹ or 閉 pi⁴ or 掩 yen³, to shut, to close.
46. „ 門 kuan¹ mên², to shut the door.
47. 閉口 pi⁴ k'ou³, to shut the mouth.
48. „ 上眼睛 pi⁴ shang⁰ yen³-ching¹, to shut the eyes.
49. 掩 „ 耳朵 yen³ shang⁰ êrh³-to⁰, to shut the ears.
50. 拿 na², to take.
51. 吃藥 ch'ih¹ (to eat) yao⁴, to take medicine.
52. 當心 tang¹ (to undertake) hsin¹ (heart), to take care.
53. 脫帽 t'o¹ mao⁴ (hat), to take off the hat.
54. „ 鞋 t'o¹ hsieh², to take off the shoes.
55. 戒酒 chieh⁴ (to guard against) chiu³ (wine), to abstain from wine.



FORTIETH LESSON

The small figures after a word refer to intonation

格言

ko²-yen²

[wise] [saying]
proverb

或

huo⁴

or

俗語

su²-yü³

[common] [saying]
proverb

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. 王 | 法 | 無 | 親 |
| wang ² | fa ³ | wu ² | ch'in ¹ |
| royal | law | without | to attend to in person |

The law is no respecter of persons.

- | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 2. 小 | 孔 | 不 | 補 | 大 | 孔 | 叫 | 苦 |
| hsiao ² | k'ung ³ | pu ⁴ | pu ³ | ta ⁴ | k'ung ³ | chiao ⁴ | k'u ³ |
| small | hole | not | patch | big | hole | cause | bitter |

A stitch in time saves nine.

- | | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 3. 需 | 事 | 之 | 賊 | 也 |
| hsü ¹ | shih ⁴ | chih ¹ | tsei ² | yeh ³ |
| procrastinate | affair | arrive at | thief | indeed |

Procrastination is the thief of time.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 4. 賊 | 不 | 改 | 性 |
| tsei ² | pu ⁴ | kai ³ | hsing ⁴ |
| thief | not | change | nature |

A thief cannot change his nature.

Cf. চোর না শোনে ধর্মের কাহিনী।

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 5. 賊 | 出 | 關 | 門 |
| tsei ² | ch'u ¹ | kuan ¹ | mên ² |
| thief | out | shut | door |

To lock the doors after the thieves have already gone.

Cf. चोरे गते किमु सावधानम्।

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 6. 同 | 行 | 必 | 妒 |
| tung ² | hang ² | pi ⁴ | tu ⁴ |
| same | trade | certainly | jealous |

Two of a trade never agree.

7. 有 志 者 事 竟 成
 yu³ chih⁴ chē³ shih⁴ ching⁴ ch'êng²
 there is will that affair at last succeed

Where there is a will, there is a way.

8. 既 往 不 咎
 chi⁴ wang³ pu² chiu⁴
 already gone not blame

Let bygones be bygones.

Cf. गतस्य शोचना नास्ति ।

9. 濟 火 以 油
 chi⁴ huo³ i³ yu²
 help fire with oil

To pour oil on flames.

10. 集 少 成 多
 chi² shao³ ch'êng² to¹
 gather together little become much

Many a little, makes a mickle.

11. 七 顛 八 倒
 ch'i¹ tien¹ pa¹ tao⁴
 seven upset eight invert

At sixes and sevens.

12. 近 朱 者 赤 近 墨
 chin⁴ chu¹ chē³ ch'ih⁴ chin⁴ mê⁴
 approach vermilion he who read approach ink
 者 黑
 chē³ hei¹
 he who black

He who handles vermilion will be reddened and he who touches ink will be blackened.

A man is known by the company he keeps.

Cf. संसर्गजा दोषा गुणा भवन्ति ।

13. 近 煤 者 黑
 chin⁴ mei² chē³ hei¹
 approach coal he who black

He who uses coal gets black.

14. 樂 極 生 悲
 lo⁴ chi² shēng¹ pei¹
 joy extreme produce sadness

Extreme joy gives rise to sadness.

After sweetmeat comes sour sauce.

Cf. যত হাসি তত কান্না বলে গেছে বাম শর্মা ।

15. <k'ai¹> 口 不 如 緘 口 穩
 k'ai¹ k'ou³ pu⁴ ju² chien¹ k'ou³ wên³
 open mouth not if close mouth firm

It is safer to keep silence than to speak.

Cf. मौनं हि शोभनम् ।

16. 孤 樹 不 成 林
 ku¹ shu⁴ pu⁴ ch'êng² lin²
 alone tree not become forest

One tree does not make a forest.

17. 快 馬 一 鞭 <k'uai⁴> 人 一 言
 k'uai⁴ ma³ i² pien⁴ k'uai⁴ jên² i¹ yen²
 fast horse one whip sharp man one word

A fast horse only needs one touch of the whip—an intelligent man only needs a hint.

18. 人 不 知 己 過
 jên² pu⁴ chih¹ chi³ kuo⁴
 man not know self fault

A man is unconscious of his own faults.

Cf. आत्मच्छिद्रं न जानाति परच्छिद्रं पदे पदे ।

19. 人 算 不 如 天 <suan⁴>
 jên² suan⁴ pu⁴ ju² t'ien¹ suan⁴
 man calculation not equal to God plan

Human calculations are not equal to God's plans.

20. 由 儉 入 奢 易
 yu² chien³ ju⁴ shê¹ i⁴
 from frugality enter extravagance easy

To go from frugality to extravagance is easy.

21. 由 <shê¹> 入 儉 難
 yu² shê¹ ju⁴ chien³ nan²
 from extravagance enter frugality difficult

To go from extravagance to frugality is difficult.

22. 盲 人 騎 瞎 馬
 mang² jên² ch'i² hsia¹ ma³
 blind man ride blind horse

A blind man riding a blind horse (i.e. imminent danger).

23. 不 可 貌 相
 pu⁴ k'o³ mao⁴ hsiang⁴
 not may appearance look at

Do not judge a person by his looks. Cf. All that glitters, is not gold.

24. 瞞 目
 man² mu⁴
 to deceive eyes

To throw dust in the eyes.

25. 魚 之 失 水
 yü² chih¹ shih¹ shui³
 fish arrive lose water

A fish out of water.



26. 青 天 霹 靂
 ch'ing¹ t'ien¹ p'i⁴ li⁴
 blue sky crash of thunder clap of thunder [p'i⁴-li⁴,
 sound of thunder]

A bolt from the blue.

27. 耳 屬 于 垣
 êrh³ shu³ yü² yüan²
 ear belong to wall

Walls have ears.

28. 善 始 善 終
 shan⁴ shih³ shan⁴ chung¹
 good beginning good ending

Good beginning makes a good ending.

29. 上 行 下 效
 shang⁴ hsing² hsia⁴ hsiao⁴
 superior doing inferior imitate

The doings of superiors are imitated by inferiors.

Cf. महाजनो येन गतः स पन्थाः ।

30. 是 則 是 非 則 非
 shih⁴ tsê² shih⁴ fei¹ tsê² fei¹
 right then right wrong then wrong

Right is right and wrong is wrong.

31. 熟 能 生 巧
 shu² nêng² shêng¹ ch'iao³
 ripe power produce clever

Practice makes perfect.

32. 走 魚 <shih⁴> 大 的
 tsou⁴ yü² shih⁴ ta⁴ ti⁰
 go fish is large one

The fish that gets away is always the largest.

33. 人 心 不 足
 jên² hsin¹ pu⁴ tsu²
 man heart not satisfied

The heart of man is never satisfied.

34. 貧 病 相 連
 p'in² ping⁴ hsiang¹ lien²
 poverty disease mutual connect

Poverty and disease are closely associated.

35. 冰 生 于 水 而 寒 于 水
 ping¹ shêng¹ yü² shui³ êrh² han² yü² shui³
 ice produce from water but cold than water

Ice is produced from water but it is colder than water
 (i.e. the pupil excels his tutor).

36. 飛 蛾 赴 火
 fei¹ o² fu⁴ huo³
 flying moth go to fire

The flying moth approaches the flame.

37. 不 是 兒 戲
 pu² shih⁴ êrh² hsi⁴
 not is child play

It is not child's-play.

Cf. ইহা ছেলেখেলা নয়।

38. 知 子 莫 如 父
 chih¹ tzü³ mo⁴ ju² fu⁴
 know son not like father

No one knows a son like his father.

39. 謀 事 在 人 成 事 在 天
 mou² shih⁴ tsai⁴ jên² ch'êng² shih⁴ tsai⁴ t'ien¹
 devise matter in man become matter in God

Man proposes but God disposes.

40. 覆 水 難 收
 fu² shui³ nan² shou¹
 overturn water difficult gather together

Spilt water cannot be gathered.

41. 女 生 外 向
 nü³ shêng¹ wai⁴ hsiang⁴
 woman born outside facing towards

A woman is born with an outward tendency (i.e. she leaves the house of her father after marriage).

42. 自 私 心 焚 和
 tzü⁴ szü¹ hsin¹ fên² ho²
 self selfish heart burn peace

[tzü⁴-szü¹-, selfish ; tzü⁴-szü¹-hsin¹, selfishness]

Selfishness destroys peace and harmony.

43. 耳 視
 êrh³ shih⁴
 ear to see

To see with the ear.

Cf. राजा कर्णाभ्यां पश्यति ।

44. 言 多 必 失
 yen² to¹ pi⁴ shih¹
 talk much certainly error

Much talk leads to error.

45. 言 不 及 行
 yen² pu⁴ chi² hsing²
 word not to reach to action

Theory is not equal to practice.

46. 一 人 難 如 千 人 意
 i¹ jên² nan² ju² ch'ien¹ jên² i⁴
 one man difficult like many man wish

One cannot please everybody.

47. 一 人 作 事 一 人 當
 i¹ jên² tso⁴ shih⁴ i¹ jên² tang¹
 one man to do affair one man must

A man must bear the consequences of his own acts.

Cf. দেখি এই চরাচরে যে যেমন কর্ম করে সে তেমন ফল পায় তার।

48. 人 各 有 短
 jên² ko⁴ yu³ tuan³
 man every has short

Everyone has shortcomings.

49. 說 來 說 去
 shuo¹ lai² shuo¹ ch'ü⁴
 speak come speak go

To beat about the bush (i.e. to talk about a matter without coming to the point or to repeat over and over again).

50. 禍 從 口 生
 huo⁴ ts'ung² k'ou³ shêng¹
 calamity through mouth produce

Calamities come through the mouth (either through carelessness in diet causing sickness or through carelessness and maliciousness in speech).

51. 禍 不 單 行
 huo⁴ pu⁴ tan¹ hsing²
 misfortune not alone walk

Misfortune never comes singly.

52. <chien³> 則 固
 chien³ tsê² ku⁴
 parsimony lead to meanness

Parsimony leads to meanness.

53. 先 <fa¹> 制 人
 hsien¹ fa¹ chih⁴ jên²
 first to manifest to rule man

He who makes the first start, rules others.

54. 舊 瓶 貯 新 酒
 chiu⁴ p'ing² chu³ hsin¹ chiu³
 old bottle to hoard new wine

New wine in old bottles.

55. 債 息 日 重
 chai⁴ hsi² jih⁴ chung⁴
 debt interest day heavy

Debt and interest daily increase.



APPENDIX I

[附錄 fu⁴ (an appendix) lu⁴ (to record)]

CLASSIFIERS OR NUMERATIVES

In Chinese each noun generally has a fixed classifier, though a few nouns have two or more. Classifiers are only used when a definite number is spoken of and hence they are also known as numeratives. It is quite impossible to fix any rule for the use of classifiers. Concrete nouns in general take a classifier. But nouns having the sense of time, space or quantity, such as day, year, inch, mile, ounce, catty, etc., do not take any classifier.

個 ko⁴, one, a single one, a unit, may be called a general classifier. It is generally used with those nouns that have no special classifier and may be used with almost any noun as a substitute for the special classifier. As it gives an idea of individuality only, it is used most extensively. It is the only classifier that can be applied to an abstract noun. Other classifiers have been illustrated in their proper places.

Various uses of ko⁴:

一個人 i² ko⁴ jên², a man; but ko⁴ jên², an individual.

“ “ 一個 i² ko⁴ i² ko⁴, one by one.

wo³-mên⁰ chung¹ (中) ti⁰ i² ko⁴, one of us.

ko⁴ ko⁴ tou¹ (都 all) yu³ (有), each or every one possesses it.

ko⁴ ko⁴ ju² (如 like) tz'ü³ (此 this), all are like this.

這 chē⁴, this, and 那 na⁴, that, when used as pronouns, are generally followed by the classifier ko⁴ which is neutral in tone; but when used as pronominal adjectives, it is sometimes omitted without any change of meaning, e.g.

那個是甚麼 na⁴ ko⁰ shih⁴ shên² ma⁰, what is that?

這 “ “ “ “ chē⁴ ko⁰ shih⁴ shên² ma⁰, what is this?

chē⁴ ko⁰ jên², this man; or chē⁴ jên², this man.

na⁴ ko⁰ jên², that man; or na⁴ jên², that man.

ko⁴ is never used after 此 tz'ü³, this; e.g. 此人 tz'ü³ jên², this man.



Note the uses of the following classifiers :

1. 份 fên⁴, a lot : 一份報紙 i² fên⁴ pao⁴-chih³, a copy of newspaper.

張 chang¹, copy : „ 張紙 i⁴ chang¹ chih³, a piece of paper.

2. 件 chien⁴, item : „ 件好新聞 i² chien⁴ hao³ hsin¹-wên², a piece of good news.

3. 枝 chih¹, as of pen, } „ 枝筆 i⁴ chih¹ pi³, a piece of pen.
arrow, flower, etc.

4. 幅 fu², as of pic- } „ 幅畫 i¹ fu² hua⁴, a piece of painting.
ture, maps and
things having
breadth

5. 根 kên¹, as of rope „ 根繩子 i⁴ kên¹ shêng²-tzŭ⁰, a piece
or string : of string.

6. 塊 k'uai⁴, piece : „ 塊布 i² k'uai⁴ pu⁴, a piece of cloth.

„ „ 鐵 i² k'uai⁴ t'ieh³, a piece of iron.

„ „ 地 i² k'uai⁴ ti⁴, a piece of land.

„ „ 肉 i² k'uai⁴ jou⁴, a piece of meat.

„ „ 石頭 i² k'uai⁴ shih²-t'ou⁰, a piece
of stone.

7. 本 pên³, copy : „ 本書 i⁴ pên³ shu¹, a copy of book.

8. 片 p'ien⁴, slice : „ 片麵包 i² p'ien⁴ mien⁴-pao¹, a piece of bread.

9. 首 shou³, as of } „ 首詩 i⁴ shou³ shih¹, a piece of poetry.
poems, plays, etc.

們 mên²

It is the sign of the plural, generally added to personal pronouns, but sometimes to other words denoting persons. It is never added to words

denoting things. It is neutral in tone; thus:

我 wo³, I

你 ni³, thou, you

他 t'a¹, he

人 jên², man

兄弟 hsiung¹-ti⁴, brother

我們 wo³-mên⁰, we

你 „ ni³-mên⁰, you

他 „ t'a¹-mên⁰, they

人 „ jên²-mên⁰, men

兄弟 „ hsiung¹-ti⁴-mên⁰, brothers.

But the singular and plural of nouns are in general alike; e.g. wo³-mên⁰ shih⁴ p'êng²-yu⁰, we were friends.

The enclitics 子 tzŭ³ and 兒 ér²

Both of these characters, meaning 'son', are used after words in the formation of nouns. Some words take one and some take the other, while many take either of them. There are some nouns which take neither of them. tzŭ³ is much more used in the formation of nouns than ér² which has in most cases more or less of a diminutive sense. Both of them are neutral in tone. Thus, 樣子 yang⁴-tzŭ⁰, an example.

In the following cases the pronunciation of ér² is modified for the sake of euphony:

(a) When it is used after the syllables ending in -ŭ, -ü, -i, -ih and -eh, it becomes -êr and the vowels in the third and fourth tones are more open, almost like -ar; e.g.

tzŭ⁴ (字) -êrh⁰ = tsêr⁴ = tsar⁴, a character, a letter.

nŭ³ (女) -êrh⁰ = nüer³ = nŭar³, daughter.

p'i² (皮) -êrh⁰ = p'êr², skin.

chih¹ (枝) -êrh⁰ = chêr¹, a branch.

yeh² (椰) -êrh⁰ = yêr, cocoanut.

(b) When it is used after the syllables ending in -a, -o, -ê, -u, -ao and -ou, it becomes only -r; e.g.

na⁴ (那) -êrh⁰ = nar⁴, there (ér² is used here forming an adverb of place).

tso² (昨) -êrh⁰ = tsar², yesterday (adverb of time).

chê⁴ (這) -êrh⁰ = chêr⁴, here (adverb of place).

chu² (軸) -êrh⁰ = chur², a pivot, a catch.

tao¹ (刀) -êrh⁰ = taor¹, a knife.

t'ou² (頭) -êrh⁰ = t'our², the head of an organization.



(c) When it is used after the finals ending in -i or -n, both -i and -n are totally dropped (with -ien becoming -iar instead of -ier or -iêr); e.g.

hai² (孩) -êrh⁰ = har², a child.

— < k'uai⁴ = pièce > i² k'uai⁴ -êrh⁰ = i² k'uar⁴, all together, in a lump.

„ 點 i⁴ tien³ -êrh⁰ = i⁴ tiar³, a dot, a little, slightly.

chin¹ (今) -êrh⁰ = chiêr¹, today (adverb of time).

Note.—êrh² is also used in forming adverbs of time and place; as,
今 < êrh² > 是初二明 < êrh² > 是初三 [chiêr¹ (today) shih⁴ (is) ch'u¹ (beginning) êrh⁴ (two) ming-êr² (tomorrow) shih⁴ ch'u¹ san¹] today is the second, tomorrow will be the third.

我害了怕這 < êrh² > 藏那 < êrh² > 躲 [wo³ (I) hai⁴ (fearful) liao³ p'a⁴ (to fear) chêr⁴ (here) ts'ang² (hide) nar⁴ (there) to³ (hide)] I was afraid and hid myself here and there.

êrh² is also used in a diminutive sense; e.g.

刀 < êrh⁰ > taor¹, a knife, but

„ 子 tao¹ -tzü⁰, a large knife or a sword.

初 ch'u¹ and 號 hao⁴

初 ch'u¹, meaning 'beginning' is applied to the first ten days of the month and 號 hao⁴, meaning 'a sign, a number' to the remaining days of the month; e.g.

初四 ch'u¹ ssü⁴, the fourth day of the month.

正月 „ „ chêng¹ -yüeh⁴ ch'u¹ ssü⁴, January fourth.

二十號 êrh⁴ shih² hao⁴, the twentieth day of the month.

正 „ „ „ „ chêng¹ -yüeh⁴ êrh⁴ shih² hao⁴, January twentieth.

十二 „ shih² êrh⁴ hao⁴, the twelfth day of the month.

Chinese expression of time

The minute or fraction of hour is indicated by 分 fên¹.

The hour or o'clock is indicated by 點 tien³ or 點鐘 tien³ chung¹.

The general term for time is 時候 shih² hou⁰.

Examples—

Three o'clock:— 三點鐘 san¹ tien³ chung¹.

Half past three:— “ “ 半鐘 san¹ tien³ pan⁴ chung¹.

Quarter after three:— “ “ 一刻 san¹ tien³ i² k'o⁴.

Quarter to three:— 二 “ 三 “ êrh⁴ tien³ san¹ k'o⁴.

Fifteen minutes past three:— 三 < tien² > 十五分 san¹ tien³ shih² wu³ fên¹.

Five after three:— “ “ 五分 san¹ tien³ wu³ fên¹.

Ten after three:— “ “ 十 “ san¹ tien³ shih² fên¹.

的 ti⁴ and 得 tē²

ti⁴ is the common sign of the genitive case. But when two genitives follow each other, the genitive sign of the preceding one is often omitted and the genitive is implied by the mere juxtaposition of the words; as—

我 < ti⁴ > 鋪蓋 wo³-ti⁰ p'u¹ (to spread out) kai⁴ (to cover, a cover) [p'u¹-kai⁴, bedding], my bedding.

wo³ p'êng²-yu⁰-ti⁰ p'u¹-kai⁴, my friend's bedding.

Adjectives are sometimes formed by adding ti⁴ to the end of nouns; as—

小心, hsiao³ (small) hsin⁰ (hsin¹, heart), care; but

“ “ < ti⁴ > hsiao³ hsin⁰ ti⁰, careful.

不同 pu⁴ t'ung², difference; but

“ “ < ti⁴ > pu⁴ t'ung² ti⁰, different.

Adverbs are sometimes formed by adding ti⁴ as a suffix and tē² as a prefix to adjectives; as—

< ni³ > < man⁴.man¹ > < ti⁴ > 說他就聽 < ti⁴ > 清楚 [ni³ (you) man⁴ (slow) man¹ (slow) ti⁰ shuo¹ (to speak) t'a¹ (he) chiu⁴ (then) t'ing¹ (to hear) ti⁴ ch'ing¹ (clear, distinct) ch'u⁰ (ch'u³, clear, distinct; ch'ing¹ ch'u⁰, distinct)] if you speak slowly, he will hear distinctly.

hao³, good, well (adj.); but tē⁰ hao³, well (adv.); well said, shuo¹ tē⁰ hao³, well done, tso⁴ tē⁰ hao³.

When ti⁴ follows a verb, it gives it the sense of a verbal noun or corresponds to a relative clause; thus

nū³-tzū⁰ (girl) tsou³ (to go) ti⁰ hên³ (very) k'uai⁴ (fast), the girl goes very fast; literally 'girl's going is very quick'.



小孩子說 < ti⁴ > 有理 [hsiao³-hai²-tzū⁰ (boy) shuo¹ (to speak) ti⁰ yu² li³ (reason) (yu³, to have; yu² li³, reasonable)] what the boy says is reasonable.

< ché⁴ > < ko⁴ > 字繙大 < ti⁴ > 對 [ché⁴ (this) ko⁰ (piece) tzū⁴ (word) fan¹ (to translate) ti⁰ ta⁴ (very) tui⁴ (right)] this word is translated quite right; literally, 'this word's translation is quite right'.

Note.—tê² 'to get, very' may also be substituted for ti⁴ without any appreciable change of meaning. Such substitution is more available in the South than in the North; as—

病 < tê² > or < ti⁴ > ping⁴ (disease) tê⁰ or ti⁰, sick.

< tê² > or < ti⁴ > 清楚 tê² or ti⁴ ch'ing¹-ch'u⁰, distinctly.

When ti⁴ is added to a verb and its object, it indicates the agent:—

管事 kuan³ (to control) shih⁴ (affair), but

„ „ < ti⁴ > kuan³-shih⁴-ti⁰, the manager.

„ „ 不在家, 他不能作主 kuan³-shih⁴-ti⁰ pu² (not) tsai⁴ (at) chia¹ (home), t'a¹ (he) pu⁴ (not) nêng² (can) tso⁴ (to do) chu³ (a lord), the manager is not at home; he cannot take the responsibility.

送信 sung⁴ (to escort, to hand over) hsin⁴ (a letter), but

„ „ < ti⁴ > sung⁴-hsin⁴-ti⁰, the letter-carrier (postman).

sung⁴-hsin⁴-ti⁰ lai² (to come) liao⁰ (-ed) mei² (not) yu³ (have), has the letter-carrier (postman) come?

念書 nien⁴ (to read aloud) shu¹ (book), but

„ „ < ti⁴ > nien⁴-shu¹-ti⁰, literary man,

生意 shêng¹-i⁴, business, but

„ „ < ti⁴ > shêng¹-i⁴-ti⁰, businessman.

t'a¹-mên⁰ (they) ti⁴-hsiung¹ (弟兄 brother) ch'i¹ (七 seven) ko⁴ (piece), yu³ (have) san¹ (three) ko⁴ (piece) tso⁴ (做 to do) shêng¹-i⁴-ti⁰, of the seven brothers, three are businessmen.

When ti⁴ is added to a material noun, it turns it into a descriptive adjective; as

勺銀 < ti⁴ > pao¹ (to plate) yin² (silver) ti⁰, silver-plated.

„ 金 „ pao¹ chin¹ (gold) ti⁰, gold-plated.



財主 <ti⁴> 茶壺都是 <pao¹> 銀 <ti⁴>, 國王
也有 <pao¹> 金 <ti⁴> [ts'ai².chu¹ (rich man)-'s (ti⁰) ch'a² (tea)
hu² (pot) tou¹ (all) shih⁴ (is) pao¹ yin² ti⁰, kuo².wang² (king) yeh³ (also) yu³
(have) pao¹ chin¹ ti⁰] rich men's tea-pots are all silver-plated, some of the
kings have theirs plated with gold.

第 ti⁴

When it is used before numerals, it forms the ordinal numbers; thus

第一 ti⁴ i¹, first.

„ 二 ti⁴ êrh⁴, second.

„ 五號 ti⁴ wu³ hao⁴, number five.

„ 十二頁 ti⁴ shih² êrh⁴ yeh⁴, page twelve; but

十二頁 shih² êrh⁴ yeh⁴, twelve pages.

自己 tzū⁴ (self) chi³ (self)

These two together form the Reflexive pronoun. Both tzū⁴ and chi³ are also used alone in the same sense. When thus used tzū⁴ precedes the verb with which it is joined, whereas chi³ follows it. Sometimes 自家 tzū⁴ chia¹ (home, family) are also used together in the same sense. Thus,

t'a¹ tzū⁴ chi³ ti⁰ ch'ien² (錢 money) shih⁴ (is) kou⁴ (穀 enough) liao⁰,
his own money is enough.

先正自己後正人 [hsien¹ (first) chêng⁴ (correct) tzū⁴ chi³
hou⁴ (afterwards) chêng⁴ jên²] correct yourself before you correct others.

<ni³> 若 <shih⁴, to be> <tzū⁴.chi³> 不願去我 <pu⁴>

打發 <ni³> <ch'u¹> [ni³ (you) jo⁴.shih⁴ (if) tzū⁴.chi³ (self) pu² (not)

yüan⁴ (wish) ch'ü⁴ (to go) wo³ pu⁴ (not) ta³ fa¹ (ta³ fa¹, to send) ni⁰ (you)
away (ch'u¹)] if you do not go yourself, I shall not send you away.

愛人如己 [ai⁴ (to love) jên² ju² (as, like) chi³] love others as
yourself.

自己 <pu⁴> 知道自己 <ti⁴> 毛病 [tzū⁴ chi³ pu⁴ chih¹
tao⁰ (chih¹ tao⁰, to know) tzū⁴ chi³ ti⁰ mao² ping⁴ (mao² ping⁴, a fault, a
defect)] one does not know one's own fault.

<pu⁴> 關 <ni³> <ti⁴> 事是我自 <chi³> <ti⁴>

錯 [pu⁴ kuan¹ (to connect, connected with) ni³ ti⁰ (your) shih⁴ (affair) shih⁴
(to be) wo³ (I) tzū⁴ chi³ ti⁰ ts'o⁴ (mistake)] you are not responsible; it was my
own mistake.



當 tang¹ or tang⁴

This character has two tones. In the first tone it denotes 'ought' and in the fourth tone it denotes 'to pawn'. Besides these two senses, it has other uses also:

1. In the first tone in the sense of 'should, ought':—

He ought to do just as he said he would = he (t'a¹) what (tsên³ < 怎 > ma⁰) speak (說 shuo¹, to speak)-ing (ti⁰) just (chiu⁴, then) should (tang¹) what (tsên³ ma⁰) do (tso⁴).

Sometimes tang¹ is preceded by ying¹ (應 ying¹, should) in the same sense:—

you should follow his example = you (ni³) should (ying¹-tang¹) learn (hsüeh²) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) example (樣 yang⁴, an example; yang⁴-tzü⁰, an example).

2. It denotes 'to serve in any capacity'; as

One man cannot serve in two capacities = one (i¹) man (jên²) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) serve (tang¹) two (êrh⁴) capacity (役 i⁴, to serve as a servant).

3. Face to face, in the presence of:—

If you have anything to say, you should say it face to face = you (ni³) have (yu³) speak (話 hua⁴, to speak) should (應該 ying¹ kai¹, should ought) in the presence of (tang¹) face (面 mien⁴, face and tang¹ mien⁴, face to face, in the presence of, before the face) speak (shuo¹).

4. At that time:—

Even at that time my father was suffering from fever = that (na⁴) piece (ko⁴) space or point of time (當 < êrh² > tang¹ êrh²) my (wo³-ti⁰) father (fu⁴-ch'in⁰) body (身 shên¹) on (shang⁴) then (chiu⁴) have (yu³) ed (liao⁰) fever (jê⁴).

1. In the fourth tone it means 'to pawn':—

Tomorrow he should go to the town to pawn a pawn, but he has no time (leisure) = he (t'a¹) tomorrow (ming²-t'ien⁰) should (kai¹) enter (進 chin⁴, to enter) town (ch'êng²-shih⁴) go (ch'ü⁴) to pawn (tang⁴) thing (tung¹-hsi⁰) but (tan⁴-shih⁰) is (shih⁴) not (mei²) have (yu³) leisure (工夫 kung¹-fu¹, time, i.e. leisure).

2. To suppose or consider :—

I suppose, he cannot speak Mandarin = I (wo³) suppose (tang⁴) he (t'a¹) is (shih⁴) not (pu²) can (hui⁴) speak (shuo¹) Mandarin (官話 kuan¹-hua⁴, lit. official language).

3. The same :—

It is not possible to go and come back the same day = same (tang⁴) day (t'ien¹) go (ch'ü⁴) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) return (hui²) come (lai²).

4. To regard as :—

He treats me as guest = he (t'a¹) take (na²) me (wo⁰) regard as (tang⁴) guest (k'o⁴) treat (待 tai⁴, to treat, to behave).

5. To deceive :—

You have been deceived by him = you (ni³) on (shang³, above) ed (liao⁰) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) deceive (tang⁴) [shang³-tang⁴, to deceive; shang³ liao⁰ tang⁴, to be deceived].

REDUPLICATION

1. A noun is repeated in a distributive sense :—

Everybody says so, but you do not know whether it is true or false = everybody ((jên² jên²) all (tou¹) so (chê⁴ < this >-ma⁰, thus, so) speak (shuo¹) you (ni³) also (yeh³) not (pu⁴) know (chih¹) is (shih⁴) true (真 chên¹, true, real) is (shih⁴) false (假 chia³, false).

2. Adjectives are often repeated for the sake of emphasis. Adjectives thus repeated generally become adverbs and are often followed by ti⁰ (-'s, -ing, -ly, one) :—

(i) The earth is round = earth (ti⁴) is (shih⁴) round (圓 yüen²) round (yüen²) one (ti⁰).

(ii) I am going home quickly and stay seven or eight days and then return = I (wo³) quickly (k'uai⁴-k'uai¹ <-ti⁰>) go (ch'ü⁴) home (chia¹) stop (住 chu⁴, to stop, to dwell) seven (ch'i¹) eight (pa¹) day (t'ien¹) then (chiu⁴) return (hui²) come (lai⁰).

(iii) The elder brother is constantly quarrelling with his younger brother = elder brother (ko¹-ko⁰) constantly (常常 ch'ang² ch'ang²) with (和 ho²) his (t'a¹-ti⁰) younger brother (ti⁴-ti⁰) quarrel [ta³ (to strike)-架 chia⁴ (to support), to quarrel, to fight].

(iv) Tomorrow my son wants to start early = tomorrow (ming²-t'ien⁰) my (wo³-ti⁰) son (êrh²-tzü⁰) want (yao⁴) early (早早 tsao³ tsao³ <-ti⁰>) to start a journey [動身 tung⁴ (to start)-shên¹ (the body), to start a journey].

(v) What he says is plainly contrary to reason = he (t'a¹) speak (shuo¹) this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) talk (hua⁴) plainly (明明 ming² ming²) not (pu⁴) close (合 ho², to close) reason [情理 ch'ing² (circumstances)-li³ (reason), reason].

(vi) Do not disturb the baby, let him sleep quietly = do not (別 pieh², do not) disturb [驚動 ching¹ (to frighten)-tung⁴ (to move), to disturb] baby (wa²-wa⁰) let (chiao⁴, to allow, to call) him (t'a⁰) quietly (安安 an¹ an¹) soundly (穩 <wên³> wên² wên³ <-ti⁰>) sleep (睡 shui⁴, to sleep) pa⁴ (罷 a final particle).

(vii) Their reports are contradictory = their (t'a¹-mên-ti⁰) report (hua⁴, to speak, speech) contradictory [紛紛 fên¹ (confused)-fên¹ <-pu⁴ (not)-i¹ (one)> i.e. fên¹-fên¹-pu⁴-i¹, contradictory, confused].

(viii) They frequently make a mistake in this matter = they (t'a¹-mên⁰) frequently (往往 wang² wang³) see (k'an⁴, to see) make a mistake (錯 ts'o⁴, to make a mistake) this (chê⁴) piece (chien⁴) matter (shih⁴, an affair).

(ix) The man has no great income—no more than barely enough to meet expenses = man (jên²) not (mei²) have (yu³) great (ta⁴) income [進項 chin⁴ (to advance)-hsiang⁴ (money, funds), income] also (yêh³) not (pu²) pass over (過 kuo⁴, to pass over, to exceed) barely (僅僅 chin²-chin³ <-ti⁰>) enough (彀 kou⁴) expense (花費 hua¹-fei⁴, expense).

3. Verbs are also repeated partly for the sake of emphasis and partly due to specialize the action expressed. In some case i¹ (one) is inserted between the words, by which the second verb becomes a verbal noun; e.g. k'an⁴ (to see) i⁰ (one) k'an⁰ (to see), to look a look, i.e. to take a look.

(i) Thank you, Mr. Wang, for taking all this trouble = thank you (謝謝 hsieh⁴ hsieh⁰, thank you!) Wang Mr. (hsien¹-shêng⁰) this (chê⁴) kind (樣 yang⁴, a kind, a sort) take trouble [費心 fei⁴ (to waste)-hsin¹, to take trouble].

(ii) He and I are not on good terms; he has come to take a look at the state of the affair = I (wo³) and (ho²) he (t'a¹) not (pu⁴) agreeable [合式



ho² (to agree)-shih⁴ (a pattern), suitable, agreeable]; he (t'a¹) come (lai²) to take a look (k'an⁴ k'an⁰) affair (shih⁴-ch'ing², an affair, business)-'s (-ti⁰) state [情形 ch'ing² (circumstances)-hsing⁰ (hsing², form)].

OPTATIVE FORMS

願 yüan⁴, so wish—may, would that, I hope, I wish.

但願 tan⁴-yüan⁴, a formula which expresses desire—oh that! I trust, may, would that.

I wish you a safe journey = I wish (yüan⁴) you (ni³) one (i²) journey (lu⁴, road, path) peaceful (平安 p'ing²-an¹).

I trust you will all sympathize with us = I trust (tan⁴-yüan⁴) you (ni³-mên⁰) all (tu¹) sympathize with [體恤 t'i³ (to show consideration)-hsü⁴ or sū⁴ (sympathy, pity), to sympathize with, to pity] us (wo³-mên⁰).

Miscellaneous words, phrases, and constructions.

1. 若是 jo⁴-shih⁴, if.

(i) If this man does not speak the truth, you ought to do just as you said you would = if (jo⁴-shih⁴) this (chê⁴) piece (ko⁴) man (jên²) not (pu⁴) speak (shuo¹) truth [實話 shih² (real, true)-hua⁴, truth, fact] you (ni³) what (tsên³ < 怎 > -ma⁰) speak (shuo¹)-ing (ti⁰) just (chiu⁴, when used before an active verb and referring to past time, it means just, then, at once) ought (tang¹) what (tsên³-ma⁰) do (tso⁴).

(ii) If you go, he will also go = if (jo⁴-shih⁴) you (ni³) go (ch'ü⁴), he (t'a¹) also (yeh³) will (yao⁴, to want) go (ch'ü⁴).

(iii) If there is nothing to prevent, my father will return in three days = if (jo⁴-shih⁴) not (mei²) have (yu³) affair (shih⁴-ch'ing²) prevent [耽誤 tan¹ (to delay)-wu⁴ (to delay), to prevent] three (san¹) day (t'ien¹) my (wo³-ti⁰) father (fu⁴-ch'in⁰) will (chiu⁴, then) return (hui²) come (lai⁰).

(iv) If you really said these things, you certainly have no conscience = if (joa⁴) you (ni³) really (chên¹, true, real) say (shuo¹)-ed (liao⁰) these (chê⁴-sieh⁰) talk (hua⁴), you (ni³) certainly (實 shih², real, certainly) at (tsai⁴) not (mei²) have (yu³) conscience [良心 liang² (good, natural)-hsin¹ (heart), conscience].

(v) If it is not Mr. Banerjee, then it must be Mr. Mukherjee = if (jo⁴-shih⁴) not (pu²) is (shih⁴) Banerjee Mr. (hsien¹-shêng⁰) then (chiu⁴) must (必 pi⁴, must, certainly) is (shih⁴) Mukherjee Mr. (hsien¹-shêng⁰). [Note. If..... then must:—jo⁴-shih⁴.....chiu⁴ pi⁴].



If you do good, you will of course receive good = if (jo⁴-shih⁴) you (ni³) do (行 hsing², to do) because (wei⁴) good (hao³), of course [自能 tzū⁴ (self, from)-néng² (able, can), of course necessarily] get (得 tê², to get) good (hao³) ti⁰. [Note. If. of course, necessarily :—jo⁴-shih⁴. tzū⁴ néng²].

2. 究竟 chiu¹-ching⁴, after all, in the end, finally; where both mean 'after all, in the end, finally'.

3. 差不多 ch'a⁴ pu⁴ to¹, almost, about.

After all the English language is now current almost all over the world = after all (chiu¹-ching⁴) now (如今 ju²-chin¹) English language (英文 ying¹ wên²) almost (ch'a⁴ pu⁴ to¹) current [通行 t'ung¹ (through, all, the whole)-hsing² (to walk, to travel), everywhere current] whole world (天下 t'ien¹-hsia⁴).

4. 一共 i² kung⁴, in all, altogether.

India has in all four hundred millions of people = India (yin⁴-tu⁰) in all (i² kung⁴) has (yu³) four (ssū⁴) hundred million (萬萬 wan⁴ wan⁴) man (jên²).

有 yu³, to have.

It is sometimes used before a noun to give it the adjectival sense. Thus—

名 ming², fame; but yu³ ming², famous.

勢力 shih⁴-li⁰, influence; where shih⁴ means 'influence, power' and li⁴ 'power'; but yu³ shih⁴-li⁰, influential.

Two negatives—pu⁴ and mei².

Beginners at first find a difficulty in distinguishing between the two negatives pu⁴ and mei². Only experience will enable them to decide without hesitation which of the two should be used in particular cases. Much difficulty of selection will be removed if it be borne in mind that pu⁴ is never used with 'to have' and mei² with 'to be', further, that mei² is generally used in connection with past action. Thus:

Don't go = not (pu²) want (yao⁴) go (ch'ü⁴).

I do not know = I (wo³) not (pu⁴) know (chih¹-tao⁰).

It will not do = not (pu⁴) able (可 以 k'o²-i³, to be able, can).

No, I cannot do it = no (pu⁴), I (wo³) not (pu⁴) can (nêng²) do (tso⁴).

He is not going = he (t'a¹) not (pu²) go (ch'ü⁴).

The following peculiarities in the use of mei² should be noted:—

- (a) He has gone = he (t'a¹) go (ch'ü²)-ed (liao⁰).
- (b) He has not gone = he (t'a¹) not (mei²) go (ch'ü⁴).
- (c) Dinner is ready = food (fan⁴) ready (hao³, good) liao⁰.
- (d) Dinner is not yet ready = food (fan⁴) yet (hai²) not (mei²) ready (hao³).
- (e) Not yet = yet (hai²) not (mei²) have (yu³).
- (f) Pu⁴ and mei² in Interrogative sentences:—
- (g) Will it do? = able (k'o²-i³) not (pu⁴) able (k'o²-i³).
- (h) Do you want it? = you (ni³) want (yao⁴) not (pu²) want (yao⁴).
- (i) Has he come? = he (t'a¹) come (lai²)-ed (liao⁰) not (mei²) have (yu³).
- (j) Have you got any money? = you (ni³) have (yu³) money (ch'ien²) not (mei²) have (yu³).

Note.—Between two verbs pu⁴ makes an interrogative.

INTERJECTIONS.

阿 a¹, Oh! ah!—expresses a sudden occurrence of thought, coupled sometimes with joy and sometimes with grief. Thus:

Oh! you have just thought of it = Oh! (a¹) you (ni³) think of (hsiang²-ch'i³-lai²; where hsiang³, to think, ch'i³, to rise and lai², to come) la⁰ (a final particle).

Ah! Has he already gone? My idea was to go again and earnestly entreat him = ah! (a¹) he (t'a¹) already (i³-ching¹) go (tsou³)-ed (liao⁰) ma⁰ (嗎 ma⁴, an interrogative particle), my (wo³-ti⁰) idea (意思 i⁴-szü¹ or ssü¹, an idea) also (hai², yet, also) was (shih⁴) earnestly (苦苦 k'u³-k'u³ <-ti⁰>, earnestly, urgently; k'u³ means 'urgent, unpleasant, bitter, painful) go (ch'ü⁴) entreat (哀告 ai¹-kao⁴, to entreat, to beseech; ai¹ means 'to beseech' and kao⁴ 'to tell') him (t'a⁰).

嗚呼 wu¹ hu¹, alas!—expresses grief. Thus:

Alas! your father died = alas (wu¹ hu¹) your (ni³-ti⁰) father (fu⁴-ch'in⁰) die (死亡 szü³-wang²)-ed (liao⁰).

好呀 hao³ ya¹, hurrah!—expresses joy. Thus:

Hurrah! he is still living = hurrah! (hao³ ya¹) he (t'a¹) yet (hia²) at (tsai⁴).

There are certain phrases which are used like Interjections to express some strong feeling or emotion:—

Welcome! = joy (歡 huan¹) welcome (迎 ying², to welcome).

Good-bye! = again (再 tsai⁴) see (見 chien⁴) or again (tsai⁴) meet (會 hui⁴).

Farewell! = tsai⁴ chien⁴ or tsai⁴ hui⁴.

There are certain moods of verbs and parts of speech which can be used in an Interjectional sense:—

What, interj.—to¹ (多) ma⁰; but what, pron. and adj.—shên² ma⁰.

What a good man! = what (to¹ ma⁰) good (hao³ ti⁰) man (jên²).

APPENDIX II

Weights [重量 chung⁴ (heavy) liang⁴ (measure) or 輕重 ch'ing¹ (light) chung⁴] and measures [度量 tu⁴ (measure) liang⁴]:

Length [長度 ch'ang² (long) tu⁴] measure:—

寸 ts'un⁴ (inch).

尺 ch'ih³ (foot).

丈 chang⁴ (about 10 feet).

引 yin³ (about 109 feet).

里 li³ (about 1,890 feet), corresponding to English 'mile'.

Area [面積 mien⁴ (surface) chi⁰ (chi¹, to amass)] measure:—

分 fên¹ (one-tenth of an inch).

畝 mou³ (acre).

頃 ch'ing³ (100 mou³).

Capacity [容量 jung² (capacity) liang⁴] measure:—

升 shêng¹ (a pint).

斗 tou³ (bushel; about 2 gallons).

石 shih² (about 26 gallons).

Weight measure:—

分 fên¹ (one-hundredth part of a tael or ounce; about 4 grains).

錢 ch'ien² (about 0.1102 ounce).

兩 liang³ (tael or about 1 ounce).

斤 chin¹ (catty or about 1 pound).

擔 tan⁴ (picul or about 110 pounds).



Money (錢 ch'ien²)

The expressions regarding money are given below :

錢 ch'ien², money or dollar.

洋 „ yang² ch'ien², dollar (foreign).

圓 yüan² (silver coin, like Indian rupee) = 10 chio² or mao².

角 chio², generally known as 毛 mao² (silver coin, like Indian anna-piece) = 10 fên¹.

分 fên¹ (copper coin, like Indian pice).

The classifier for money is k'uai⁴ ; thus :

i² k'uai⁴ ch'ien², one dollar.

i² k'uai⁴ pan⁴ (半) ch'ien², one dollar and a half.

I have \$5.05 = I (wo³) have (yu³) five (wu³) classifier (k'uai⁴) zero (ling²) five (wu³) cent (fên¹) dollar (yang² ch'ien²).

He has \$1.15 = he (t'a¹) has (yu³) one (i²) classifier (k'uai⁴) one (i¹) ten cents (mao²) five (wu³) cent (fên¹) money (ch'ien²).

Do you want money ? = want (yao⁴) money (ch'ien²) not (pu²) want (yao⁴) ?

I do not want money = not (pu²) want (yao⁴) money (ch'ien²).

I have some = I (wo³) have (yu³) some (— 些 i⁴ hsieh¹).

The gold dollar is unknown and all moneys are of silver unless the classifier for copper cash, which is ko⁴, is used.



CONCORDANCE TO WORDS

The black-faced figures that follow the page numbers indicate the numerical order of the word on the page.

A

1. Abandon, *v.*—chüeh², 143, 42.
2. Ability, *n.*—nêng²-li⁴, 18, 1-2; pên³-shih⁰, 120, 85; ts'ai²-nêng², 126, 55.
3. Able, *adj.*—hui⁴, 18, 3; k'o³-nêng², 18, 10.
4. Above, *n. adj. adv. prep.*—shang⁴, 9, 33.
5. Abuse, *v.*—ma⁴, 137, 38.
6. Accept, *v.*—chieh¹-shou⁴, 18, 13-14; chieh¹, 48, 32.
7. According to, *adv.*—an⁴-cho², 27, 30-31; an⁴-chao⁴, 61, 62; chao⁴, 119, 67.
8. Account, *n.*—chang⁴-mu⁰, 124, 18.
9. Achieve (success), *v.*—ch'êng²-kung¹, 132, 42.
10. Acknowledge, *v.*—ta²-fu⁰, 18, 15-16; jên⁴, 137, 44.
11. Act (decision of the legislative body), *n.*—fa³-an⁴; fa³-ling⁴, 123, 10.
12. Acting (officiating), *adj.*—tai⁴, 107, 77.
13. Actor, *n.*—hsi⁴-tzü⁰, 78, 10.
14. Add, *v.*—chia¹, 4, 17.
15. Address (place where a person may be communicated with), *n.*—ti⁴-chih³, 47, 11; (lecture or to lecture), *n. v.*—chiang²-yen³; yen³-shuo¹, 103, 12.
16. Adjourn, *v.*—san⁴, 124, 24.
17. Administration, *n.*—hsing²-chéng⁴, 123, 6.
18. Admit, *v.*—jung², 136, 15.
19. Advice, *n.*—chung¹-kao⁴, 141, 11.
20. Advise, *v.*—hsün⁴, 107, 73.
21. Aeroplane, *n.*—fei¹-chi¹, 48, 22.
22. Affair, *n.*—shih⁴-ch'ing⁰, 124, 25.
23. Affection, *n.*—ai⁴, 19, 36.
24. Afghanistan, *n.*—a¹-fu⁴-han⁴, 51, 10.
25. Africa, *n.*—fei¹-chou¹, 99, 23.
26. After, *adv.*—hou⁴, 29, 10.
27. Afterwards, *adv.*—hou⁴-lai², 29, 11.
28. Again, *adv.*—tsai⁴, 27, 44; yu⁴, 57, 21; 107, 78.
29. Age, *n.*—sui⁴, 40, 13.
30. Aged, *adj.*—lao³, 20, 8.
31. Ago, *adv.*—ch'ien², 29, 9.
32. Agreement, *n.*—hsieh²-ting⁴, 112, 50; 120, 79.
33. Aide-de-camp, *n.*—fu⁴-kuan¹, 117, 39.
34. Air (atmosphere), *n.*—k'ung¹-ch'i⁴, 57, 2.
35. Air-force, *n.*—k'ung¹-chün¹, 67, 18.
36. Alarm-clock, *n.*—hsing³-chung¹, 71, 34.
37. Algebra, *n.*—tai⁴-shu⁴-hsüeh², 104, 37.
38. All, *adj.*—t'ung²-t'ung⁰, 6, 28; so²-yu³, 100, 35; 107, 68; 143, 41; t'ung², 107, 75.
39. Allowance (subsidy), *n.*—chin¹-t'ieh¹, 118, 55.
40. Almond, *n.*—hsing⁴-érh⁰, 93, 14.
41. Almost, *adv.*—ch'a⁴-pu⁰-to¹, 141, 12.
42. Alone, *adv.*—tan¹-tu², 141, 10.
43. Already, *adv.*—i³-ching⁰, 12, 1.
44. Also, *adv.*—yeh³, 25, 23; yu⁴, 107, 78.
45. Alter, *v.*—píen⁴, 18, 18; kai³, 45, 51.
46. Although, *conj.*—sui¹-jan², 30, 25.
47. Altogether, *adv.*—i²-kung⁴, 64, 30.
48. Always, *adv.*—shih²-ch'ang²; ch'ang²-ch'ang², 86, 39.
49. Ambassador, *n.*—ta⁴-shih³, 117, 26.
50. America, *n.*—mei³-kuo⁰, 51, 8.
51. And, *conj.*—kên¹, 18, 25; t'ung², 29, 3; ho², 29, 4; i⁴, 72, 45; yu⁴, 107, 78; ér², 119, 65.
52. Animal, *n.*—tung⁴-wu⁴, 88, 1; (domestic) chia¹-ch'u⁴, 88, 3.
53. Answer, *v.*—ta²-fu⁴, 18, 15-16.
54. Ant, *n.*—ma²-i³, 89, 26.
55. Anthropology, *n.*—jên²-lei⁴-hsüeh², 105, 49.
56. Anybody, *n.*—shui², 130, 11.
57. Anyone, *n.*—shui², 130, 11.
58. Anything, *n.*—shên²-ma⁰, 130, 13.
59. Anywhere, *adv.*—shên²-ma⁰-ti⁴-fang⁰, 130, 14.
60. Appetite, *n.*—wei⁴-k'ou⁰, 136, 17.
61. Apple, *n.*—p'in²-kuo³, 93, 3.
62. Application, *n.*—ch'ing³-ch'iu², 142, 13.
63. Apply (rouge), *v.*—tien³, 131, 37.
64. Apricot, *n.*—hsing⁴-érh⁰, 93, 14.
65. April, *n.*—ssü⁴-yüeh⁴, 26, 16.
66. Arabia, *n.*—a⁴-la³-pai³, 51, 13.
67. Area, *n.*—ti⁴-fang⁰, 118, 44.
68. Argue, *v.*—chéng¹-lun⁴, 143, 44.
69. Arise, *v.*—chan⁴-ch'i⁰-lai⁰, 100, 44.
70. Arithmetic, *n.*—suan⁴-hsüeh², 104, 36.
71. Army, *n.*—lu⁴-chün¹, 67, 16.
72. Arouse, *v.*—hsing³, 71, 32.
73. Arrive, *v.*—tao⁴, 18, 17.
74. Arts, *n.*—wên²-hsüeh², 103, 15.
75. Ashtray, *n.*—yen¹-hui¹-tien², 68, 34.

76. As, *conj.*—ju², 4, 19.
 77. Asia, *n.*—ya³-chou¹, 99, 22.
 78. Ask, *v.*—wên⁴, 9, 32.
 79. Asleep, *adj.*—shui⁴-ti⁰, 71, 29.
 80. Ass, *n.*—lū², 88, 10.
 81. Astrology, *n.*—t'ien¹-wên²-hsüeh², 106, 55.
 82. Astronomy, *n.*—t'ien¹-wên²-hsüeh², 106, 55.
 83. At, *prep.*—tsai⁴, 6, 29; 29, 1.
 84. Atlas, *n.*—ti⁴-t'u²-shu¹, 106, 57.
 85. At once, *adv.*—ma³-shang⁴, 144, 47.
 86. At present, *adv.*—hsien⁴-tsai⁴, 45, 56.
 87. Attack, *n.v.*—kung¹-chi¹, 112, 45.
 88. Attention, *n.*—chu⁴-i⁰, 141, 9.
 89. August, *n.*—pa²-yüeh⁴, 26, 20.
 90. Aunt, *n.*—ku¹-mu³; shu²-mu³, 3, 24.
 91. Australia, *n.*—ao⁴-chou¹, 99, 24.
 92. Author, *n.*—chu⁴-tso⁴-jên², 64, 16.
 93. Autumn, *n.*—ch'iu¹-t'ien⁰, 24, 10.
 94. Awake, *v.*—hsing³-chiao⁴, 71, 33.
 95. Awaken, *v.*—chiao⁴-hsing³, 100, 45.

B

96. Baby, *n.*—ying¹-hai²; wa²-wa⁰, 130, 1.
 97. Bachelor, *n.*—kuan¹-fu¹, 95, 38; kuan¹-kun⁴, 95, 39.
 98. Bachelor of Arts (B.A.), *n.*—wên²-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, 104, 25.
 99. Bachelor of Engineering (B.E.), *n.*—kung¹-ch'êng²-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, 104, 34.
 100. Bachelor of Law (LL.B.), *n.*—fa³-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, 104, 27.
 101. Bachelor of Medicine (M.B.), *n.*—i¹-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, 104, 28.
 102. Bachelor of Science (B.Sc.) *n.*—li³-k'o¹-hsüeh²-shih⁴, 104, 26.
 103. Bad, *adj.*—huai⁴, 20, 2.
 104. Bag (leather), *n.*—p'i²-pao¹, 53, 2; 107, 71.
 105. Baggage, *n.*—hsing²-li³, 66, 12.
 106. Ball (round mass), *n.*—ch'iu², 68, 39.
 107. Bamboo, *n.*—chu²-tzü⁰, 94, 28.
 108. Banana, *n.*—hsiang¹-chiao¹, 93, 1.
 109. Bank (financial establishment), *n.*—yin²-hang², 43, 10.
 110. Barber, *n.*—li²-fa³-chiang⁴, 71, 16.
 111. Barber-shop, *n.*—li²-fa³-shih⁴, 71, 17.
 112. Bark (as a dog), *v.*—chiao⁴, 90, 53.
 113. Base (to found), *v.*—kên¹-chü⁴, 99, 20.
 114. Basket-ball, *n.*—lan²-ch'iu², 68, 40.
 115. Bathe, *v.*—hsi²-tsao³, 12, 29.
 116. Bath-room, *n.*—yü⁴-shih⁴, 70, 2.
 117. Be, *v.*—shih⁴, 2, 10.
 118. Bear (animal)—hsiung², 88, 11.
 119. Beast (wild), *n.*—yeh³-shou⁴, 88, 2.
 120. Beat, *v.*—ta³, 54, 19.
 121. Beautiful, *adj.*—mei³; p'iao¹-liang⁴, 20, 4-5.
 122. Because, *conj.*—yin¹-wei⁴, 30, 24.
 123. Beckon, *v.*—chao¹, 95, 55.
 124. Become, *v.*—pien⁴, 18, 18.
 125. Bed, *n.*—ch'uang², 120, 86.
 126. Bed-room, *n.*—wo⁴-shih⁴, 70, 1.
 127. Bee, *n.*—mi⁴-fêng¹, 93, 12.
 128. Before, *adv. conj.*—ch'ien², 29, 9; t'ou²-li³, 29, 14-15.
 129. Beg, *v.*—ch'iu², 12, 31.
 130. Begin, *v.*—k'ai¹, 19, 38; k'ai¹-shih³, 91, 60.
 131. Behave, *v.*—tai⁴, 86, 37; 118, 48.
 132. Behind, *adv. prep.*—hou⁴-t'ou⁰, 29, 12-13.
 133. Bell, *n.*—chung¹, 27, 25.
 134. Belong to, *v.*—shu³-yü², 113, 63.
 135. Beloved, *adj.*—ch'in¹-ai⁴, 20, 20-21.
 136. Below, *adv. prep.*—hsia⁴, 9, 34.
 137. Belt (leather), *n.*—p'i²-tai⁴, 45, 36-37.
 138. Beware of, *v.*—chin³-fang², 137, 34.
 139. Bible, *n.*—shêng⁴-ching¹; shêng⁴-shu¹, 98, 11.
 140. Bicycle, *n.*—chiao³-t'a⁴-ch'ê¹, 85, 23.
 141. Big, *adj.*—ta⁴, 11, 20.
 142. Bill (parliamentary), *n.*—i⁴-an⁴, 123, 9.
 143. Biology, *n.*—shêng¹-wu⁴-hsüeh², 105, 41.
 144. Bird, *n.*—niao³, 89, 35.
 145. Biscuit, *n.*—ping³-kan¹, 94, 20.
 146. Bite, *v.*—yao³, 90, 54.
 147. Bitter, *adj.*—k'u³, 95, 47.
 148. Black, *adj.*—hê¹ (mostly *pron. hei¹*), 31, 60.
 149. Bless, *v.*—chu⁴, 132, 41.
 150. Blind, *adj.*—hsia¹, 20, 14.
 151. Blindly, *adv.*—hu², 41, 31.
 152. Blotting paper, *n.*—hsi¹-mo⁴-chih³, 80, 5.
 153. Blow (as the wind), *v.*—kua¹, 57, 16.
 154. Blow away, *v.*—kua¹-san⁴, 57, 16-17.
 155. Blue, *adj.*—lan², 31, 64.
 156. Boar, *n.*—yeh³-chu¹, 88, 12.
 157. Board (wood), *n.*—pan³, 31, 55.
 158. Boat, *n.*—hsiao³-ch'uan², 48, 25.
 159. Body, *n.*—shên¹-tzü⁰, 34, 1.
 160. Bolshevik party, *n.*—pu⁴-tang³, 109, 7.
 161. Bomb, *n.*—cha⁴-tan⁴, 67, 28.
 162. Book, *n.*—shu¹, 11, 9.
 163. Book-case, *n.*—shu¹-kuei⁴, 64, 20.
 164. Book-shelf, *n.*—shu¹-chia⁴, 64, 19.
 165. Borrow, *v.*—chieh⁴ (tsieh⁴), 19, 35.
 166. Borrowing slip (book-ticket), *n.*—chieh⁴-shu¹-tan¹, 64, 22.
 167. Botany, *n.*—chih²-wu⁴-hsüeh², 105, 46.
 168. Bottle, *n.*—p'ing²-tzü⁰, 37, 41.
 169. Box, *n.*—hsiang¹-tzü⁰, 110, 23.
 170. Boy, *n.*—hsiao³-hai²-tzü⁰, 3, 14.
 171. Branch (of a tree), *n.*—chih¹-tzü⁰, 94, 31.
 172. Brave, *adj.*—yung³, 20, 27.
 173. Bray, *v.*—ming², 90, 55.
 174. Bread, *n.*—mien⁴-pao¹, 36, 3-4.
 175. Break, *v.*—p'o⁴, 147, 1; ta³-p'o⁴, 147, 2.
 176. Breakdown, *n.*—pêng¹-k'uei⁴, 112, 58.
 177. Breakfast, *n.*—tsao³-ch'a², 84, 12; tsao³-fan⁴, 84, 13.
 178. Break off, *v.*—tuan⁴-chüeh⁰, 120, 89.
 179. Bribe, *n. v.*—hui⁴, 131, 23.



180. Bridge, *n.*—ch'iao², 85, 31.
 181. Brigadier, *n.*—lū²-chang³, 117, 31.
 182. Bright, *adj.*—liang⁴, 83, 18.
 183. Brightness, *n.*—liang⁴, 83, 18.
 184. Bring, *v.*—na². . lai⁰, 8, 8; tai⁴, 12, 30.
 185. Broad, *adj.*—k'uo⁴, 20, 12.
 186. Brother, *n.*—hsiang¹-ti⁴ (or ti⁴-hsiang¹), 3, 18.
 187. Brush, *n.*—shua¹-tzū⁰, 70, 10.
 188. Buddhism, *n.*—fo²-chiao⁴, 98, 6.
 189. Budget, *n.*—yū⁴-suan⁴-piao³, 124, 14.
 190. Buffalo, *n.*—shui³-niu², 88, 14.
 191. Bug, *n.*—ch'ou⁴-ch'ung², 89, 29.
 192. Bull, *n.*—kung¹ niu², 88, 15.
 193. Bullet, *n.*—ch'iang¹-tan⁴, 67, 22; tzū³-tan⁴, 67, 23.
 194. Burma, *n.*—mien³-tien⁴, 113, 65.
 195. Bus, *n.*—kung¹-kung⁴-ch'i⁴-ch'ō¹, 48, 21.
 196. Business (affair), *n.*—shih⁴-ch'ing⁰, 74, 4.
 197. Busy, *adj.*—mang², 20, 28.
 198. But, *conj.*—tan⁴-shih⁰, 30, 34; k'o³-shih⁰, 119, 72; 135, 7.
 199. Butter, *n.*—niu²-yu², 36, 5-6.
 200. Buy, *v.*—mai³, 8, 19.

C

201. Cabbage, *n.*—pai²-ts'ai⁴, 36, 19.
 202. Cadet, *n.*—lu⁴-chūn¹-hsüeh²-shêng⁰, 117, 32.
 203. Cake, *n.*—ping³-tzū⁰, 36, 14.
 204. Calamity, *n.*—huo⁴, 157, 50.
 205. Calculate, *v.*—suan⁴, 153, 19.
 206. Calculation, *n.*—suan⁴, 153, 19.
 207. Call (by voice), *v.*—chiao⁴, 8, 16; 119, 58; (by beckon) chao¹, 95, 55.
 208. Camera, *n.*—chao⁴-hsiang⁴-chi¹, 84, 17.
 209. Can (to be able), *v.*—nêng², 18, 1; hui⁴, 18, 3.
 210. Cap, *n.*—mao⁴-tzū⁰, 45, 35.
 211. Capital (city), *n.*—shou³-tu¹, 119, 66.
 212. Capitalism, *n.*—tzū¹-pên²-chu³-i⁴, 110, 13.
 213. Card, *n.*—p'ai², 142, 26.
 214. Care, *n.*—hsiao³-hsin¹, 142, 28.
 215. Careful, *adj.*—hsiao³-hsin⁰, 142, 28.
 216. Carry (to bring or take along), *v.*—tai⁴, 12, 30.
 217. Cart, *n.*—ch'ê¹, 48, 16.
 218. Cartoon, *n.*—man⁴-hua⁴, 137, 33.
 219. Cartridge, *n.*—ch'iang¹-tan⁴, 67, 22; tzū³-tan⁴, 67, 23.
 220. Case, *n.*—(box) hsiang¹-tzū⁰, 110, 23; (situation) ch'ing²-hsing⁰, 119, 71; (legal) an⁴-chien⁴, 66, 8.
 221. Cat, *n.*—mao²-tzū⁰, 89, 18.
 222. Catalogue (of books), *n.*—shu¹-mu⁴, 64, 18.
 223. Cause, *n.*—yüan²-yin¹, 142, 23. *v.*—chiao⁴, 119, 58.
 224. Central Government, *n.*—chung¹-yang¹-chêng⁴-fu³, 116, 14.
 225. Ceremony, *n.*—tien²-li³, 119, 63.
 226. Certainly, *adv.*—i²-ting⁴, 31, 43.
 227. Ceylon, *n.*—(hsi²-lan²)—shih¹-tzū⁰-kuo⁰, 51, 9.

228. Chair, *n.*—i³-tzū⁰, 31, 54.
 229. Chairman (of the Council), *n.*—i⁴-chang³, 123, 7; (of a meeting or committee) chu³-hsi³, 115, 13.
 230. Chalk, *n.*—fên²-pi³, 11, 23.
 231. Chancellor (of a university), *n.*—hsiao⁴-chang³, 102, 2.
 232. Change, *v.*—pien⁴, 18, 18; kai³, 45, 51; huan⁴, 76, 39; pien⁴-hua⁴, 76, 40.
 233. Chapter (of a book), *n.*—chang¹ 53, 6.
 234. Character (written symbol) *n.*—tzū⁴, 11, 10.
 235. Chargé d'affaires, *n.*—shu⁴-li³-kung¹-shih³, 117, 30.
 236. Cheap (low in price), *adj.*—p'ien²-i⁰, 20, 22-23.
 237. Cheated (to be)—shang⁴ tang⁴, 143, 43.
 238. Cheater, *n.*—p'ien⁴-tzū⁰, 143, 42.
 239. Chemistry, *n.*—hua⁴-hsüeh², 105, 40.
 240. Chest (of body), *n.*—hsiang¹, 34, 17.
 241. Chicken, *n.*—chi¹, 37, 28.
 242. Chilly, *adj.*—lêng³, 25, 21; ch'i¹, 25, 22.
 243. China, *n.*—chung¹-kuo⁰, 51, 2.
 244. Chinese (language), *n.* (chung¹-wên²)—hua²-wên², 63, 8.
 245. Chocolate, *n.*—chu¹-ku³-li⁴, 94, 21.
 246. Cholera, *n.*—huo⁴-luan⁴, 60, 30-31.
 247. Chopsticks, *n.*—k'uai⁴-tzū⁰, 94, 35.
 248. Christianity, *n.*—chi¹-tu¹-chiao⁴; yeh¹-su¹-chiao⁴, 98, 4.
 249. Christmas, *n.*—yeh¹-su¹-tan⁴, 98, 5.
 250. Church, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-t'ang², 98, 14.
 251. Cigarette, *n.*—yen¹, 68, 33.
 252. Cinema, *n.*—tien⁴-ying³, 78, 4.
 253. City, *n.*—ch'êng²-shih⁴, 51, 19.
 254. Civil right, *n.*—kung¹-ch'üan², 111, 38.
 255. Civil war, *n.*—nei⁴-chan⁴; nei⁴-luan⁴, 111, 30.
 256. Civilization, *n.*—wên²-hua⁴, 99, 27.
 257. Civilized, *adj.*—wên²-ming², 99, 28.
 258. Clap (hands), *v.*—ku²-chang³, 107, 76.
 259. Clash, *v.*—fan⁴, 112, 49.
 260. Class-room, *n.*—chiao⁴-shih⁴, 53, 1.
 261. Clear, *adj.*—(not muddy) ch'ing¹, 20, 17; (distinct) ch'u³, 20, 18; (uncloudy) ch'ing², 57, 14; (light and bright) liang⁴, 83, 18.
 262. Clerk, *n.*—shu¹-chi⁴, 125, 40.
 263. Climate, *n.*—ch'i⁴-hou⁴, 24, 14-15.
 264. Clock, *n.*—chung¹, 27, 25.
 265. Close (to shut), *v.*—ho², 19, 37; 107, 69.
 266. Cloth, *n.*—pu⁴, 44, 26.
 267. Clothes, *n.*—i¹-shang⁰, 44, 24-25; 70, 9.
 268. Cloud, *n.*—yün²-ts'ai³, 57, 4.
 269. Coal, *n.*—mei², 75, 16; 152, 13.
 270. Coat, *n.*—kua⁴-tzū⁰, 44, 32.
 271. Coffee, *n.*—k'a¹-fei¹, 36, 10-11.
 272. Coin, *n.*—yin²-chio³-tzū⁰, 43, 15.
 273. Cold, *adj.*—lêng³, 25, 21; ch'i¹, 25, 22.
 274. Colleague, *n.*—t'ung²-shih⁴, 41, 25-26.



275. Colour, *n.*—sê⁴ (shai³), 31, 58; yen² -sê⁴ (shai³), 67, 32.
 276. Comb, *n.*—shu¹-tzu⁰, 71, 21; *v.*—shu¹; to comb hair, shu¹ t'ou².
 277. Come, *v.*—lai², 8, 2; to come to, tao⁴...lai⁰.
 278. Comfortable, *adj.*—shu¹-fu², 142, 27.
 279. Commander, *n.*—chih³-hui¹-kuan¹; szü¹-ling⁴-kuan¹, 117, 35.
 280. Commander-in-chief, *n.*—tsung²-chih³-hui¹; tsung³-szü¹-ling⁴, 117, 36.
 281. Commercial treaty, *n.*—t'ung¹-shang¹-t'iao²-yüeh¹, 112, 53.
 282. Commissioner of police, *n.*—ching³-ch'a²-tsung³-chien¹, 66, 5.
 283. Common, *adj.*—p'u³-t'ung¹, 99, 30; 142, 24.
 284. Common sense, *n.*—ch'ang²-shih⁴, 142, 25.
 285. Communism, *n.*—kung⁴-ch'an²-chu³-i⁴, 110, 14, note.
 286. Communist party, *n.*—kung⁴-ch'an²-tang³, 109, 9.
 287. Compare, *v.*—pi³, 21, 2.
 288. Compel, *v.*—ch'iang³, 90, 52.
 289. Complete, *adj.*—ch'uan², 54, 29; man³, 57, 15; *v.*—wan², 18, 24; 54, 25; 72, 41.
 290. Comply with, *v.*—ying¹, 142, 20.
 291. Comrade, *n.*—t'ung²-chih⁴, 137, 30.
 292. Conclude (treaty), *v.*—ti⁴-chieh², 112, 55.
 293. Confer, *v.*—shou⁴, 143, 39.
 294. Conference, *n.*—hui⁴-i⁴; t'an²-p'an⁴, 119, 59.
 295. Confess, *v.*—jên⁴, 137, 44.
 296. Confucianism, *n.*—k'ung³-chiao⁴; ju²-chiao⁴, 98, 7.
 297. Conscious of, *adj.*—chüeh², 120, 81.
 298. Consider, *v.*—k'ao³-lū⁴, 142, 14.
 299. Consideration, *n.*—k'ao³-lū⁴, 142, 14.
 300. Constable, *n.*—ching³-shih⁴, 66, 3.
 301. Consul-general, *n.*—tsung²-ling³-shih⁴, 117, 28.
 302. Continent, *n.*—ta⁴-chou¹; ta⁴-lu⁴, 99, 21.
 303. Continue, *v.*—chi⁴-hsü⁴, 142, 15.
 304. Controller of Examinations, *n.*—kuan²-k'ao³-yüan², 102, 5.
 305. Convenient, *adj.*—fang¹-pien⁴, 45, 52-53.
 306. Copper, *n.*—t'ung², 43, 4.
 307. Copy, *n.*—ch'ao¹-pên⁰, 142, 21; *v.*—ch'ao¹, 126, 44.
 308. Cordial, *adj.*—ch'in¹-jê⁴, 118, 49.
 309. Corps, *n.*—(military) tui⁴, 117, 33; (diplomatic) t'uan², 117, 38.
 310. Corrupt, *adj.*—fu³-pai⁴, 118, 56.
 311. Corruption, *n.*—fu³-pai⁴, 118, 56.
 312. Costly, *adj.*—kuei⁴, 20, 19.
 313. Cotton, *n.*—mien², 75, 17; mien²-hua⁰, 144, 49.
 314. Cotton mill, *n.*—sha¹-ch'ang³, 95, 43.
 315. Cough, *n. v.*—k'e² (k'o²)-sou⁰, 60, 29.
 316. Count, *v.*—suan⁴, 45, 55.
 317. Country, *n.*—(nation) kuo², 51, 2; (rural area) hsiang¹-hsia⁰, 51, 20.

318. Couple (pair), *n.*—shuang¹, 95, 36.
 319. Court (law), *n.*—fa³-t'ang², 66, 7.
 320. Cow, *n.*—niu², 88, 7.
 321. Cream, *n.*—niu²-nai³-p'ij², 36, 9.
 322. Create, *v.*—ch'uang⁴-tsao⁴, 100, 41.
 323. Credentials (diplomatic), *n.*—kuo²-shu¹, 120, 76.
 324. Crocodile, *n.*—o⁴-yü², 89, 34.
 325. Crow, *n.*—wu¹-ya¹, 89, 37.
 326. Cuckoo, *n.*—shih¹-chiu¹, 90, 40.
 327. Culture, *n.*—wên²-hua⁴, 99, 27.
 328. Cup, *n.*—pei¹-tzu⁰, 37, 36.
 329. Currency note, *n.*—ch'ao¹-p'iao⁴, 43, 13-14.
 330. Curry, *n.*—k'a¹-li⁴, 36, 16.
 331. Curse, *v.*—ma⁴, 137, 38.
 332. Custom house, *n.*—hai³-kuan¹, 66, 11.
 333. Cut, *v.*—k'an³, 44, 33.
 334. Cut out (as clothes), *v.*—ts'ai², 45, 42.

D

335. Dance, *v.*—t'iao⁴-wu³, 18, 19-20.
 336. Dare, *v.*—kan³, 138, 50.
 337. Dark, *adj.*—hun¹, 57, 13.
 338. Date, *n.*—(fruit), tsao³-tzu⁰, 93, 13; (specified time), jih⁴-ch'i², 106, 63.
 339. Daughter, *n.*—nü³-êrh⁰, 3, 13.
 340. Day, *n.*—t'ien¹, 24, 3; jih⁴-tzu⁰, 24, 17.
 341. Day after tomorrow, *n.*—hou⁴-t'ien⁰, 24, 5.
 342. Day time, *n.*—pai²-t'ien⁰, 137, 40.
 343. Dear, *adj.*—(costly) kuei⁴, 20, 19; (beloved) ch'in¹-ai⁴, 20, 20-21.
 344. Death, *n.*—szü³-wang², 90, 57.
 345. Death from starvation, *n.*—ngo⁴-szü³, 119, 73.
 346. Debt, *n.*—chai⁴, 137, 45.
 347. December, *n.*—shih²-êrh⁴-yüeh⁴, 27, 24.
 348. Decide, *v.*—ting⁴, 112, 47.
 349. Deer, *n.*—lu⁴, 88, 13.
 350. Defect, *n.*—ch'üeh¹-tien³, 124, 15.
 351. Deficit, *n.*—sun³-shih¹, 124, 17.
 352. Delay, *v.*—ch'ih², 131, 30.
 353. Deliver (ultimatum), *v.*—t'i²-ch'u⁰, 113, 60.
 354. Demand, *n. v.*—yao¹-ch'iu², 142, 19.
 355. Democracy, *n.*—min²-chu³-chêng⁴-t'i³, 109, 3.
 356. Democratic Party, *n.*—min²-chu²-tang³, 109, 4.
 357. Destroy, *v.*—mieh⁴, 18, 11; p'o⁴-huai⁴; hui³-huai⁴, 90, 51.
 358. Detective, *n.*—pao⁴-t'an⁴, 66, 6.
 359. Develop, *v.*—fa¹-yü⁴, 120, 80.
 360. Dew, *n.*—lu⁴, 57, 12.
 361. Diamond, *n.*—chin¹-kang¹-shih², 43, 8.
 362. Diarrhoea, *n.*—pai²-li⁴, 60, 33.
 363. Dictionary, *n.*—tzu⁴-tien³, 54, 17.
 364. Die, *v.*—szü³-wang², 90, 57.
 365. Differ, *v.*—i⁴, 142, 17.
 366. Different, *adj.*—i⁴, 142, 17.
 367. Difficult, *adj.*—chien¹-nan², 21, 31-32.
 368. Diminish, *v.*—chien³, 4, 18.
 369. Diphtheria, *n.*—pai²-hou², 60, 34.



370. Diplomatic relation, *n.*—wai⁴.chiao¹-kuan¹-hsi⁴, 120, 88.
 371. Dirty, *adj.*—tsang¹, 135, 5.
 372. Discipline, *n.*—chi⁴-lū⁴, 120, 82; 135, 11; kuei¹-chū⁰, 124, 19.
 373. Disease, *n.*—ping⁴, 59, 2; chi²-ping⁴, 59, 1-2.
 374. Disgrace, *n. v.*—ju⁴, 138, 49.
 375. Dishonest, *adj.*—pu⁴-ch'êng²-shih⁰, 131, 22.
 376. Dislike, *v.*—yen⁴, 132, 39.
 377. Disperse, *v.*—san⁴, 124, 20.
 378. Distant, *adj.*—yüan³, 21, 38.
 379. Distinct, *adj.*—ch'u³, 20, 18.
 380. District, *n.*—hsien⁴, 51, 18.
 381. Divide, *v.*—fên¹, 4, 15; ch'u², 143, 35.
 382. Division (military unit), *n.*—shih¹, 67, 19.
 383. Do, *v.*—tsou⁴, 8, 6; 12, 32.
 384. Doctor, *n.*—(medical) i¹-shêng⁰, 59, 4-5; tai⁴-fu⁰, 59, 6-7; (academic) po²-shih⁴, 103, 22.
 385. Doctor of Divinity (D.D.), *n.*—shên²-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, 104, 33.
 386. Doctor of Law (LL.D.), *n.*—fa³-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, 104, 31.
 387. Doctor of Literature (D.Litt.), *n.*—wên²-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, 103, 23.
 388. Doctor of Medicine (M.D.), *n.*—i¹-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, 104, 32.
 389. Doctor of Philosophy (Ph.D.), *n.*—chê²-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, 103, 22.
 390. Doctor of Science (D.Sc.), *n.*—li³-k'o¹-po²-shih⁴, 104, 30.
 391. Doctrine, *n.*—tao⁴, 63, 12.
 392. Dog, *n.*—kou³, 88, 16.
 393. Dollar, *n.*—yang²-ch'ien², 44, 16; one dollar, i²-k'uai⁴-ch'ien².
 394. Door, *n.*—mên², 19, 39.
 395. Dot, *n.*—tien³, 27, 27.
 396. Down, *adv.*—hsia⁴, 9, 34.
 397. Drag, *v.*—la¹, 83, 20.
 398. Drama, *n.*—hsi⁴-chü⁴, 78, 7; hsi⁴-ch'ü³, 78, 8.
 399. Dramatist, *n.*—hsi⁴-ch'ü³-chia¹, 78, 9.
 400. Draw (to get), *v.*—ling³, 118, 52.
 401. Dream, *n.*—mung⁴ (mêng⁴), 11, 6; v.—tsou⁴ mung⁴ (mêng⁴), 12, 33.
 402. Drink, *v.*—yin³, 8, 10; 38, 58; ho¹, 38, 58.
 403. Driver, *n.*—k'ai¹-ch'ê¹-ti⁰, 48, 20.
 404. Dry (not wet), *adj.*—kan¹, 81, 14; v. kan¹, 81, 14.
 405. Duck, *n.*—ya¹, 37, 32.
 406. During, *prep.*—tang⁴, 29, 21.
 407. Duster, *n.*—mo³-pu⁴, 53, 8.
 408. Dwell, *v.*—chu⁴, 51, 22.
 409. Dysentery, *n.*—li⁴-chi⁰, 60, 32.

E

410. Each, *adj.*—ko⁴, 21, 39; mei³, 71, 26; 100, 39; each man, mei³ko⁴jên².
 411. Ear, *n.*—êrh³-to⁰, 34, 10-11.
 412. Earth, *n.*—ti⁴, 74, 1.
 413. East, *n.*—tung¹, 84, 1; eastern region, tung¹-fang¹, 84, 1.
 414. Easy, *adj.*—yung² (pron. jung²)-i⁰, 21, 29-30.

415. Eat, *v.*—ch'i¹ (ch'ih¹), 8, 9.
 416. Eclipse, *n.*—shih², 131, 33.
 417. Economics, *n.*—ching¹-chi⁴-hsüeh², 106, 51.
 418. Economy, *n.*—ching¹-chi⁴, 112, 57.
 419. Education, *n.*—chiao⁴-yü⁰, 116, 23.
 420. Education Minister, *n.*—chiao⁴-yü⁰-pu⁴-chang³, 116, 23.
 421. Egg, *n.*—tan⁴-luân³, 37, 26-27.
 422. Egg (hen's), *n.*—chi¹-tan⁴, 37, 29.
 423. Egypt, *n.*—ai¹-chi², 51, 14.
 424. Eight, *n. adj.*—pa¹, 4, 6.
 425. Elder brother, *n.*—ko¹-ko⁰, 111, 33.
 426. Elder sister, *n.*—chie³ (chieh³)-chie⁰ (chieh⁰), 3, 20.
 427. Elect, *v.*—hsüan²-chü³, 110, 19.
 428. Election, *n.*—hsüan²-chü³, 110, 19.
 429. Electric fan, *n.*—tien⁴-shan⁴, 82, 9.
 430. Electric lift, *n.*—tien⁴-t'i¹, 82, 5.
 431. Electric light bulb, *n.*—tien⁴-têng¹-p'ao⁴, 82, 10.
 432. Electricity, *n.*—tien⁴, 47, 12.
 433. Elephant, *n.*—hsiang⁴, 88, 8.
 434. Embassy, *n.*—ta⁴-shih²-kuan³, 117, 27.
 435. Emperor, *n.*—huang²-ti⁴, 115, 4.
 436. Empire, *n.*—ti⁴-kuo², 115, 6.
 437. Empress, *n.*—huang²-hou⁴, 115, 5.
 438. Enclose, *v.*—fu⁴-shang⁴, 142, 22.
 439. Encroach upon, *v.*—ch'in¹, 112, 48.
 440. Endorse (to sign one's name), *v.*—ch'ien¹, 64, 28; 112, 54.
 441. Enemy, *n.*—ti²-jên², 74, 13.
 442. Energy, *n.*—nêng²-li⁴, 18, 1-2.
 443. England, *n.*—ying¹-kuo⁰, 51, 5.
 444. English (language), *n.*—ying¹-wên², 63, 7.
 445. Enjoy, *v.*—hsiang³, 71, 31.
 446. Enlarge (as photograph), *v.*—fang⁴-ta⁴, 85, 20.
 447. Enter, *v.*—chin⁴, 64, 24.
 448. Entertain, *v.*—tai⁴, 86, 37.
 449. Envelope, *n.*—fêng¹-t'ao⁴, 47, 10.
 450. Epidemic, *adj.*—liu²-hsing², 60, 37-38.
 451. Epidemics, *n.*—wên¹-ping⁴, 60, 44.
 452. Equal, *adj.*—p'ing²-têng³, 110, 26.
 453. Equality, *n.*—p'ing²-têng³, 110, 26.
 454. Eraser, *n.*—ts'a¹-tzu⁰, 80, 7.
 455. Escape, *v.*—t'ao²-tsou³, 18, 21-22.
 456. Essay, *n.*—wên²-chang⁰, 63, 6; an essay, i¹-p'ien¹ wên²-chang⁰, 63, 6.
 457. Et cetera (etc.)—têng³-têng³-ti⁰, 61, 64.
 458. Europe, *n.*—ou¹-chou¹, 99, 25.
 459. Even, *adj.*—shuang¹, 95, 36.
 460. Evening, *n.*—wan³, 27, 42.
 461. Every, *adj.*—ko⁴, 21, 39; mei³, 71, 26; 100, 39.
 462. Everybody, *n.*—ko⁴ jên², 85, 30.
 463. Everyday, *n.*—t'ien¹-t'ien¹, 24, 7; mei³-t'ien¹, 71, 27.
 464. Examination, *n.*—k'ao³-shih⁴, 63, 1.
 465. Examination (oral), *n.*—k'ou³-shih⁴, 63, 3.
 466. Examination (written), *n.*—pi³-shih⁴, 63, 2.
 467. Examination paper, *n.*—chüan⁴-tzu⁰, 63, 5.
 468. Examine (to inspect), *v.*—chien³-ch'a², 67, 14.



469. Except, *conj.*—ch'u² liao⁰, 29, 19.
 470. Exchange, *v.*—huan⁴, 76, 39.
 471. Excuse, *n.*—t'o¹-tz'u⁴, 136, 14.
 472. Exercise book, *n.*—pên³-tzü⁰, 53, 3.
 473. Experience, *n.*—ching¹-yen⁴, 141, 8.
 474. Extra, *adj.*—jun⁴, 131, 32.
 475. Extravagant, *adj.*—shô¹-ch'ih⁰, 141, 3.
 476. Eye, *n.*—yen³-ching⁰, 34, 7-8.

F

477. Face, *n.*—mien⁴, 34, 4; mien⁴-k'ung³, 34, 4-5; lien³, 70, 7; 132, 44.
 478. Factory, *n.*—kung¹-ch'ang³, 126, 48.
 479. Fair (just), *adj.*—kung¹-p'ing⁰, 125, 35.
 480. Fair (weather), *adj.*—ch'ing², 57, 14.
 481. Fall, *v.*—to⁴, 79, 17; 91, 62; tieh⁴, 91, 61.
 482. False, *adj.*—fei¹, 21, 36; hsü¹, 143, 38.
 483. Fame, *n.*—ming², 40, 17; famous, *adj.*—yu³ (to have) ming².
 484. Familiar, *adj.*—shu², 131, 31.
 485. Family, *n.*—chia¹, 11, 7.
 486. Famine, *n.*—chi¹-chin⁴, 119, 69.
 487. Far, *adj.*—yüan³, 21, 38.
 488. Farmer, *n.*—nung²-fu¹, 95, 40.
 489. Fascism, *n.*—fa⁴-hsi¹-szü¹-ti⁴-chu³-i⁴, 110, 14.
 490. Fat (of animals), *n. adj.*—fei², 75, 28.
 491. Fat (salary), *adj.*—hou⁴, 118, 53.
 492. Father, *n.*—fu⁴-ch'in⁰, 3, 4.
 493. Father-in-Law, *n.*—(husband's father) kung¹-kung⁰, 111, 35; (wife's father) chang⁴-jên⁰; yüeh⁴-fu⁴; yüeh⁴-chang⁴, 111, 36.
 494. Fear, *v.*—p'a⁴, 100, 43.
 495. February, *n.*—êrh⁴ yüeh⁴, 26, 14.
 496. Feel, *v.*—(the pulse) hao⁴, 61, 53; (with the hand) mo², 61, 55.
 497. Fertile, *adj.*—fei², 75, 28.
 498. Fever, *n.*—jê⁴, 60, 26; shao¹, 60, 27.
 499. Few, *adj.*—(some) hsieh¹ (sieh¹), 6, 9; (several) chi³, 6, 25; (not many) shao³, 6, 21; 45, 57.
 500. Fill (to insert with writing), *v.*—t'ien², 64, 26.
 501. Film, *n.*—(cinema) p'ien⁴-tzü⁰, 78, 16; (photographic) juan³-p'ien⁴, 85, 18.
 502. Finance, *n.*—ts'ai²-chêng⁴, 116, 22.
 503. Find, *v.*—chao³, 18, 23; 72, 42.
 504. Finger, *n.*—shou²-chih³, 34, 19.
 505. Finish, *v.*—wan², 18, 24; 54, 25; 72, 41; 107, 74.
 506. Fire, *n.*—huo³, 37, 44.
 507. First (in order), *adj.*—ti⁴ i¹, 4.
 508. First class, *n.*—t'ou²-têng³, 78, 13.
 509. First floor, *n.*—ti⁴-i¹-ts'êng²-lou², 82, 1.
 510. First tone, *n.*—yin¹-p'ing², 53, 11.
 511. Fish, *n.*—yü², 37, 24.
 512. Five, *n. adj.*—wu³, 4, 5.
 513. Flag, *n.*—ch'ü², 67, 31.
 514. Flatter, *v.*—a⁴, 125, 28.
 515. Flaw, *n.*—ch'üeh¹-tien³, 124, 15.
 516. Flour, *n.*—mien⁴, 36, 3.
 517. Flower, *n.*—hua¹, 31, 56.

518. Fly, *v.*—fei¹, 91, 63.
 519. Fog, *n.*—wu⁴, 57, 11.
 520. Follow, *v.*—kên¹, 18, 25.
 521. Fond of, *adj.*—hsi³-huan¹, 68, 46.
 522. Food (meals), *n.*—fan⁴, 36, 1.
 523. Food Minister, *n.*—liang²-shih²-pu⁴-chang³, 116, 25.
 524. Fool, *n.*—sha³-tzü⁰, 131, 28.
 525. Foolish, *adj.*—ch'un³, 75, 20.
 526. Foot (terminal part of leg), *n.*—chiao³, 34, 20.
 527. Football, *n.*—tsau²-ch'iu², 68, 42.
 528. For, *prep.*—kei³, 29, 6; t'i⁴, 29, 7; tai⁴, 29, 8; wei⁴, 6, 23; 29, 22.
 529. Forbid, *v.*—chin⁴-chih³, 135, 8.
 530. Force, *n.*—li⁴, 18, 2; *v.*—ch'iang³, 90, 52.
 531. Forget, *v.*—wang⁴-chi⁰, 18, 26-27.
 532. Forgive, *v.*—jao², 143, 36.
 533. Fork, *n.*—ch'a¹-tzü⁰, 94, 33.
 534. Fort, *n.*—p'ao⁴-t'ai², 67, 30.
 535. Fountain pen, *n.*—tzü⁴-lai²-shui²-pi³, 80, 3; kang¹-pi³, 136, 25.
 536. Four, *n. adj.*—szü⁴ (ssü⁴), 4, 4.
 537. Fourth tone, *n.*—ch'ü⁴-shêng¹, 53, 14.
 538. Fowl, *n.*—chi¹, 37, 28.
 539. Fox, *n.*—hu²-li⁰, 89, 21.
 540. France, *n.*—fa⁴-kuo⁰, 51, 6.
 541. Fresh, *adj.*—hsien¹, 131, 20.
 542. Friday, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-wu³; hsing¹-ch'ü²-wu³, 26, 11.
 543. Friend, *n.*—p'êng²-yu⁰, 3, 29.
 544. Frog, *n.*—ha²-ma⁰, 89, 24.
 545. From, *prep.*—ts'ung², 29, 18; yu², 81, 15; 119, 64.
 546. Front, *adj.*—ch'ien², 31, 51; *adv.*—ch'ien²-t'ou⁰, 31, 51-52.
 547. Frugality, *n.*—chien³, 153, 20-21.
 548. Fruit, *n.*—kuo³-tzü⁰, 38, 55.
 549. Fuel, *n.*—ch'ai², 37, 46.
 550. Fulfil, *v.*—ying¹, 142, 20.
 551. Full, *adj.*—man³, 57, 15.
 552. Further, *adj. adv.*—yu⁴, 107, 78.
 553. Future, *n. adj.*—chiang¹-lai², 27, 38-39.

G

554. Garden, *n.*—yüan², 31, 57.
 555. Garlic, *n.*—suan⁴, 93, 16.
 556. Genuine, *adj.*—ti⁴-tao⁴, 54, 28.
 557. Geography, *n.*—ti⁴-li³-hsüeh², 105, 43.
 558. Geology, *n.*—ti⁴-chih²-hsüeh², 105, 44.
 559. Geometry, *n.*—chi³-ho²-hsüeh², 105, 38.
 560. Germany, *n.*—tê²-kuo⁰, 51, 7.
 561. Get, *v.*—tê², 147, 7.
 562. Ginger, *n.*—chiang¹, 94, 17.
 563. Girl, *n.*—nü³-tzü⁰, 3, 17; nü³-hai², 136, 19.
 564. Give, *v.*—kei³, 9, 37; (to present to) sung⁴, 137, 31; (trouble to) lao², 41, 32.
 565. Go, *v.*—ch'ü⁴, 8, 1; yu², 72, 35.
 566. God, *n.*—t'ien¹; shên², 99, 15.
 567. Goddess, *n.*—nü³-shên², 99, 16.
 568. Gold, *n.*—chin¹, 43, 1.



569. Good, *adj.*—hao³, 20, 1; (salary) hou⁴, 118, 53.
 570. Good-looking, *adj.*—p'iao¹-liang², 20, 4-5.
 571. Goose, *n.*—o², 37, 31.
 572. Governor, *n.*—shêng²-chu³-hsi², 102, 1.
 573. Governor-General, *n.*—tsung³-tu¹, 117, 37.
 574. Grammar, *n.*—wên²-fa³, 63, 9.
 575. Gramophone, *n.*—hua⁴-hsia²-tzū⁰, 78, 1.
 576. Granddaughter, *n.*—(son's daughter) sun¹-nū³, 130, 3; (daughter's daughter) wai⁴-sun¹-nū³, 130, 5.
 577. Grandfather, *n.*—(on father's side) tsu³-fu⁴, 3, 27; (on mother's side) wai⁴-tsu³-fu⁴.
 578. Grandmother, *n.*—(on father's side) tsu²-mu³, 3, 28; (on mother's side) wai⁴-tsu²-mu³.
 579. Grandson, *n.*—(son's son) sun¹-tzū⁰, 130, 2; (daughter's son) wai⁴-sun¹-tzū⁰, 130, 5.
 580. Grape, *n.*—p'u²-t'ao⁰, 93, 2.
 581. Grass, *n.*—ts'ao³, 24, 19.
 582. Great, *adj.*—ta⁴, 11, 14; 20, 3.
 583. Green, *n. adj.*—ch'ing¹ (ts'ing¹), 31, 62; 95, 50.
 584. Ground, *n.*—ti⁴, 82, 4.
 585. Ground floor, *n.*—ti⁴-hsia⁴-ti⁰-i¹-ts'ōng², (lou²-hsia⁴), 82, 4.
 586. Grow, *v.*—shêng¹; fa¹-shêng¹, 112, 56.
 587. Guest, *n.*—k'ê⁴ (k'o⁴), 85, 28.
 588. Guide, *v.*—tai⁴, 100, 42.
 589. Gum (dental), *n.*—ya²-ch'uang²-tzū⁰, 70, 13.
 590. Gun, *n.*—ch'iang¹, 67, 21.

H

591. Hail, *n.*—pao²-tzū⁰, 57, 8.
 592. Hair, *n.*—(on head) t'ou²-fa⁰, 34, 3.
 593. Hair-clipper, *n.*—t'ui¹-tzū⁰, 71, 19.
 594. Half, *n.*—pan⁴, 4, 16.
 595. Hall (large room), *n.*—t'ang², 11, 11.
 596. Hand, *n.*—(human) shou³, 34, 18.
 597. Hand over, *v.*—ti⁴, 48, 31; sung⁴, 137, 31.
 598. Hang (to suspend), *v.*—tiao⁴, 86, 38.
 599. Happen, *v.*—fa¹-shêng¹, 112, 56.
 600. Happy, *adj.*—k'uai⁴-lo⁰, 100, 37.
 601. Hard, *adj.*—chien⁴-lao², 75, 22; ying⁴, 75, 23.
 602. Hardly (scarcely), *adv.*—han³, 91, 65.
 603. Hare, *n.*—t'u⁴-tzū⁰, 89, 23.
 604. Hat, *n.*—mao⁴-tzū⁰, 45, 35.
 605. Hate, *v.*—hên⁴, 18, 28.
 606. Have, *v.*—yu³, 2, 11.
 607. Hawk, *n.*—chun³, 90, 39.
 608. He, *pron.*—t'a¹, 1, 4.
 609. Head, *n.*—t'ou², 34, 2.
 610. Headache, *n.*—t'ou²-t'êng², 60, 25.
 611. Head of the Department, *n.*—hsi⁴-chu³-jên⁴, 63, 11.
 612. Head master (of a school), *n.*—hsiao⁴-chang³, 102, 2.
 613. Health, *n.*—chien⁴-k'ang¹, 132, 40.

614. Health Minister, *n.*—wei⁴-shêng¹-pu⁴-chang³, 116, 24.
 615. Healthy, *adj.*—k'ang¹-chien⁴, 132, 40.
 616. Hear, *v.*—t'ing¹, 18, 29.
 617. Heart, *n.*—hsin¹, 23, 1.
 618. Heaven, *n.*—t'ien¹, 24, 3.
 619. Heavy, *adj.*—chung⁴, 124, 21.
 620. Help, *v.*—pang¹, 19, 30; pang¹-tsao⁴, 19, 30-31.
 621. Here, *adv.*—chê⁴-li⁰, 6, 7.
 622. Hero, *n.*—ying¹-hsiung², 126, 53.
 623. High, *adj.*—kao¹, 20, 11.
 624. High school, *n.*—chung¹-hsüeh², 102, 7.
 625. Himself, *pron.*—t'a¹-tzū⁰-chi³, 1, 9.
 626. Hinduism, *n.*—yin⁴-tu⁰-chiao⁴, 98, 2.
 627. His, *pron.*—t'a¹-ti⁰, 1, 8.
 628. History, *n.*—shih³, 63, 10; li⁴-shih³, 106, 54.
 629. Hit, *v.*—ta³, 54, 19.
 630. Hoist (the flag), *v.*—shêng¹, 118, 50.
 631. Home, *n.*—chia¹, 11, 7.
 632. Home-guard, *n.*—t'uan², 117, 38.
 633. Home Minister, *n.*—nei⁴-wu⁴-pu⁴-chang³, 116, 21.
 634. Honest, *adj.*—ch'êng²-shih⁰, 131, 22.
 635. Honey, *n.*—fêng¹-mi⁴, 93, 11.
 636. Honorary, *adj.*—ming²-yü⁴, 143, 37.
 637. Honorary degree (academic), *n.*—ming²-yü⁴-hsüeh²-wei⁴, 143, 37.
 638. Honourable, *adj.*—kuei⁴, 41, 22.
 639. Hope, *n. v.*—hsi¹-wang⁴, 19, 32-33; hopeful, *adj.*—yu³ (= to have)—hsi¹-wang⁴; hopeless, *adj.*—mei³ (= not)—hsi¹-wang⁴.
 640. Horse, *n.*—ma³, 88, 9.
 641. Hospital, *n.*—i¹-yüan⁴, 59, 8.
 642. Host, *n.*—chu³, 85, 29.
 643. Hot, *adj.*—jê⁴, 24, 20; 60, 26.
 644. Hotel, *n.*—lū²-kuan³, 37, 47-48.
 645. Hour—tien³-chung¹, 27, 40.
 646. House, *n.*—fang²-tzū⁰, 38, 51.
 647. How, *adv.*—tsên³-ma⁰, 6, 18; 30, 41-42; chi³, 40, 14.
 648. How many, to¹ shao³, 6, 22.
 649. Hundred, *n.*—pai³, 4, 12.
 650. Hungry, *adj.*—o⁴, 38, 56; hunger, *n.*—o⁴.
 651. Hurried, *adj.*—chi², 126, 54.
 652. Husband, *n.*—chang⁴-fu⁰, 40, 1-2.
 653. Hypocrisy, *n.*—chia³-mao⁴, 110, 17.

I

654. I, *pron.*—wo³, 1, 1.
 655. Ice, *n.*—ping¹, 57, 10.
 656. Idea, *n.*—i⁴, 80, 2.
 657. Idle (lazy), *adj.*—lan³-to⁴, 75, 33.
 658. If, *conj.*—chia²-shih³, 30, 36-37; yao⁴-shih⁴, 54, 31.
 659. Illness, *n.*—ping⁴, 62, 14.
 660. Illumine, *v.*—chao⁴, 83, 21.
 661. Illustrated magazine, *n.*—hua⁴-pao⁴, 71, 25.
 662. Impatient, *adj.*—chi², 126, 54.
 663. Implore, *v.*—ch'iu², 12, 31.



664. Important, *adj.*—chi², 75, 31;
chin³-yao⁴, 75, 32.
665. Impossible, *adj.*—pu⁴-hsing², 106,
60.
666. In, *prep.*—tsai⁴, 6, 29.
667. Inaugurate, *v.*—k'ai¹-mu⁴, 119, 60.
668. Inconvenient, *adj.*—pu⁴-fang¹-
p'ien⁴, 54, 30.
669. Increase, *n. v.*—tseng¹-chia¹, 112,
43.
670. In detail, *adv.*—hsiang², 61, 63.
671. India, *n.*—yin⁴-tu⁰, 51, 1.
672. Infectious, *adj.*—ch'uan²-jan³, 61,
47-48.
673. Influenza, *n.*—liu²-hsing²-ch'uan²-
jan²-ping⁴, 60, 37-41.
674. Injection (medicine), *n.*—i¹-chên¹,
59, 12.
675. Ink, *n.*—mo⁴, 80, 4.
676. Inoculation, *n.*—chu⁴-shê⁴, 59,
13-14.
677. Inside, *n. adj. adv. prep.*—li³-t'ou⁰,
6, 17; 29, 16; li³-mien⁰, 41, 37-
38; li³, 107, 66.
678. Insist, *v.*—ch'iang³, 90, 52.
679. Inspect, *v.*—chien³-ch'a², 67, 14;
yüeh⁴, 120, 83.
680. Inspector of Police, *n.*—ching²-
chang³, 66, 4.
681. Inspector of Schools, *n.*—shih⁴-
hsüeh²-yüan², 102, 9.
682. Instruct (order, direction), *v.*—
hsün⁴, 107, 73.
683. Intelligent, *adj.*—ts'ung¹-ming⁰,
131, 29.
684. Interest (profit), *n.*—hsi², 158, 55.
685. Interesting, *adj.*—ch'ü⁴, 21, 34.
686. Introduce, *v.*—chieh⁴-shao⁴, 141, 6.
687. Introduction, *n.*—chieh⁴-shao⁴,
141, 6; (preface) hsü⁴; hsü⁴-yen²,
141, 7.
688. Invade, *v.*—fan⁴, 112, 49.
689. Invite, *v.*—ch'ing³, 9, 38.
690. Iron, *n.*—t'ieh³, 43, 3.
691. Island, *n.*—tao³; hai²-tao³, 99, 26.
692. It, *pron.*—t'a¹, 1, 6.

J

693. January, *n.*—chêng¹ yüeh⁴, 26, 13.
694. Japan, *n.*—jih⁴-pên³, 51, 15.
695. Java, *n.*—chao³-wa¹, 51, 16.
696. Journey, *n.*—lü³-hsing², 74, 8.
697. Judge, *n.*—fa³-kuan¹, 125, 31.
698. Judgment (legal), *n.*—p'an⁴-chüeh²,
125, 32.
699. July, *n.*—ch'i² yüeh⁴, 26, 19.
700. Jump, *n. v.*—t'iao⁴, 61, 59.
701. June, *n.*—liu⁴ yüeh⁴, 26, 18.
702. Jury, *n.*—p'ei²-shên³-yüan², 125,
33.
703. Just, *adj.*—kung¹-p'ing⁰, 125, 35;
adv.—(just now) ts'ai², 125, 39;
(exactly) kang¹-kang¹, 76, 43.

K

704. Keep, *v.*—ts'un², 148, 20.
705. Key, *n.*—yao⁴-shih⁰, 81, 12.
706. Kick, *v.*—t'p'1, 68, 47.
707. Kill, *v.*—sha¹, 136, 26.

708. Kind, *n.*—(sort) chung³, 68, 36.
709. King, *n.*—kuo²-wang², 115, 1.
710. Kingdom, *n.*—wang²-kuo², 115, 3.
711. Kitchen, *n.*—ch'u²-fang², 38, 50-51.
712. Kite (bird) *n.*—niao³-yüan¹, 89, 36.
713. Knife, *n.*—tao¹-tzü⁰, 37, 38; 94, 34.
714. Knock, *v.*—ch'iao¹, 32, 67.
715. Know, *v.*—chih¹-tao⁰, 8, 27; jên⁴,
137, 44.
716. Knowledge, *n.*—(learning) hsüeh²-
shih⁴, 106, 58; hsüeh²-wên⁴, 126,
51; (general) chih¹-shih⁰ 141, 5.

L

717. Labour Party, *n.*—kung¹-tang³,
109, 6.
718. Lake, *n.*—hu², 48, 28.
719. Lamp, *n.*—têng¹, 82, 7.
720. Land, *n.*—ti⁴, 74, 1.
721. Landscape, *n.*—shan¹-shui³, 84, 11.
722. Language, *n.*—(spoken) hua⁴, 47,
15; yü³-yen², 105, 48; (written)
wên², 63, 6.
723. Large, *adj.*—ta⁴, 20, 3.
724. Last year, *n.*—ch'ü⁴-nien⁰, 24, 13.
725. Late, *adj. adv.*—wan³, 27, 42;
chih², 131, 30.
726. Laugh, *v.*—hsiao⁴, 8, 17.
727. Lavatory (latrine), *n.*—mao²-fang⁰,
135, 4.
728. Lavish, *adj.*—shê¹-ch'ih⁰, 141, 3.
729. Law, *n.*—fa³, 54, 18.
730. Lead (metal), *n.*—ch'ien¹, 11, 17;
43, 5; *v.*—yin²-ch'j³, 111, 28.
731. Leader, *n.*—ling³-hsiu⁴, 110, 16.
732. Lead pencil, *n.*—ch'ien¹-pi³, 11,
21.
733. Leaf (of a tree), *n.*—yeh⁴-tzü⁰, 94,
32.
734. Leap, *v.*—t'iao⁴, 61, 59.
735. Leap year, *n.*—jun⁴ nien², 133, 21.
736. Learn, *v.*—hsüeh², 11, 4.
737. Learned, *adj.*—yu³-hsüeh²-wên⁴,
126, 52.
738. Learning, *n.*—hsüeh²-wên⁴, 126, 51.
739. Leather, *n.*—p'i², 45, 36.
740. Leave (of absence), *n.*—chia⁴,
120, 84.
741. Leave (to go from an indicated
place), *v.*—li², 19, 34.
742. Lecture, *n. v.*—chiang²-yen³; yen³-
shuo¹, 103, 12.
743. Left, *adj.*—tso³, 61, 50.
744. Leftist party, *n.*—tso³-p'ai⁴, 110,
15.
745. Leg, *n.*—chiao³, 34, 20.
746. Legislative assembly, *n.*—li⁴-fa³-
yüan⁴, 123, 3.
747. Lemon, *n.*—hsiang¹-t'ao², 93, 8.
748. Lemonade, *n.*—hsiang¹-t'ao²-shui³,
93, 9.
749. Lend, *v.*—chieh⁴ (tsieh⁴), 19, 35.
750. Lenient, *adj.*—k'uan¹, 135, 12.
751. Lens, *n.*—ching⁴-t'ou⁰, 85, 19.
752. Leopard, *n.*—pao⁴-tzü⁰, 88, 6.
753. Lessen, *v.*—chien³, 4, 18.
754. Lesson, *n.*—k'o⁴, 53, 7.
755. Lest, *conj.*—(for fear that) k'ung³-
p'a⁴, 30, 38-39.
756. Let (to allow), *v.*—jang⁴, 76, 42.

757. Letter, *n.*—*hain*⁴, 47, 6; (alphabet) *tzü*⁴, 11, 10.
758. Letter box, *n.*—*hain*⁴-*hsiang*¹, 47, 8.
759. Lettuce, *n.*—*shêng*¹-*ts'ai*⁴, 36, 18.
760. Levy, *v.*—*ch'ou*¹, 124, 23.
761. Liberal, *adj.*—*k'uan*¹, 135, 12.
762. Liberty, *n.*—*tzü*⁴-*yu*², 111, 39.
763. Library, *n.*—*t'u*²-*shu*¹-*kuan*³, 63, 13.
764. Library card, *n.*—*chieh*⁴-*shu*¹-*chêng*⁴, 64, 21.
765. Lichi (fruit), *n.*—*li*⁴-*chih*¹, 93, 7.
766. Life, *n.*—*shêng*¹, 19, 15; 23, 3; *shêng*¹-*ming*⁴, 74, 11.
767. Light, *adj.*—(not heavy) *juan*³, 75, 24; (not dark) *liang*⁴, 83, 18.
768. Lightning, *n.*—*shan*³, 57, 7.
769. Like, *adj.*—*ju*², 4, 19; *shih*⁴, 7, 12; 21, 35; *v.*—*ai*⁴, 19, 36; *hsi*³-*huan*⁰, 68, 46; 95, 52.
770. Lily, *n.*—*pai*³-*ho*²-*hua*¹, 94, 24.
771. Linguistics, *n.*—*yu*³-*yen*²-*hsüeh*², 105, 48.
772. Lion, *n.*—*shih*¹-*tzü*⁰, 88, 4.
773. Lip, *n.*—*ch'un*², 34, 12.
774. Listen, *v.*—*t'ing*¹, 8, 18.
775. Literature, *n.*—*wên*²-*hsüeh*², 103, 15.
776. Little, *adj.*—(small in size) *hsiao*³, 6, 20; (small in quantity) *shao*³, 45, 57.
777. Live, *v.*—*chu*⁴, 144, 1.
778. Lock, *n.*—*so*³-*t'ou*⁰, 80, 11.
779. Logic, *n.*—*lun*⁴-*li*³-*hsüeh*², 106, 52.
780. Long, *adj.*—*ch'ang*², 20, 9; (time) *chui*³, 41, 34; *adv.* (for a long time) *chui*³, 41, 34.
781. Long live—*wan*⁴-*sui*⁴, 109, 2.
782. Look after, *v.*—*kuan*³, 131, 21.
783. Look for, *v.*—*chao*³, 18, 23.
784. Look up, *v.*—*yang*³, 41, 35.
785. Lose, *v.*—*shih*¹, 118, 41.
786. Loss, *n.*—*sun*³-*shih*¹, 124, 17.
787. Lotus, *n.*—*lien*²-*hua*¹, 94, 25; *ho*²-*hua*¹, 94, 26.
788. Louse, *n.*—*shih*¹-*tzü*⁰, 89, 28.
789. Love, *n.*—*ai*⁴, 19, 36.
790. Lozenge, *n.*—*chü*³-*p'ien*⁴, 94, 22.
791. Lucid, *adj.*—*ch'ing*¹, 20, 17.
792. Luck, *n.*—*hsing*⁴-*yün*⁴; *yün*⁴-*ch'io*⁰, 144, 48.
793. Luggage, *n.*—*hsing*²-*li*⁰, 66, 12.
794. Lunch, *n.*—*wu*³-*fan*⁴, 84, 14.

M

795. Machine, *n.*—*chi*¹-*ch'it*⁴, 48, 23.
796. Machine gun, *n.*—*chi*¹-*kuan*¹-*ch'iang*¹, 67, 25.
797. Machinery, *n.*—*chi*¹-*ch'it*⁴, 48, 23.
798. Mad (insane), *adj.*—*fêng*³, 90, 46.
799. Madam, *n.*—*t'ai*⁴-*t'ai*⁰, 40, 10.
800. Magistrate, *n.*—(district) *hsien*⁴-*chih*¹-*shih*⁴; *hsien*⁴-*kuan*¹, 125, 29.
801. Magnifying glass, *n.*—*fang*⁴-*ta*⁴-*ching*⁴, 85, 21.
802. Mail, *n.*—*yu*²-*chien*⁴, 47, 4.
803. Maintain, *v.*—*shou*³, 124, 26.
804. Make, *n.*—*chih*⁴, 148, 27.

805. Make, *v.*—*tso*⁴, 8, 6; 12, 32; (protest) *t'i*²-*ch'u*⁰, 113, 60; to make a speech, *yan*³-*shuo*¹, 118, 46; to make an answer, (verbally) *hui*²-*hua*⁴, 118, 47; (by letter) *hui*²-*hain*⁴.
806. Malaria, *n.*—*yao*⁴-*chi*², 60, 28.
807. Malay, *n.*—*ma*³-*lai*², 113, 66.
808. Man, *n.*—*jên*², 3, 7.
809. Manage, *v.*—*pan*⁴, 44, 18.
810. Manager, *n.*—*ching*¹-*li*³, 44, 22-23.
811. Mango, *n.*—*mang*²-*küo*³, 93, 5.
812. Manifest, *v.*—*fa*¹, 61, 54.
813. Manner, *n.*—*yang*⁴, 125, 34.
814. Manufacture, *v.*—*chih*⁴-*tsao*⁴, 95, 53.
815. Many, *adj.*—*to*¹, 6, 19; 45, 57; *hsü*³-*to*¹, 83, 19.
816. Map, *n.*—*ti*⁴-*t'u*², 106, 56.
817. March (month), *n.*—*san*¹-*yüeh*⁴, 26, 15.
818. Market, *n.*—*shih*⁴, 43, 11.
819. Market rate, *n.*—*hang*²-*shih*⁴, 43, 11.
820. Marriage, *n.*—*chia*⁴-*hun*¹, 40, 6-7.
821. Marry, *v.*—(to take a husband) *chia*⁴, 40, 6; (to take a wife) *hun*¹, 40, 7.
822. Master of Arts (M.A.), *n.*—*wên*²-*k'o*¹-*shih*²-*shih*⁴, 103, 24.
823. Master of Science (M.Sc.), *n.*—*li*³-*k'o*¹-*shih*²-*shih*⁴, 104, 29.
824. Match (for fire), *n.*—*yang*²-*huo*³, 37, 45.
825. Materialism, *n.*—*wei*²-*wu*⁴-*chu*³-*i*⁴, 99, 31.
826. Maternal uncle, *n.*—*chui*⁴-*fu*⁰; *chui*⁴-*chui*⁰, 3, 25.
827. Maternal aunt, *n.*—*chui*⁴-*mu*³, 3, 26.
828. Mathematics, *n.*—*shu*⁴-*hsüeh*², 104, 35.
829. May, *n.*—(month) *wu*³-*yüeh*⁴, 26, 17; *v.*—(indicating possibility) *yeh*²-*hsü*³, 13, 4; (indicating permissibility) *k'o*²-*i*³, 131, 19.
830. Mayor, *n.*—*shih*⁴-*chang*³, 117, 40.
831. Mean, *v.*—*i*⁴-*szü*⁰, 110, 18.
832. Meaning, *n.*—*i*⁴ (or *i*⁴-*szü*⁰), 80, 2.
833. Measles, *n.*—*chên*³-*tzü*⁰, 60, 35.
834. Meat, *n.*—*ju*⁴ (jou⁴), 37, 25.
835. Medicine, *n.*—*yao*⁴, 59, 9.
836. Meet, *v.*—*hui*⁴, 41, 36; *hsiang*¹-*yü*⁴, 86, 35; *yü*⁴-*chien*⁰, 86, 36.
837. Meeting (conference), *n.*—*hui*⁴; *hui*⁴-*i*⁴; *t'an*²-*p'an*⁴, 119, 59.
838. Melt, *v.*—*hsiao*¹-*hua*⁴, 57, 19-20.
839. Member of the Parliament (M.P.), *n.*—*kuo*²-*hui*⁴-*i*⁴-*yüan*², 123, 2.
840. Memory, *n.*—*chi*⁴-*hsing*⁰, 106, 61.
841. Merchant, *n.*—*shang*¹-*jên*², 126, 50.
842. Metal, *n.*—*chin*¹, 43, 1.
843. Method, *n.*—*fa*³, 54, 18.
844. Midday, *n.*—*shang*³, 27, 41.
845. Middle, *adj.*—*chung*¹, 51, 2.
846. Milk, *n.*—(cow's) *niu*²-*nai*³, 36, 8.
847. Mill (factory), *n.*—*chih*⁴-*tsao*⁴-*ch'ang*³, 95, 41.
848. Mine (ores), *n.*—*k'uang*⁴, 43, 9.
849. Minister (cabinet post), *n.*—*pu*⁴-*chang*³, 116, 17.

850. Minister of Finance, *n.*—ts'ai²-chêng⁴-pu⁴-chang³, 116, 22.
 851. Minister of Foreign Affairs, *n.*—wai⁴-chia³-pu⁴-chang³, 116, 20.
 852. Ministry (office of cabinet official) *n.*—pu⁴, 116, 16.
 853. Ministry of Foreign Affairs, *n.*—wai⁴-chia³-pu⁴, 116, 19.
 854. Mirror, *n.*—ching⁴-tzü⁰, 71, 22.
 855. Miss, *n.*—(girl) hsiao³-chieh⁰, 40, 11-12.
 856. Mist, *n.*—wu⁴, 57, 11.
 857. Mister (Mr.), *n.*—hsien¹-shêng⁰, 11, 3; 40, 8-9.
 858. Mistress (Mrs.), *n.*—t'ai⁴-t'ai⁰, 40, 10.
 859. Mixture (medical), *n.*—yao⁴-shui³, 59, 10.
 860. Modern, *adj.*—hsin¹, 21, 33.
 861. Mohammedanism, *n.*—hui²-hui⁰-chia⁴ (hui²-chia⁴), 98, 3.
 862. Monday, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-i¹; hsing¹-ch'i²-i¹, 26, 7.
 863. Money, *n.*—ch'ien², 43, 12.
 864. Monkey, *n.*—hou²-tzü⁰, 89, 22.
 865. Month, *n.*—yüeh⁴, 24, 18.
 866. Moon, *n.*—yüeh⁴, 24, 18.
 867. Moreover, *adv.*—ping⁴-ch'ieh³, 64, 29; yu⁴, 107, 78.
 868. Morning, *n.*—tsao³-shang⁰, 31, 44.
 869. Mosquito, *n.*—wên²-tzü⁰, 89, 30.
 870. Mosquito net, *n.*—wên²-chang⁴; chang⁴-tzü⁰, 89, 31.
 871. Mother, *n.*—mu³-ch'in⁰, 3, 5.
 872. Motion (proposal), *n.*—i⁴-an⁴, 123, 9.
 873. Motion picture, *n.*—ying³-hsi⁴, 78, 5.
 874. Motorcar, *n.*—ch'i⁴-ch'ê¹, 48, 19.
 875. Mount, *v.*—ch'êng², 48, 35; (animal) ch'i², 90, 49.
 876. Mountain, *n.*—shan¹, 75, 14; hill, *n.*—hsiao³ (=small) shan¹.
 877. Mouse, *n.*—hsiao²-lao²-shu³, 89, 20.
 878. Mouth, *n.*—tsui³, 34, 6; k'ou³, 70, 8.
 879. Move, *v.*—(a resolution) t'i², 124, 11.
 880. Much, *adj.*—to¹, 6, 19; 45, 57.
 881. Multiply, *v.*—ch'êng², 143, 34.
 882. Municipal government, *n.*—shih⁴-chêng⁴-fu³, 123, 5.
 883. Municipality, *n.*—shih⁴-ch'ü¹, 123, 4.
 884. Must, *v.*—pi⁴, 18, 4; yao⁴, 18, 5; pi⁴-yao⁴, 18, 4-5; tei³, 18, 6; must not, pu⁴ tei³, 18, 8.
 885. Mutual, *adj.*—hu⁴, 112, 46.

N

886. Name, *n.*—(surname) hsing⁴, 40, 19; (personal) ming², 40, 17; (full name) hsing⁴-ming², 40, 20.
 887. Named, *adj.*—ming²-chia⁴, 40, 18.
 888. Narrow, *adj.*—hsia², 20, 13.
 889. Nation, *n.*—(country) kuo², 51, 2.
 890. National, *adj.*—kuo²-chia¹, 117, 34.
 891. National anthem, *n.*—kuo²-ko¹, 143, 29.
 892. National Cadet Corps (N.C.C.), *n.*—kuo²-chia¹ lu⁴-chün¹-hsüeh²-shêng⁰-tui⁴, 117, 34.
 893. National flag, *n.*—kuo²-ch'i², 118, 51.

894. National language, *n.*—kuo²-yü³, 143, 30.
 895. National library, *n.*—kuo²-chia¹ t'u²-shu¹-kuan³, 63, 14.
 896. Nationalist Party, *n.*—kuo²-min²-tang³, 109, 10.
 897. Native land, *n.*—fu⁴-mu³-kuo⁰, 51, 17.
 898. Navy, *n.*—hai³-chün¹, 67, 17.
 899. Near, *adv.*—chin⁴, 21, 37.
 900. Necessary, *adj.*—hsü¹-yao⁴, 75, 30.
 901. Needle, *n.*—chên¹, 45, 48.
 902. Negligible, *adj.*—pu²-chung⁴-yao⁴, 136, 28.
 903. Neigh, *v.*—ming², 90, 55.
 904. Nephew, *n.*—(brother's son) chih²-tzü⁰, 130, 8; (sister's son) wai⁴-shêng⁰, 130, 6.
 905. Nest (of a bird), *n.*—wo¹, 90, 43.
 906. Never, *adv.*—ts'ung²-lai²-mei², 79, 18; yung³-pu⁴, 86, 40.
 907. New, *adj.*—hsin¹, 21, 33.
 908. Newspaper, *n.*—pao⁴-chih³, 160, 1.
 909. Next year, *n.*—ming²-nien⁰, 24, 12.
 910. Niece, *n.*—(brother's daughter) chih²-nü⁰, 130, 9; (sister's daughter) wai⁴-shêng⁰-nü³, 130, 7.
 911. Night, *n.*—yeh⁴, 137, 41.
 912. Nine, *n.*—chiu³, 4, 9.
 913. No, *adv.*—pu⁴, 2, 12.
 914. Noble, *adj.*—kao¹, 20, 11.
 915. Nobody, *pron.*—mei²-yu⁰-jên², 130, 10.
 916. Nom-de-plume—pi³-ming², 41, 21.
 917. North, *n.*—pei³-fang¹, 84, 3.
 918. North-east, *n.*—tung¹-pei³, 84, 5.
 919. North-west, *n.*—hsi¹-pei³, 84, 7.
 920. Nose, *n.*—pi²-tzü⁰, 34, 9.
 921. Not, *adv.*—(with 'to be' verb) pu⁴, 2, 12; (with 'to have' verb) mei², 2, 13.
 922. Nothing, *n.*—mei²-yu³-shên²-ma⁰, 130, 12.
 923. Novel, *n.*—hsiao³-shuo¹, 64, 15.
 924. November, *n.*—shih²-i²-yüeh⁴, 27, 23.
 925. Now, *adv.*—chin¹, 24, 1; hsien⁴-tsai⁴, 27, 34-35; 45, 56.
 926. Nowhere, *adv.*—mei²-yu³-ti⁴-fang⁰, 130, 15.
 927. Number, *n.*—shu⁴, 48, 30; hao⁴-ma³, 54, 16.

O

928. Ocean, *n.*—yang², 48, 26.
 929. O'clock, *n.*—tien³-chung¹, 27, 27, 25.
 930. October, *n.*—shih²-yüeh⁴, 26, 22.
 931. Of course—tzü⁴-jan², 30, 26.
 932. Office, *n.*—(place where business is transacted) pan⁴-kung¹-t'ing¹, 44, 18-20.
 933. Officer (military), *n.*—chün¹-kuan¹, 67, 29.
 934. Oil, *n.*—yu², 36, 15; 151, 9.
 935. Old, *adj.*—(aged) lao³, 20, 8; (not new) chiu⁴, 158, 54.
 936. One, *n.*—i¹, 4, 1.
 937. Onion, *n.*—ts'ung¹-t'ou⁰, 93, 15.
 938. Only, *adv.*—chiu⁴-shih⁴, 30, 35; chih³, 30, 40; 76, 44; chin⁴-chin⁴, 76, 45.

939. On the contrary—*hsiang¹-fan³-ti⁰*, 100, 46.
 940. Open, *v.*—*k'ai¹*, 19, 38.
 941. Opinion, *n.*—*i⁴*, 80, 2; *i⁴-chien⁴*, 119, 68.
 942. Opportunity, *n.*—*chi¹-hui⁰*, 131, 25.
 943. Oppose, *v.*—*tui⁴*, 41, 28; *fan³-tui⁴*, 109, 12.
 944. Opposition, *n.*—*fan³-tui⁴*, 109, 12.
 945. Opposition Party, *n.*—*fan³-tui⁴-tang³*, 109, 12.
 946. Oppression, *n.*—*ya¹-chih⁴*, 111, 32.
 947. Or, *conj.*—*hai²*, 29, 2; *pu⁴-jan²*, 30, 29; *huo⁴*, 30, 32; *huo⁴-chê³*, 30, 32-33; *huo⁴-shih⁴*, 54, 32.
 948. Orange, *n.*—*chü²-tzü⁰*, 93, 4.
 949. Otherwise, *conj.*—*pu⁴-jan²*, 30, 29.
 950. Ought, *v.*—*ying¹-kai¹*, 68, 43; *ying¹-tang¹*, 135, 13.
 951. Out, *adv. prep.*—*wai⁴-t'ou⁰*, 29, 17; *ch'u¹*, 31, 53.
 952. Outside, *adj.*—*wai⁴-t'ou⁰*, 29, 17.

P

953. Pacify, *v.*—*ching⁴* (tsing⁴), 75, 29.
 954. Pact, *n.*—*hsieh²-ting⁴*, 112, 50.
 955. Pakistan, *n.*—*pa¹-chi¹-su¹-tan⁴*, 51, 11.
 956. Pants (trousers), *n.*—*ch'ên⁴-k'u⁴*, 44, 29.
 957. Paper, *n.*—*chih³*, 95, 42.
 958. Paper mill, *n.*—*tsao⁴-chih²-ch'ang³*, 95, 42.
 959. Parents, *n.*—*fu⁴-mu³-ch'in⁰*, 3, 6.
 960. Park, *n.*—*kung¹-yüan²*, 38, 53-54.
 961. Parliament, *n.*—*kuo²-hui⁴*, 123, 1.
 962. Participate, *v.*—*ts'an¹-chia¹*, 119, 62.
 963. Participation, *n.*—*ts'an¹-chia¹*, 119, 62.
 964. Pass (as an examination), *v.*—*chi²-ko²*, 64, 23.
 965. Passenger, *n.*—*ch'êng²-k'ê⁴*, 85, 28.
 966. Passport, *n.*—*hu⁴-chao⁴*, 67, 13.
 967. Past, *adj.*—*kuo⁴-ch'ü⁴*, 27, 36-37.
 968. Patient, *n.*—*ping⁴-jên²*, 59, 3.
 969. Pay, *v.*—*fu⁴*, 124, 24.
 970. Peace, *n.*—*ho²-p'ing²*, 74, 6.
 971. Peacock, *n.*—*k'ung²-ch'iao³*, 90, 41.
 972. Pen, *n.*—*pi³*, 11, 20.
 973. Pencil, *n.*—*ch'ien¹-pi³*, 11, 21.
 974. People, *n.*—*jên²-chia⁰*, 11, 8; *jên²-min²*, 100, 32.
 975. People's Party, *n.*—*min²-tang²*, 109, 5.
 976. Pepper, *n.*—*hu²-chiao¹*, 36, 22-23.
 977. Perceive, *v.*—*chüeh²*, 120, 81.
 978. Percentage (per cent), *n.*—*ch'êng²*, 143, 31.
 979. Perfect, *adj.*—*ch'üan²*, 54, 29.
 980. Perhaps, *adv.*—*yeh²-hsü³*, 137, 42.
 981. Persia, *n.*—*po¹-szü¹* (—*kuo⁰*), 51, 12.
 982. Personal, *adj.*—*szü¹-jên²*, 76, 41.
 983. Philology, *n.*—*yü³-yen²-hsüeh²*, 105, 48.
 984. Philosophy, *n.*—*chê²-hsüeh²*, 106, 53.
 985. Photograph, *n.*—*chao⁴-p'ien⁴*; *hsi-ang⁴-p'ien⁴*, 84, 16.

986. Physician, *n.*—*i¹-shêng⁰*, 59, 4-5; *tai⁴-fu⁰*, 59, 6-7.
 987. Physics, *n.*—*wu⁴-li³-hsüeh²*, 105, 39.
 988. Physiology, *n.*—*shêng¹-li³-hsüeh²*, 105, 42.
 989. Pickpocket, *n.*—*p'a²-shou⁰*, 136, 23.
 990. Pick up, *v.*—*na²-ch'i³ lai⁰*, 72, 37.
 991. Picture (painting), *n.*—*hua⁴*, 71, 25.
 992. Pig (hog), *n.*—*chu¹*, 97, 33.
 993. Pigeon, *n.*—*chiu¹*, 37, 34.
 994. Pill (tablet), *n.*—*yao⁴-wan²*, 59, 11.
 995. Pineapple, *n.*—*po¹-lo²-kuo³*, 93, 6.
 996. Pious, *adj.*—*ch'ien²-hain¹*, 100, 38.
 997. Pistol, *n.*—*shou³-ch'iang¹*, 67, 24.
 998. Place, *n.*—(region) *ti⁴-fang⁰*, 74, 2; *v.*—*ko¹*, 54, 24; 107, 70.
 999. Plague, *n.*—*wên¹-i⁴*, 61, 45.
 1000. Plant (herb), *n.*—*ts'ao³*, 24, 19.
 1001. Plaster (medicated), *n.*—*kao¹-yao⁴*, 60, 23.
 1002. Plate (dish), *n.*—*p'an²-tzü⁰*, 37, 37.
 1003. Platform, *n.*—*t'ai²*, 78, 11.
 1004. Platinum, *n.*—*pai²-chin¹*, 43, 7.
 1005. Play, *n.*—(drama) *hsi⁴-chü⁴*, 78, 7; *v.*—*wan²*, 8, 13; (as cards, balls) *ta³*, 68, 45; with, *nien³*, 83, 22.
 1006. Playing card, *n.*—*chih³-p'ai²*, 68, 38.
 1007. Please, *v.*—*ch'ing³*, 9, 38.
 1008. Pneumonia, *n.*—*fei⁴-yen²*, 60, 42.
 1009. Pocket, *n.*—*k'ou³-tai⁰*, 81, 13.
 1010. Poem, *n.*—*shih¹*, 103, 18.
 1011. Post, *n.*—*shih¹-jên²*, 103, 19.
 1012. Poetess, *n.*—*nü³-shih¹-jên²*, 103, 20.
 1013. Poetry, *n.*—*shih³*, 103, 18.
 1014. Police, *n.*—*ching³-ch'a²*, 66, 1.
 1015. Police station, *n.*—*ching³-ch'a²-chü²*, 66, 2.
 1016. Politics, *n.*—*chêng⁴-chih⁴-hsüeh²*, 105, 50.
 1017. Pond, *n.*—*shui³-ch'ih²-tzü⁰*, 94, 27.
 1018. Poor, *adj.*—*ch'iang²*, 20, 16.
 1019. Popular, *adj.*—*tê²-jên²-hsin¹* (ti⁰), 118, 43.
 1020. Post card, *n.*—*hsin⁴-p'ien⁴*, 47, 7.
 1021. Post office, *n.*—*yu²-chêng⁴-chü²*, 47, 1.
 1022. Post master, *n.*—*yu²-chü²-chang³*, 47, 2.
 1023. Postal peon (postman), *n.*—*yu²-ch'ai¹*, 43, 3.
 1024. Pot, *n.*—*hu²*, 37, 35.
 1025. Potato, *n.*—*ma³-ling²-shu³*, 94, 19.
 1026. Poverty, *n.*—*p'in²-k'u³*; *ch'iang²-k'u³*, 111, 40.
 1027. Powder, *n.*—*fên³*, 11, 19; 131, 36.
 1028. Power, *n.*—*li⁴*, 18, 2; *nêng²-li⁴*, 18, 1-2.
 1029. Pray, *v.*—*ch'iu²*, 12, 31; *tao³*, 41, 27.
 1030. Prayer, *n.*—*tao³*, 41, 27.
 1031. Preach, *v.*—*chiang³*, 12, 36.
 1032. Preface, *n.*—*hsü⁴*; *hsü⁴-yen²*, 141, 7.
 1033. Prefer, *v.*—*ning²*, 138, 48.
 1034. Prepare, *v.*—*yü⁴-pei⁴*, 148, 18.
 1035. Prescription, *n.*—*yao⁴-fang¹*, 60, 24.



1036. Present, *n.*—(present time) *hsien*⁴-*tsai*⁴, 27, 34-35; *v.*—(to submit) *ch'êng*²-*ti*⁴, 120, 77.
1037. Preserve, *v.*—*pao*³, 148, 19.
1038. Preside, *v.*—*chu*³-*ch'ih*², 119, 61.
1039. President, *n.*—(of a country) *tsung*³-*ts'ai*²; *ta*⁴-*tsung*²-*t'ung*³, 115, 7; (of a college or university) *ta*⁴-*hsüeh*²-*hsiao*⁴-*chang*³, 115, 9; (of an association) *hui*⁴-*chang*³, 115, 10.
1040. Press, *v.*—(to extract juice, oil, etc.) *cha*⁴, 95, 54.
1041. Pretty, *adj.*—*p'iao*¹-*liang*⁴, 20, 4-5.
1042. Price, *n.*—*chia*⁴-*ch'ien*⁰, 44, 17.
1043. Primary school, *n.*—*hsiao*³-*hsüeh*², 102, 8.
1044. Prime Minister, *n.*—*shou*³-*hsiang*⁴, 116, 18.
1045. Principal (of a college), *n.*—*hsiao*⁴-*chang*³, 102, 2.
1046. Print, *v.*—*yin*⁴-*shua*¹, 80, 8.
1047. Printing machine (press), *n.*—*yin*⁴-*shua*¹-*chi*¹, 80, 9.
1048. Printed matter, *n.*—*yin*⁴-*shua*¹-*p'in*³, 80, 10.
1049. Prison, *n.*—*yü*⁴, 66, 10.
1050. Private, *adj.*—*szü*¹; *szü*¹-*jên*², 76, 41.
1051. Prize, *n.*—*chiang*²-*p'in*³, 135, 3.
1052. Professor, *n.*—*chiao*⁴-*shou*⁴, 102, 10.
1053. Profit, *n.*—*i*⁴-*ch'u*⁰, 124, 16.
1054. Prohibit, *v.*—*chin*⁴-*chih*³, 135, 8.
1055. Propose, *v.*—*t'i*², 124, 11.
1056. Prose, *n.*—*san*³-*wên*², 103, 15.
1057. Prose writer, *n.*—*san*³-*wên*²-*chia*¹, 103, 17.
1058. Prosperity, *n.*—*fan*²-*jung*², 111, 42.
1059. Protect, *v.*—*pao*³-*hu*⁰; *pao*³-*chang*⁴, 100, 40.
1060. Protection, *n.*—*pao*³-*hu*⁰; *pao*³-*chang*⁴, 100, 40.
1061. Protest, *n. v.*—*k'ang*⁴-*i*⁴, 113, 61.
1062. Province (administrative unit), *n.*—*shêng*³, 102, 1.
1063. Provincial government, *n.*—*shêng*³-*chêng*⁴-*fu*³, 116, 15.
1064. Psychology, *n.*—*hsin*¹-*li*³-*hsüeh*², 105, 47.
1065. Public, *adj.*—*kung*¹, 44, 19; 48, 21; *kung*¹-*kung*⁴, 48, 21.
1066. Publish, *v.*—*kung*¹-*pu*⁴, 106, 62.
1067. Pull, *v.*—*kou*⁴, 64, 27; *la*¹, 83, 20.
1068. Pulse, *n.*—*mai*⁴, 59, 22.
1069. Pungent, *adj.*—*la*⁴, 95, 48.
1070. Punkha, *n.*—*fêng*¹-*shan*⁴, 82, 13.
1071. Puppy, *n.*—*hsiao*²-*kou*³, 88, 17.
1072. Pare, *adj.*—*ch'ing*¹, 20, 17.
1073. Purple, *adj.*—*kan*⁴, 31, 65.
1074. Purpose, *n.*—*i*⁴, 80, 2.
1075. Put, *v.*—*fang*⁴, 19, 40; *ko*¹, 54, 24; 107, 70.
1076. Put off, *v.*—*t'uo*¹, 45, 47; (the light), *v.*—*kuan*¹ (*têng*¹), 82, 12.
1077. Put on, *v.*—*ch'uan*¹-*shang*⁰, 45, 45; *ch'uan*¹, 45, 46; (the light), *v.*—*k'ai*¹ (*têng*¹), 82, 11.

Q

1078. Quarter (fifteen minutes), *n.*—*k'o*⁴, 27, 28.
1079. Queen, *n.*—*wang*²-*hou*⁴, 115, 2.
1080. Question, *n.*—*t'i*²-*mu*⁴, 63, 4.
1081. Quickly, *adv.*—*k'uai*⁴, 61, 60.
1082. Quiet, *adj.*—*ching*⁴ (*tsing*⁴), 75, 29.
1083. Qur'an, *n.*—*k'o*³-*lan*², 98, 10.

R

1084. Radical (portions of Chinese characters), *n.*—*pu*⁴-*shou*³, 53, 15.
1085. Radio, *n.*—*wu*²-*hsien*⁴-*tien*⁴, 78, 3.
1086. Railway station, *n.*—*huo*³-*ch'ô*¹-*chan*⁴, 48, 18.
1087. Rain, *n.*—*yü*³, 57, 5.
1088. Raise, *v.*—*ch'i*³, 41, 29; 54, 21; 72, 37.
1089. Rapidly, *adv.*—*k'uai*⁴, 61, 60.
1090. Rat, *n.*—*lao*²-*shu*³, 89, 19.
1091. Rather, *adv.*—*ning*², 138, 48.
1092. Razor, *n.*—*kua*¹-*lien*³-*tao*¹, 71, 18.
1093. Reach, *v.*—*tao*⁴, 18, 17.
1094. Read, *v.*—*tu*², 12, 25.
1095. Ready, *adj.*—*chun*³-*pei*⁴, 137, 39.
1096. Reason, *n.*—*li*³-*yu*², 136, 16.
1097. Rebel, *v.*—*ni*⁴, 76, 38.
1098. Rebellion, *n.*—*ni*⁴, 76, 38.
1099. Receive, *v.*—*chieh*¹, 48, 32; *ling*³, 118, 52.
1100. Recklessly, *adv.*—*hu*², 41, 31.
1101. Reckon, *v.*—*suan*⁴, 45, 55.
1102. Recognize, *v.*—*jên*⁴-*shih*⁰, 9, 31; *jên*⁴, 137, 44.
1103. Record (of gramophone), *n.*—*p'ien*⁴-*tzü*⁰, 78, 2.
1104. Red, *adj.*—*hung*², 31, 59.
1105. Reflect (to illumine), *v.*—*chao*⁴, 83, 21.
1106. Refuse, *v.*—*chü*⁴-*chüeh*² (*tsüeh*²), 76, 37.
1107. Registrar (administrative officer of an educational institution), *n.*—*chu*⁴-*ts'ê*⁴-*ch'u*⁴-*chu*³-*jên*⁴, 102, 4.
1108. Relative (relation), *n.*—*ch'in*¹-*ch'i*⁰, 144, 46.
1109. Religion, *n.*—*tsung*¹-*chiao*⁴, 98, 1.
1110. Remember, *v.*—*chi*⁴-*tê*⁰, 54, 27; 141, 4.
1111. Remind, *v.*—*t'i*²-*hsing*³, 143, 32.
1112. Remove, *v.*—*hsiao*¹-*mieh*⁴, 112, 44.
1113. Repay, *v.*—*huan*², 29, 2.
1114. Reply, *v.*—*ta*²-*fu*⁰, 18, 15-16.
1115. Report, *n.*—*pao*⁴-*kao*⁴, 66, 9.
1116. Republican party, *n.*—*kung*⁴-*ho*²-*tang*³, 109, 8.
1117. Reputation, *n.*—*ming*²-*yü*⁴, 118, 42.
1118. Request, *v.*—*ch'ing*³, 9, 38.
1119. Resign, *v.*—*tz'ü*²-*chih*², 125, 30.
1120. Resignation, *n.*—*tz'ü*²-*chih*², 125, 30.
1121. Resist, *v.*—*fan*³-*k'ang*⁴, 76, 36.
1122. Resolution (formal adoption by vote), *n.*—*i*⁴-*chüeh*²-*an*⁴, 123, 8.
1123. Restaurant, *n.*—*ts'an*¹-*kuan*³, 38, 49.
1124. Restore, *v.*—*hui*¹-*fu*⁰, 120, 90.
1125. Return, *v.*—*hui*², 4, 20; 32, 66.

1126. Revolution, *n.*—ko²-ming⁴, 109, 1.
 1127. Revolve, *v.*—lun²-chuan⁴, 75, 19.
 1128. Revolver, *n.*—liu⁴-lun²-shih⁴-shou³-ch'iang¹, 67, 26; chuan⁴-lun²-shih⁴-shou³-ch'iang¹, 67, 27; or shou³-ch'iang¹.
 1129. Rhinoceros, *n.*—hsi¹-niu², 88, 7.
 1130. Rice, *n.*—(cooked) fan⁴, 36, 1; (uncooked) mi³, 36, 2.
 1131. Rich, *adj.*—fu⁴, 20, 15.
 1132. Rickshaw, *n.*—yang²-ch'ia¹, 85, 25.
 1133. Ride, *v.*—(to mount upon, as an animal, a carriage, a boat, etc.) ch'eng², 48, 35; (to be borne in a vehicle) tso⁴, 85, 32; (to mount upon, as an animal) ch'i², 90, 49.
 1134. Right, *adj.*—(yes) shih⁴, 21, 35; (toward the right hand) yu⁴, 61, 49; 95, 51; (correct) tui⁴, 119, 74.
 1135. Rinse, *v.*—(as the mouth) shu⁴, 72, 39.
 1136. Riot, *n.*—pao⁴-tung⁴; pao⁴-luan⁴, 110, 27.
 1137. Ripe, *adj.*—shu², 95, 49.
 1138. Rise, *v.*—(to go up) chi¹, 32, 70; (to get up) ch'i³, 41, 29; 54, 21; 72, 37; (as the temperature) fa¹, 61, 54; (to come up from the horizon, as the sun) ch'u¹, 85, 33.
 1139. River, *n.*—ho², 48, 29.
 1140. Road, *n.*—tao⁴-erh⁰, 8, 28; tao⁴, 63, 12; lu⁴, 74, 7.
 1141. Roam, *v.*—yu², 72, 35; yu²-li⁰, 90, 50.
 1142. Roar, *v.*—hou³-chiao⁴, 90, 48.
 1143. Robber, *n.*—ch'iang²-tao⁴, 136, 22.
 1144. Rock, *n.*—shih², 11, 18; 75, 15.
 1145. Room, *n.*—fang²-chien¹, 38, 52; t'ing¹, 44, 20; wu¹-tzü⁰, 82, 14.
 1146. Root, *n.*—pên³, 11, 15; (source) kên¹-pên³, 99, 19.
 1147. Rose, *n.*—mei²-kuoi⁴-hua¹, 94, 23.
 1148. Rouge, *n.*—yen¹-chih⁰, 131, 35.
 1149. Rub, *v.*—ts'a¹, 54, 22; 132, 43.
 1150. Rub out (rub off), *v.*—ts'a¹-ch'ü⁴, 54, 23.
 1151. Rub over, *v.*—ts'o¹-shang⁰, 72, 38.
 1152. Rubber, *n.*—hsiang⁴-p'i², 80, 6.
 1153. Rule (regulation), *n.*—kuei¹-chü⁰, 124, 19.
 1154. Run, *v.*—p'ao², 8, 24.
 1155. Russia, *n.*—o²-kuo⁰, 51, 4.

S

1156. Sacred, *adj.*—shêng⁴, 98, 11.
 1157. Safe, *adj.*—p'ing²-an¹, 75, 27.
 1158. Safety, *n.*—p'ing²-an¹, 75, 27.
 1159. Sailor, *n.*—shui²-shou³, 85, 27.
 1160. Salad, *n.*—shêng¹-ts'ai⁴, 36, 18.
 1161. Salary, *n.*—hsin¹-fêng⁴, 118, 54.
 1162. Salt, *n.*—yen², 36, 21.
 1163. Same, *adj.*—i²-yang⁴, 6, 15; t'ung², 29, 3.
 1164. Sample, *n.*—yang⁴, 125, 34.
 1165. Saturday, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-liu⁴; hsing¹-ch'i²-liu⁴, 26, 12.
 1166. Sauce, *n.*—chiang⁴-yu², 36, 15.
 1167. Scenery, *n.*—shan¹-shui³, 84, 11.
 1168. School, *n.*—hsüeh²-t'ang², 11, 12.

1169. School mate, *n.*—t'ung²-ch'uang¹, 143, 45.
 1170. Science, *n.*—k'o¹-hsüeh², 103, 14.
 1171. Scissors, *n.*—chien²-tzü⁰, 71, 20.
 1172. Scold, *v.*—ma⁴, 137, 38.
 1173. Scorpion, *n.*—hsieh¹-tzü⁰, 89, 32.
 1174. Sea, *n.*—hai³, 48, 27.
 1175. Sealed letter, *n.*—fêng¹-hsin⁴, 47, 9.
 1176. Search, *v.*—ch'a², 54, 26.
 1177. Second, *adj.*—ti⁴-erh⁴, 4; *v.* (a resolution) fu⁴-i⁴, 124, 12.
 1178. Second class, *n.*—erh⁴-têng³, 78, 14.
 1179. Second floor, *n.*—ti⁴-erh⁴-ts'êng²-lou², 82, 2.
 1180. Second tone, *n.*—yang²-p'ing², 53, 12.
 1181. Secretariat, *n.*—mi⁴-shu¹-ch'u⁴, 125, 38.
 1182. Secretary, *n.*—mi⁴-shu¹, 125, 37.
 1183. Section (chapter of a book), *n.*—chang¹, 53, 6.
 1184. Secular, *adj.*—fan²-su², 120, 93.
 1185. See, *v.*—chien⁴, 4, 21; k'an⁴-chien⁰, 8, 5.
 1186. Seek, *v.*—chao³, 18, 23; 72, 42.
 1187. Seize, *v.*—la¹, 83, 20; chua¹, 131, 27.
 1188. Seldom, *adv.*—han³, 91, 65.
 1189. Self, *n.*—tzü⁴-chi³, 1, 9.
 1190. Sell, *v.*—mai⁴, 8, 19.
 1191. Send, *v.*—(to dispatch by mail) chi⁴, 48, 34; (transmit, as telegram) ta³, 61, 57; sung⁴, 137, 31.
 1192. Sense, *n.*—chüeh², 120, 81.
 1193. Sentence, *n.*—chü⁴-tzü⁰, 135, 10.
 1194. September, *n.*—chü³-yüeh⁴, 26, 21.
 1195. Set, *v.*—(as the sun) to⁴, 79, 17; (to go down) lao⁴, 85, 34.
 1196. Settle, *v.*—ting⁴, 112, 47.
 1197. Seven, *n.*—adj.—ch'i¹, 4, 7.
 1198. Several, *adj.*—chi³, 6, 25; 27, 29.
 1199. Sew, *v.*—fêng², 45, 43.
 1200. Sew up, *v.*—fêng²-shang⁰, 45, 44.
 1201. Shampoo, *n.*—hsi³-t'ou², 71, 23.
 1202. Sharp, *adj.*—k'uai⁴, 22, 5.
 1203. Sharpen, *v.*—mo², 72, 40.
 1204. Shave, *v.*—kua¹, 71, 18.
 1205. She, *pron.*—t'a¹, 1, 5.
 1206. Sheep, *n.*—yang², 37, 30.
 1207. Shelf, *n.*—chia⁴-tzü⁰, 64, 17.
 1208. Shine, *v.*—chao⁴, 119, 67.
 1209. Ship, *n.*—ch'uan², 48, 24.
 1210. Shirt, *n.*—ch'ên⁴-shan¹, 44, 27-28.
 1211. Shoe, *n.*—hsieh²-tzü⁰, 45, 39.
 1212. Shop, *n.*—p'u⁴-tzü⁰, 44, 21.
 1213. Short, *adj.*—(in length) tuan³, 20, 10.
 1214. Should, *v.*—ying¹-kai¹, 68, 43; ying¹-tang¹, 135, 13.
 1215. Shut, *v.*—ho², 19, 37; 107, 69.
 1216. Shy, *adj.*—hai⁴-hsiu¹, 136, 18.
 1217. Sick, *adj.*—ping⁴, 59, 2.
 1218. Sign, *v.*—ch'ien¹, 64, 28; 112, 54.
 1219. Silver, *n.*—yin², 43, 2.
 1220. Since, *conj.*—chi⁴-shih⁴, 27, 45-46; chi⁴-jan², 30, 28.
 1221. Sing, *v.*—ch'ang⁴, 12, 34.
 1222. Sink, *v.*—to⁴, 79, 17; 91, 62.
 1223. Sir, *n.*—hsien¹-shêng⁰, 11, 3.
 1224. Sister, *n.*—chieh³-mei⁴ (mo⁴), 3, 19.



1225. Sit, *v.*—tso⁴, 9, 35; 49, 36.
 1226. Sit down, *v.*—tso⁴-hsia⁰, 9, 36.
 1227. Six, *adj.* *n.*—liu⁴, 4, 6.
 1228. Size, *n.*—ta⁴-hsiao³, 84, 10.
 1229. Sky, *n.*—t'ien¹-k'ung¹, 57, 3.
 1230. Skylight, *n.*—t'ien¹-ch'uang¹, 83, 17.
 1231. Slab, *n.*—pan³, 31, 55.
 1232. Slate pencil, *n.*—shih²-pi³, 11, 22.
 1233. Sleep, *v.*—shui⁴-chiao⁴, 71, 28.
 1234. Slow, *adj.*—man⁴, 22, 3.
 1235. Slowly, *adv.*—man⁴-man¹, 22, 4.
 1236. Small, *adj.*—hsiao³, 6, 20.
 1237. Smallpox, *n.*—t'ien¹-hua¹, 60, 36.
 1238. Smell, *v.*—hsiu⁴, 137, 43.
 1239. Smoke, *n.*—yen¹, 68, 33; *v.*—ch'ou¹, 68, 44; 135, 9.
 1240. Snake, *n.*—shé², 89, 25.
 1241. Snow, *n.*—hsüeh³, 57, 9.
 1242. Snuff, *n.*—pi²-yen¹, 68, 35.
 1243. So, *conj.*—so²-i³ (yi³), 30, 30-31.
 1244. Soap, *n.*—fei²-tsao⁴, 70, 3.
 1245. Soar, *v.*—hsiang², 90, 58.
 1246. Social, *adj.*—shé⁴-hui⁴, 109, 11.
 1247. Socialism, *n.*—shé⁴-hui⁴-chu³-i⁴, 110, 14, note.
 1248. Socialist party, *n.*—shé⁴-hui⁴-tang³, 109, 11.
 1249. Society, *n.*—shé⁴-hui⁴, 109, 11; hsieh²-hui⁴, 141, 1.
 1250. Sock, *n.*—wa⁴-tzü⁰, 45, 40.
 1251. Soda water, *n.*—ch'i⁴-shui³, 37, 42-43.
 1252. Soft, *adj.*—juan³, 75, 24.
 1253. Soil, *n.*—ti⁴, 74, 1.
 1254. Soldier, *n.*—ping¹, 67, 15.
 1255. Some, *adj.*—i⁴-hsieh¹ (sieh¹), 6, 12; chi³, 6, 25; to¹-shao³, 45, 57.
 1256. Son, *n.*—érh²-tzü⁰, 3, 12.
 1257. Song, *n.*—ko¹, 143, 29.
 1258. Son-in-law, *n.*—nü³-hsü⁰, 111, 34.
 1259. Soon, *adv.*—k'uai⁴, 22, 5.
 1260. Sooner or later, *adv.*—tsao²-wan³, tsao²-wan³-hui⁴, 31, 44-46.
 1261. Sound, *n.*—shêng¹, 53, 10.
 1262. Soup, *n.*—t'ang¹, 36, 20.
 1263. Sour, *adj.*—suan¹, 95, 46.
 1264. South, *n. adj.*—nan²-fang¹, 84, 4.
 1265. South-east, *n.*—tung¹-nan², 84, 6.
 1266. South-west, *n.*—hsi¹-nan², 84, 8.
 1267. Soviet Russia, *n.*—su¹-ngo² (o²), 120, 92.
 1268. Speak, *v.*—shuo¹, 12, 35; (by telephone) ta³, 61, 57.
 1269. Speaker, *n.*—(of the parliament or assembly) i⁴-chang³, 123, 7.
 1270. Spectacles, *n.*—yen³-ching⁴, 85, 22.
 1271. Speech, *n.*—(language) hua⁴, 107, 72.
 1272. Spend, *v.*—hua¹; fei⁴, 141, 2.
 1273. Spiritualism, *n.*—wei²-ling²-lun⁴, 100, 34.
 1274. Sponge, *n.*—hai³-mien², 70, 5.
 1275. Spoon, *n.*—ch'ih²-tzü⁰, 37, 39.
 1276. Spring, *n.*—(season) ch'un¹, 24, 8.
 1277. Spring season, *n.*—ch'un¹-t'ien⁰, 24, 8.
 1278. Squeeze, *v.*—cha⁴, 95, 54.
 1279. Stage, *n.*—(raised flooring of a theatre) hsi⁴-t'ai²; 78, 11; (platform) t'ai², 78, 11.
 1280. Staircase, *n.*—lou²-t'i¹, 82, 6.
 1281. Stamp, *n.*—(postage) yu²-p'iao⁴, 47, 5.
 1282. Stand, *v.*—chan⁴, 32, 68.
 1283. Star, *n.*—hsing¹, 26, 3.
 1284. Steal, *v.*—t'ou¹, 136, 24.
 1285. Steamer, *n.*—lun²-ch'uan², 85, 26.
 1286. Steel, *n.*—kang¹, 136, 25.
 1287. Stenographer, *n.*—su⁴-chi⁴-yüan², 126, 41.
 1288. Stethoscope, *n.*—t'ing¹-chên³-ch'i⁴, 59, 19-21.
 1289. Still, *adv.*—(yet) hai², 29, 2; ér², 119, 65.
 1290. Stone, *n.*—shih², 11, 18; 75, 15.
 1291. Stop, *v.*—chan⁴-chu⁰, 32, 68-69.
 1292. Storey, *n.*—ts'êng², 82, 1.
 1293. Story, *n.*—(tale) ku⁴-shih⁰, 80, 1.
 1294. Stove, *n.*—lu²-tzü⁰, 130, 17.
 1295. Strange, *adj.*—ch'i²-kuai¹, 75, 26; i⁴, 142, 17.
 1296. Strength, *n.*—li⁴, 18, 2.
 1297. Strike, *v.*—ch'iao¹, 32, 67; ta³, 54, 19.
 1298. Strong, *adj.*—ch'iang²-chuang¹, 20, 24-25; ch'iang², 111, 37.
 1299. Student, *n.*—hsüeh²-shêng⁰, 11, 5.
 1300. Study, *n.*—(a room to study in) shu¹-fang², 82, 15; *v.*—hsüeh², 11, 4; tu², 12, 25.
 1301. Stupid, *adj.*—ch'un³, 75, 20.
 1302. Submit, *v.*—ch'êng²-ti⁴, 120, 77.
 1303. Substantial, *adj.*—hou⁴, 118, 53.
 1304. Subtract, *v.*—chien³, 4, 18.
 1305. Succeed, *v.*—ch'êng²-kung¹, 76, 35; 132, 42.
 1306. Success, *n.*—ch'êng²-kung¹, 76, 35.
 1307. Successful, *adj.*—ch'êng²-kung¹, 76, 35.
 1308. Such, *adj.*—chê⁴-yang⁴, 6, 14.
 1309. Such as—hsiang², 61, 63.
 1310. Suck, *v.*—ch'ou¹, 135, 9.
 1311. Suddenly, *adv.*—hu¹-jan², 30, 27.
 1312. Suffer, *v.*—lao², 41, 32; nao⁴, 61, 51.
 1313. Suffering, *n.*—(pain) k'u³; t'ung⁴-k'u³, 118, 57.
 1314. Sugar, *n.*—t'ang², 36, 13.
 1315. Sugar-cane, *n.*—kan¹-chê⁰, 95, 44.
 1316. Summer, *n.*—hsia⁴, 24, 9.
 1317. Summer season, *n.*—hsia⁴-t'ien⁰, 24, 9.
 1318. Summer vacation, *n.*—shu³-chia⁴, 107, 65.
 1319. Sun, *n.*—jih⁴, 24, 16.
 1320. Sunday, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-jih⁴; hsing¹-ch'i²-jih⁴, 26, 6.
 1321. Superintendent, *n.*—kuan²-li³-jên²; chien¹-tu¹, 126, 47.
 1322. Supper (dinner), *n.*—wan³-fan⁴, 84, 15.
 1323. Supply, *n. v.*—kung¹-chi⁰, 142, 18.
 1324. Support, *v.*—(a resolution) fu⁴-i⁴, 124, 12.
 1325. Suppress, *v.*—p'ing²-ting⁴; chên⁴-ya¹, 111, 31.
 1326. Supreme court, *n.*—ta⁴-li³-yüan⁴, 125, 36.
 1327. Surname, *n.*—hsing⁴, 40, 19.
 1328. Swan, *n.*—t'ien¹-ngo², 89, 38.
 1329. Sweat, *n.*—han⁴, 44, 31.
 1330. Sweden, *n.*—jui⁴-tien³, 113, 64.
 1331. Sweet, *adj.*—t'ien², 95, 45.



1332. Swim, *v.*—*yu²-shui³; fu²-shui³, 90, 59.*
 1333. Swindler, *n.*—*p'ien⁴-tzü⁰, 143, 42.*
 1334. Switch, *n.*—*tien⁴-mên²; k'ai¹-kuan¹, 82, 8.*
 1335. Swoop down, *v.*—*tieh⁴, 91, 61.*
 1336. Sword, *n.*—*chien⁴, 67, 20.*
 1337. Syrup, *n.*—*hsing⁴-jên²-lu⁴, 93, 10.*

T

1338. Table, *n.*—*cho¹-tzü⁰, 71, 24.*
 1339. Tailor, *n.*—*ts'ai²-fêng⁰, 45, 42-43.*
 1340. Take, *v.*—*na², 8, 7; 72, 36; pa³, 12, 37; chiu⁴-pa³, 57, 18; (as medicine) fu², 61, 58.*
 1341. Take hold of, *v.*—*pa³, 12, 37.*
 1342. Take off, *v.*—*t'uo¹, 45, 47.*
 1343. Take up, *v.*—*na²-ch'io⁰-lai⁰, 72, 37.*
 1344. Talk, *n.*—*hua⁴, 107, 22.*
 1345. Tall, *adj.*—*kao¹, 20, 11.*
 1346. Tank (water), *n.*—*shui³-ch'ih²-tzü⁰, 94, 27.*
 1347. Taoism, *n.*—*tao⁴-chiao⁴, 98, 8.*
 1348. Tax, *n.*—*shui⁴, 124, 22.*
 1349. Tea, *n.*—*ch'a², 36, 12.*
 1350. Teach, *v.*—*chiao¹, 12, 24.*
 1351. Teacher, *n.*—*hsien¹-shêng⁰, 11, 3; chiao⁴-yüan², 102, 11.*
 1352. Tear, *v.*—*ssü¹, 45, 50.*
 1353. Telegram, *n.*—*tien⁴-pao⁴, 47, 13.*
 1354. Telegraph office, *n.*—*tien⁴-pao⁴-chü², 47, 14.*
 1355. Telephone, *n.*—*tien⁴-hua⁴, 47, 15.*
 1356. Tell, *v.*—*kao⁴-su⁰, 8, 23.*
 1357. Temperature, *n.*—*wên¹-tu⁴, 59, 15-16; (of body) t'i³-wên¹, 59, 17-18.*
 1358. Temple, *n.*—(building for worship) *miao⁴, 98, 12.*
 1359. Ten, *n. adj.*—*shih², 4, 10.*
 1360. Tender, *adj.*—*juan³, 75, 24.*
 1361. Tennis, *n.*—*wang³-ch'iu², 68, 39.*
 1362. Thank, *v.*—*hsieh⁴, 41, 24.*
 1363. That, *adj.*—*na⁴, 6, 5.*
 1364. Theatre, *n.*—(place where plays are staged) *hsi⁴-yüan², 78, 6.*
 1365. Theme, *n.*—(topic) *t'i²-mu⁰, 63, 4.*
 1366. Then, *adv.*—*yü²-shih⁴, 31, 49-50; 72, 43; jan²-hou⁴, 72, 44.*
 1367. There, *adv.*—*na⁴-li⁰, 6, 8.*
 1368. Therefore, *adv.*—*so²-i³ (yi³), 30, 30-31.*
 1369. Thermometer, *n.*—*t'i³-wên¹-piao³, 59, 17-18.*
 1370. These, *pron. adj.*—*chê⁴-sieh⁰ (hsieh⁰), 6, 10.*
 1371. Thick, *adj.*—*hou⁴, 118, 53; 138, 47.*
 1372. Thief, *n.*—*tsei², 136, 21.*
 1373. Thing, *n.*—*tung¹-hsi⁰, 84, 9.*
 1374. Think, *v.*—*hsiang³, 8, 14.*
 1375. Third class, *n.*—*san¹-têng³, 78, 15.*
 1376. Third floor, *n.*—*ti⁴-san¹-ts'êng²-lou², 82, 3.*
 1377. Third tone, *n.*—*shang⁴-shêng¹, 53, 13.*
 1378. Thirst, *n.*—*k'o³, 38, 57.*
 1379. Thirsty, *adj.*—*k'o³, 38, 57.*
 1380. This, *adj.*—*chê⁴, 6, 4; tz'ü³, 142, 16.*
 1381. This year—*chin¹-nien⁰, 24, 2.*
 1382. Thoroughly, *adv.*—*ti⁴-tao⁴, 54, 28.*
 1383. Those, *pron. adj.*—*na⁴-sieh⁰ (hsieh⁰), 6, 11.*
 1384. Though, *conj.*—*sui¹-jan², 30, 25.*
 1385. Thousand, *n. adj.*—*ch'ien¹, 4, 13.*
 1386. Thread, *n.*—*hsien⁴, 45, 49.*
 1387. Three, *n. adj.*—*san¹, 4, 3.*
 1388. Throat, *n.*—*hou², 34, 16.*
 1389. Thunder, *n.*—*lei², 57, 6.*
 1390. Thursday, *n.*—*li³-pai⁴-ssü⁴; hsing¹-ch'ü²-ssü⁴, 26, 10.*
 1391. Tibet, *n.*—*hsi¹-taang⁴, 120, 91.*
 1392. Ticket, *n.*—*p'iao⁴, 78, 12.*
 1393. Tiger, *n.*—*lao²-hu³, 88, 5.*
 1394. Tight, *adj.*—*chin³, 41, 30; 45, 54.*
 1395. Till, *conj.*—*tao⁴, 31, 48.*
 1396. Time, *n.*—(measurable duration) *shih²-hou⁰, 27, 32-33; shih²-chiep¹, 61, 46; (recurring occasion) pien⁴, 53, 4; 107, 67; tz'ü⁴, 53, 5.*
 1397. Tin, *n.*—(metal) *hsi², 43, 6.*
 1398. To, *prep.*—*ho², 29, 4; tui⁴, 29, 5; (toward) hsiang⁴, 113, 59.*
 1399. Tobacco, *n.*—*yen¹, 68, 33.*
 1400. Today, *n. adv.*—*chin¹-t'ien⁰, 24, 3.*
 1401. Together, *adv.*—*t'ung², 107, 75; i¹-t'ung², 76, 46; 143, 33.*
 1402. Toil, *n. v.*—*lao², 41, 32.*
 1403. Tomorrow, *n. adv.*—*ming²-t'ien⁰, 24, 4.*
 1404. Tone, *n.*—(sound) *shêng¹, 53, 10.*
 1405. Tongue, *n.*—*shô²-t'ou⁰, 34, 15.*
 1406. Too, *adv.*—*yeh³, 25, 23; êrh²-ch'ieh³, 137, 46.*
 1407. Tooth, *n.*—*ya², 34, 13.*
 1408. Tooth paste, *n.*—*ya²-kao¹, 70, 12.*
 1409. Tooth powder, *n.*—*ya²-fên³, 70, 11.*
 1410. Torch, *n.*—*huo³-pa⁰, 130, 16.*
 1411. Tortoise, *n.*—*kuei¹, 89, 33.*
 1412. Towel, *n.*—*shou³-chin⁰, 70, 14.*
 1413. Town, *n.*—*ch'êng²-shih⁴, 51, 19.*
 1414. Trade, *n.*—*mao⁴-i⁴, 120, 78.*
 1415. Train, *n.*—(railroad cars) *huo³-ch'ü¹, 48, 17.*
 1416. Tram, *n.*—*tien⁴-ch'ü¹, 48, 16.*
 1417. Transform, *v.*—*pien⁴, 18, 18.*
 1418. Transgress, *v.*—*fan⁴, 112, 49.*
 1419. Translate, *v.*—*fan¹-i⁰, 64, 25.*
 1420. Translation, *n.*—*fan¹-i⁰, 64, 25.*
 1421. Transparent, *adj.*—*liang⁴, 83, 18.*
 1422. Travel, *n. v.*—*yu², 72, 35; lü³-hsing², 74, 8; yu²-li⁰, 90, 50.*
 1423. Travel by—*tso⁴, 49, 36.*
 1424. Tray, *n.*—*t'o¹-p'an², 37, 40.*
 1425. Treacherous, *adj.*—*kuei³-cha⁴ (ti⁰), 110, 24.*
 1426. Treat, *v.*—(to act toward) *tai⁴, 86, 37; 118, 48.*
 1427. Treatment, *n.*—(cure) *i¹-ping⁴, 120, 87.*
 1428. Treaty of friendship, *n.*—*yu²-hao³-t'iao²-yüeh¹, 112, 52.*
 1429. Treaty of peace, *n.*—*ho²-yüeh¹, 112, 51.*
 1430. Tree, *n.*—*shu⁴, 94, 29.*
 1431. Trousers, *n.*—*k'u⁴-tzü⁰, 44, 30.*
 1432. True, *adj.*—*chêng⁴, 125, 27.*
 1433. Trunk (of a tree), *n.*—*kan⁴, 94, 30.*



1434. Truth, *n.*—(principle) tao⁴, 63, 12;
(honest words) shih²-hua⁴, 137, 36.
1435. Try, *v.*—shih⁴-shih⁰, 8, 15.
1436. Tuberculosis, *n.*—fei⁴-ping⁴, 60, 43.
1437. Tuesday, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-êrh⁴; hsing¹-
ch'i²-êrh⁴, 26, 8.
1438. Turban, *n.*—t'ou²-chin⁰, 70, 15.
1439. Turn, *v.*—chuan⁴, 75, 19.
1440. Turn around, *v.*—lun²-chuan⁴, 75, 19.
1441. Tusk (of an elephant), *n.*—hsiang⁴-
ya², 90, 44.
1442. Twist, *v.*—nien³, 83, 22.
1443. Two, *adj.*—êrh⁴, 4, 2; liang³, 4, 14;
n.—êrh⁴, 4, 2.
1444. Typewriter, *n.*—ta³-tzü⁴-chi¹, 126, 43.
1445. Typist, *n.*—ta³-tzü⁴-yüan², 126, 42.
1446. Tyre (tire), *n.*—ch'ê¹-t'ai¹, 85, 24.

U

1447. Ultimately, *adv.*—tsui⁴-hou⁴; tao⁴-
ti³, 111, 29.
1448. Ultimatum, *n.*—tsui⁴-hou⁴-t'ung¹-
tieh², 113, 62.
1449. Ultramodern, *adj.*—kuo⁴-yü²-shih²-
mao², 131, 34.
1450. Umbrella, *n.*—san³, 45, 41.
1451. Umpire, *n.*—p'ing²-p'an⁴-yüan²,
126, 49.
1452. Uncle, *n.*—shu²-shu⁰; shu²-fu⁰,
3, 23.
1453. Unclean, *adj.*—tsang¹, 135, 5.
1454. Understand, *v.*—hsiao³-tê⁰, 51, 21;
ming²-pai⁰, 126, 45; tung³,
126, 46.
1455. Universal, *adj.*—(general) p'u³-
t'ung¹, 99, 30.
1456. Universal love, *n.*—chien¹-ai⁴,
99, 29.
1457. Universe, *n.*—yü³-chou⁴, 99, 18.
1458. University, *n.*—ta⁴-hsüeh²-t'ang⁰,
11, 13; ta⁴-hsüeh², 102, 6.
1459. University student, *n.*—ta⁴-hsüeh²-
shêng⁰, 103, 13.
1460. Unless, *conj.*—ch'u²-fei¹, 29, 20.
1461. Unreal, *adj.*—hsü¹, 143, 38.
1462. Until, *conj.*—tao⁴, 31, 48.
1463. Upon, *prep.*—shang⁴, 9, 33.
1464. Upright, *adj.*—chêng⁴, 125, 27.
1465. Urgent, *adj.*—chü², 75, 31; chin³-
yao⁴ (yao⁴-chin³), 75, 32.
1466. Use, *n. v.*—yung⁴, 48, 33; 61, 56.
1467. Useful, *adj.*—yu³-yung⁴, 75, 25.
1468. Usurp, *v.*—ch'in¹, 112, 48.

V

1469. Vacation, *n.*—chia⁴-ch'i², 107, 64.
1470. Vast, *adj.*—kuang³-ta⁴, 118, 45.
1471. Veda, *n.*—wei²-t'o², 98, 9.
1472. Vegetable, *n.*—ts'ai⁴, 36, 17.
1473. Venture, *v.*—kan³, 138, 50.
1474. Verdict, *n.*—p'an⁴-chüeh², 125, 32.
1475. Very, *adv.*—hên³, 22, 1.
1476. Vest, *n.*—han⁴-shan¹, 44, 31.

1477. Vice-Chancellor, *n.*—fu⁴-hsiao⁴-
chang³, 102, 3.
1478. Vice-Consul, *n.*—fu⁴-ling³-shih⁴,
117, 29.
1479. Vice-President, *n.*—(of a country
or a republic) fu⁴-tsung²-t'ung³,
115, 8; (of a college or univer-
sity) ta⁴-hsüeh²-fu⁴-hsiao⁴-
chang³, 115, 11; (of an associa-
tion) fu⁴-hui⁴-chang³, 115, 12.
1480. Viceroy, *n.*—tsung³-tu¹, 117, 37.
1481. Viewpoint, *n.*—k'an⁴-lai⁰, 119, 70.
1482. Village, *n.*—hsiang¹-hsia⁰, 51, 20.
1483. Vinegar, *n.*—ts'u⁴, 94, 18.
1484. Violate, *v.*—fan⁴, 112, 49.
1485. Violence, *n.*—pao⁴-tung¹; pao⁴-
luan⁴, 110, 27.
1486. Violet, *n. adj.*—kan⁴, 31, 65.
1487. Virtue, *n.*—tê²; tao⁴-tê², 100, 36.
1488. Virtuous, *adj.*—yu³-tao⁴-tê², 100,
36.
1489. Voice, *n.*—(sound) shêng¹-yin⁰,
135, 1.
1490. Volleyball, *n.*—p'ai²-ch'iu², 68, 41.
1491. Vote, *v.*—t'ou²-p'iao⁴, 110, 22; (for
a person) hsüan³, 110, 19.
1492. Voter, *n.*—hsüan²-chü³-jên², 110,
21; t'ou²-p'iao⁴-jên², 110, 22.
1493. Voting paper, *n.*—hsüan²-chü³-
p'iao⁴, 110, 20.
1494. Voyage, *n.*—hang²-hai³, 74, 9.
1495. Vulture, *n.*—chih⁴-niao³, 90, 42.

W

1496. Waistcoat, *n.*—k'an³-chien¹, 44,
33-34.
1497. Wait, *v.*—têng³, 8, 12; 31, 47; tai⁴,
86, 37; 118, 48.
1498. Wake, *v.*—hsing³, 71, 32.
1499. Walk, *v.*—tsou³, 8, 11.
1500. Want, *n.*—(poverty) ch'iung²-fa²,
111, 41; *v.*—(to wish) yao⁴,
9, 40.
1501. War, *n.*—chan⁴-chêng¹, 74, 12;
chan⁴, 111, 30.
1502. Wash, *v.*—hsi³ (si³), 12, 27.
1503. Watch, *n.*—(small timepiece) piao³,
27, 26.
1504. Water, *n.*—shui³, 37, 43.
1505. Water-tap, *n.*—shui³-kuan¹-tzü⁰,
70, 6.
1506. Way, *n.*—(path) lu⁴, 74, 7;
(manner) yang⁴, 125, 34.
1507. We, *pron.*—wo³-mên⁰, 1, 7.
1508. Weak, *adj.*—jo⁴, 20, 26.
1509. Wealth, *n.*—ts'ai², 110, 25.
1510. Wealthy, *adj.*—fu⁴, 20, 15.
1511. Wear, *v.*—(to put on) ch'uan¹, 45,
46.
1512. Weary, *adj.*—(tired) lao², 41, 32.
1513. Weather, *n.*—ch'i⁴-hou⁴, 24, 14-
15.
1514. Wednesday, *n.*—li³-pai⁴-san¹; hsi-
ng¹-ch'i²-san¹, 26, 9.
1515. Week, *n.*—li³-pai⁴; hsing¹-ch'i²,
26, 5.
1516. Weep, *v.*—k'u¹; k'u¹-ch'i⁴, 90, 56.
1517. Weighty, *adj.*—chung⁴, 124, 21.
1518. Welcome, *n. v.*—huan¹-ying², 74,
10.

1519. Well, *adj.*—hao³, 20, 1; *n.*—(hole dug in ground to get water) ching³, 90, 45.
 1520. West, *n. adj.*—hsi¹; hsi¹-fang¹, 84, 2.
 1521. What, *adj.*—shên²-ma⁰, 6, 3; *pron.*—(that which) so³ (suo³), 137, 35.
 1522. Wheel, *n.*—lun²-tzû⁰, 75, 18.
 1523. When, *adv.*—chi³-shih², 6, 27; chih⁴, 27, 45; chih⁴-shih⁴, 27, 45-46; i³, 61, 61; tang¹, 131, 26.
 1524. Where, *adv.*—na³-li⁰ (or na²-li³), 6, 8.
 1525. Whereabouts, *n.*—hsia⁴-lo⁴, 130, 18.
 1526. Whereas, *adv. conj.*—hsiang¹-fan³-ti⁰, 100, 46.
 1527. Which, *pron. adj.*—na³, 6, 5; (what one) na³-i¹.
 1528. White, *adj.*—pai², 31, 61; 131, 38.
 1529. White-ant, *n.*—pai²-i³, 89, 27.
 1530. Who, *pron.*—shui², 6, 1.
 1531. Whole, *adj.*—man³, 57, 15; ch'ê-an², 91, 30.
 1532. Whose, *pron.*—shui²-ti⁰, 6, 2.
 1533. Why, *adv.*—wêi⁴-shên²-ma⁰, 6, 24; 29, 23.
 1534. Widow, *n.*—kua³-fu⁰, 95, 37.
 1535. Widower, *n.*—kuan¹-fu¹, 95, 38; kuan¹-kun⁴, 95, 39.
 1536. Wife, *n.*—lao³-p'o², 40, 3-4; ch'i¹-tzû⁰, 40, 5.
 1537. Will, *n.*—(mental decision) chih⁴, 151, 7.
 1538. Win, *v.*—ying², 75, 34.
 1539. Wind, *n.*—fêng¹ (fung¹), 57, 1.
 1540. Window, *n.*—ch'uang¹-hu⁰, 83, 16; 136, 20.
 1541. Wine, *n.*—chiu³, 68, 37.
 1542. Winter, *n.*—tung¹-t'ien⁰, 24, 11.
 1543. Wipe, *v.*—ts'a¹, 54, 22.
 1544. Wipe out, *v.*—ts'a¹ ch'ü⁰, 54, 23.
 1545. Wise, *adj.*—ts'ung¹-ming², 75, 21.
 1546. Wish, *v.*—yao⁴, 9, 40; (a good luck) chu⁴, 132, 41.
 1547. With, *prep.*—kên¹, 18, 25; t'ung², 29, 3; ho², 29, 4.

1548. Withdraw, *v.*—(a motion) shou¹-hui², 124, 13.
 1549. Within, *prep.*—(inside) li³-t'ou⁰, 29, 16; li³, 107, 66.
 1550. Without, *prep.*—(not having) mei²-yu³, 106, 59.
 1551. Woman, *n.*—nü³-jên⁰, 3, 9; fu⁴-jên⁰, 100, 33.
 1552. Wool, *n.*—jung², 90, 47.
 1553. Word, *n.*—(written) tzû⁴, 54, 17.
 1554. Work, *n.*—kung¹-tsao⁴, 74, 5.
 1555. World, *n.*—shih⁴-ch'eh⁰, 74, 3; 99, 17.
 1556. Worship, *v.*—pai⁴, 26, 2.
 1557. Worth, *n. adj.*—chih²-tê⁰, 136, 29.
 1558. Worthless, *adj.*—(useless) pu⁴-chung¹-yung⁴, 136, 27.
 1559. Wrist watch, *n.*—shou²-piao³, 45, 38.
 1560. Write, *v.*—hsieh³, 12, 26; (prescription) k'ai¹, 61, 52; (to compose) tso⁴, 64, 16.
 1561. Wrong, *adj.*—fei¹, 21, 36; ts'o⁴, 119, 75.

Y

1562. Year, *n.*—nien², 24, 2; (age) sui⁴, 40, 13.
 1563. Yellow, *adj.*—huang², 31, 63.
 1564. Yes, *adv.*—shih⁴, 21, 35.
 1565. Yesterday, *n.*—tso²-t'ien⁰, 24, 6.
 1566. Yet, *adv.*—hai², 29, 2.
 1567. You, *pron.*—(singular) ni³, 1, 2; (plural) ni³-mên⁰; (polite, singular and plural) nin², 1, 3.
 1568. Young, *adj.*—nien²-ch'ing¹, 20, 6-7.
 1569. Younger brother, *n.*—ti⁴-ti⁰, 3, 21.
 1570. Younger sister, *n.*—mo⁴ (mei⁴)-mo⁰ (mei⁰), 3, 22.

Z

1571. Zero, *n.*—ling², 4, 11.
 1572. Zoology, *n.*—tung⁴-wu⁴-hsüeh², 105, 45.

ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

- p. 2, 1, 3, 8—for yū³ *read* yu³.
- „ 3, 18—for hsiung¹ -ti⁴ *read* ti⁴ -hsiung¹.
- „ 3, 19—for chie³ -mo⁴ *read* chieh³ -mei⁴.
- „ 3, 22—for mo⁴-mo⁴ *read* mei⁴ -mei⁰.
- „ 3, 24—for 字 *read* 姑.
- „ 3, 25 and 26—for chiu³ *read* chiu⁴.
- „ 3, Ex. 8—for 'he' *read* 'she'.
- „ 6, 3, 18, 24—for mo³ *read* ma⁰.
- „ 6, 28—for chi¹ *read* chi³.
- „ 6, 29—for 'on' *read* 'in'.
- „ 11, 8—for jên²-chia¹ *read* chia¹-jên².
- „ 12, 27—for 'to battle' *read* 'to bathe'.
- „ 20, 7—for ching¹ *read* ch'ing¹.
- „ 21, 39—for ko *read* ko⁴.
- „ 22, 12—for jên *read* jên².
- „ 22, 13—for tzu⁴ *read* tzū⁴.
- „ 25, 23—for yêh³ *read* yeh³.
- „ 27, 37—for ch'ū *read* ch'ū⁴.
- „ 31, 53—for ch'ū¹ *read* ch'u¹.
- „ 34, 18—for shou² *read* shou³.
- „ 37, 34—for 鳩 chiu¹ *read* 鴿 ko¹-(tzū⁰), a pigeon.
- „ 41, Ex. 9. What is your name?—kuei⁴ hsing⁴.
- „ 44, 16—for ku'ai⁴ ch'ien² *read* yang² (洋) ch'ien², dollar; i² k'uai⁴ ch'ien², one dollar.
- „ 49, 16—for 'number (shu⁴) many (to¹)' *read* 'a group of number (hsü³ to¹)'.
- „ 54, 19—for 'to bit' *read* 'to beat'.
- „ 54, 23—for 'to rub out', 'to wipe out' *read* 'to rub off', 'to wipe off'.
- „ 57, 5—for yū² *read* yū³.
- „ 59, 6—for 太 t'ai⁴, very, much *read* 大 tai⁴, a physician.
- „ 60, 29—for k'ê² *read* k'o².
- „ 60, 42—for yên² *read* yen².
- „ 64, 16—add also tso⁴-shu¹-ti⁰-jên² and chu⁴-shu¹-ti⁰-jên², an author.

- p. 64, 25—for 繙 *read* 翻.
- „ 67, 14—for 監 *chien*¹ *read* 檢 *chien*².
- „ 72, 38—for 搓 *ts'o*¹ *read* 擦 *ts'a*¹.
- „ 72, 39—for 嗽 *read* 漱.
- „ 74, 6—for *ho*²-*ping*² *read* *ho*²-*p'ing*².
- „ 78, 6—for 園 *yüan*² *read* 院 *yüan*⁴, a hall.
- „ 82, 1—add also *i*¹-*lou*², first floor.
- „ 82, 4—add also *lou*²-*hsia*⁴, ground floor.
- „ 84, 16 and 17—for 相 *read* 像 *hsiang*⁴, appearance, an image.
- „ 89, 24—for 蝦 *ha*²-*ma*² *read* 蛤 蟆 *ha*²-*ma*⁰, a frog.
- „ 90, 59—for 'or *yu*²-*shui*² ' *read* ' *yü*²-*shui*³ or '.
- „ 106, 53—for *che*⁴-*hsüeh*² *read* *ché*²-*hsüeh*².
- „ 106, 55—for *t'ien*¹-*wên*² *read* *t'ien*¹-*wên*²-*hsüeh*², astronomy.
- „ 112, 51—for 和 „ *read* 和 約.
- „ 124, 15—for *tein*³ *read* *tien*³.
- „ 126, 49—add also 公 證 人 *kung*¹-*chêng*⁴-*jên*², an umpire.

24-11-58